



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

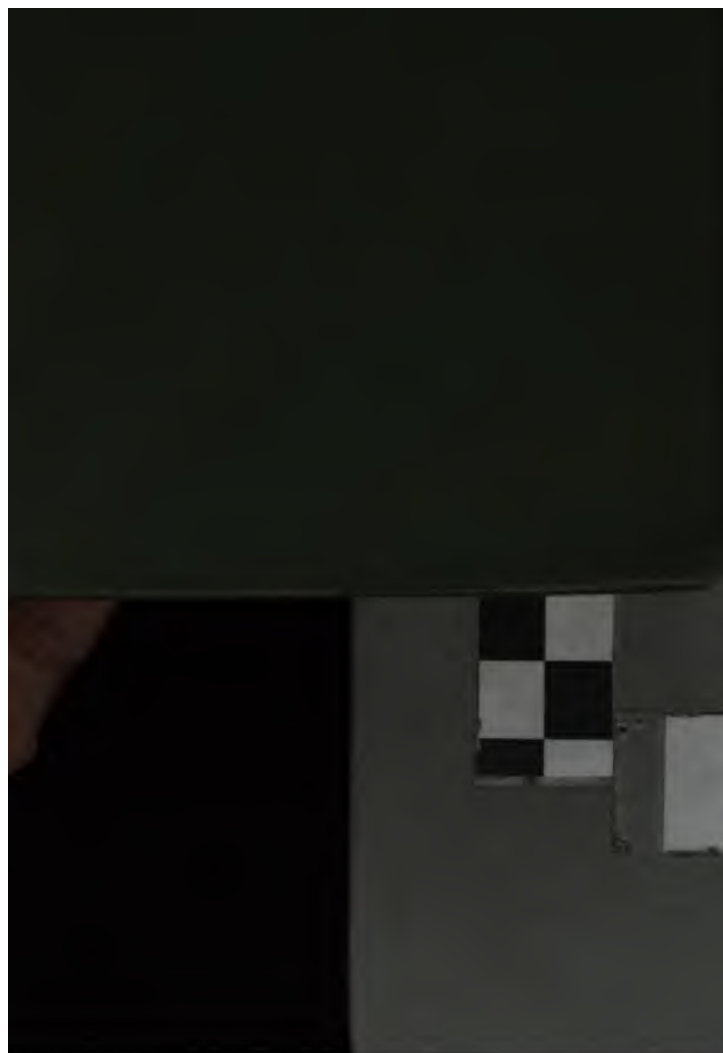
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



LENOX LIBRARY



**Lenox Collection.**  
**1870.**











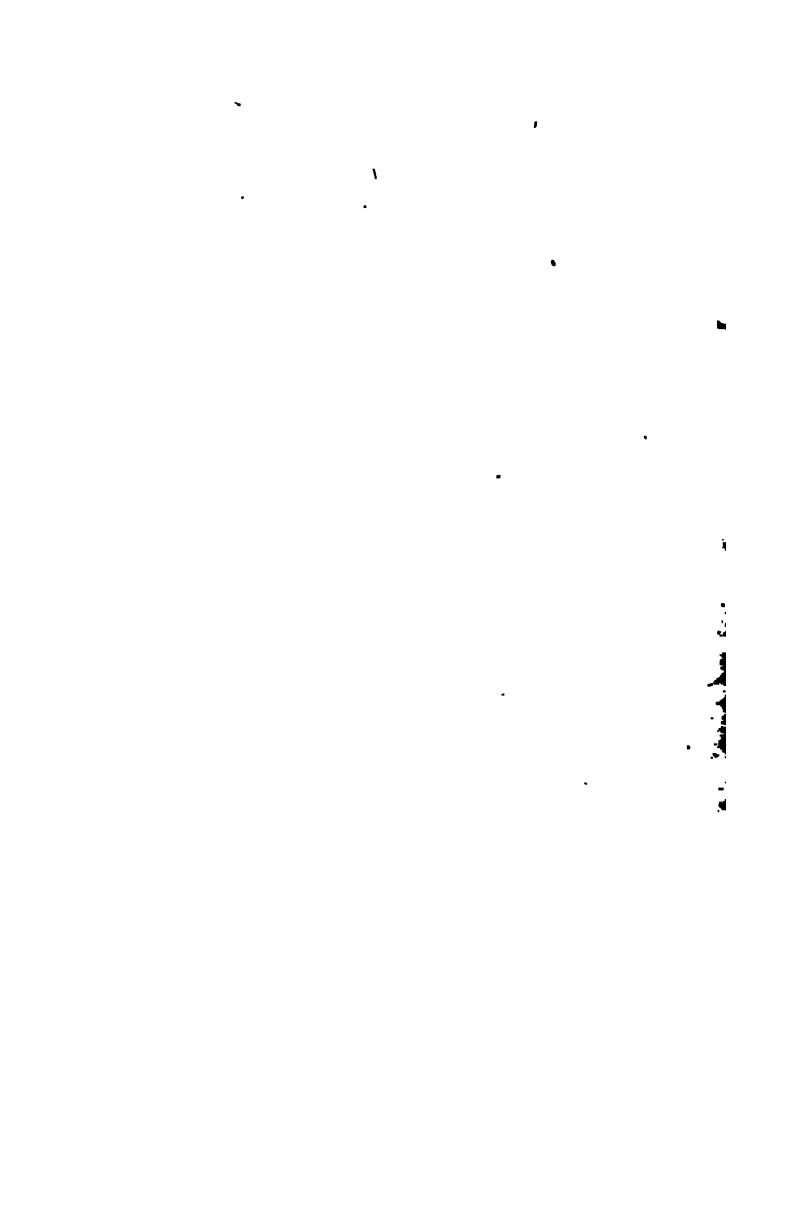


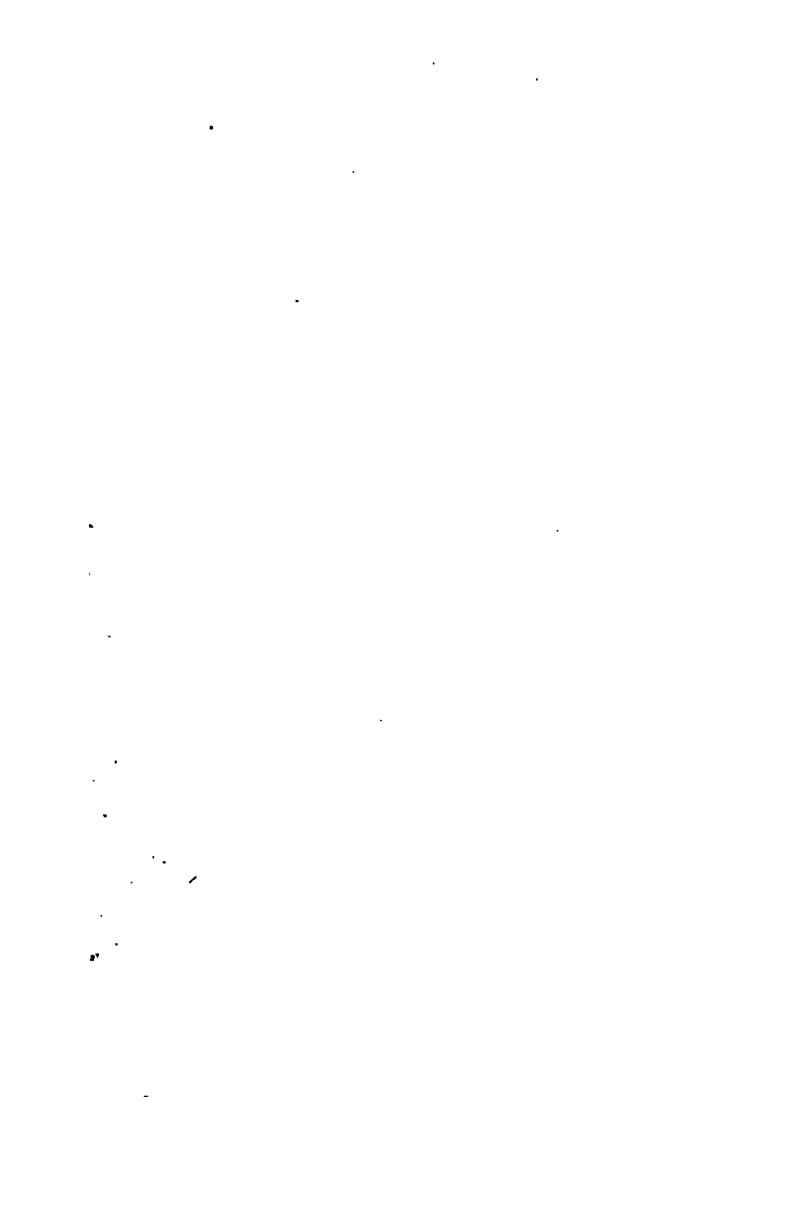


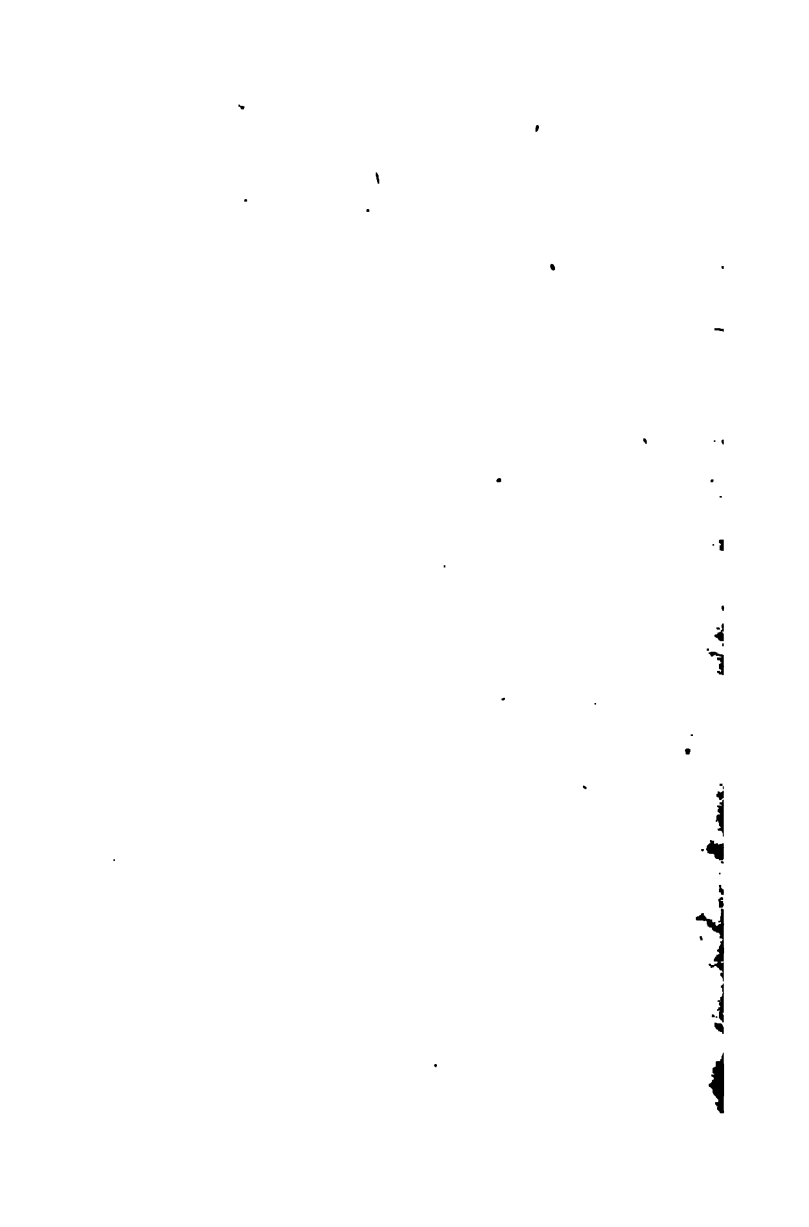
(Kinder)

VCM











**THE**  
**FAMILY SHAKSPEARE.**

**VOL. V.**



---

Ubi animus requievit, et mihi reliquam ætatem a repul  
procul habendam decrevi; non fuit consilium socordia a  
desidia bonum otium contere. SALLUS

---

LONDON:  
Printed by A. & R. Spottiswoode,  
New-Street-Square.

THE  
**FAMILY SHAKSPEARE,**  
**In Ten Volumes ;**

IN WHICH  
*NOTHING IS ADDED TO THE ORIGINAL TEXT ;*  
BUT THOSE WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS  
ARE OMITTED WHICH CANNOT WITH PROPRIETY  
BE READ ALOUD IN A FAMILY.

— exemit labem, purumque reliquit  
*Æthereum sensum, atque aurai simplicis ignem.* VIRGIL.

BY  
**THOMAS BOWDLER, Esq. F.R.S. & S.A.**

*The Fourth Edition.*

**VOL. V.**

CONTAINING  
KING RICHARD II. ;  
FIRST PART OF KING HENRY IV. ;  
SECOND PART OF KING HENRY IV. ;  
KING HENRY V.

*21/-*  
**LONDON:**  
PRINTED FOR  
**LONGMAN, HURST, REES, ORME, BROWN, AND GREEN,**  
**PATERNOSTER-ROW.**

**1825.**  
*c. m. k.*

---

Sportive Fancy round him flew,  
Nature led him by the hand,  
Instructed him in all she knew,  
And gave him absolute command.

---



---

---

KING RICHARD II.

---

---

## PERSONS REPRESENTED.

---

KING RICHARD THE SECOND.

EDMOND OF LANGLEY, *Duke of York*; } *uncles to*  
JOHN OF GAUNT, *Duke of Lancaster*; } *King.*

HENRY, *surnamed Bolingbroke, Duke of Hereford*  
*son to John of Gaunt; afterwards King Henry I*

DUKE OF AUMERLE, *son to the Duke of York.*

MOWBRAY, *Duke of Norfolk.*

DUKE OF SURREY.

EARL OF SALISBURY. EARL BERKELEY.

BUSHY, }  
BAGOT, } *creatures to King Richard.*  
GREEN, }

EARL OF NORTHUMBERLAND.

HENRY PERCY, *his son.*

LORD ROSS. LORD WILLOUGHBY.

LORD FITZWATER.

BISHOP OF CARLISLE. ABBOT OF WESTMINSTER  
*Lord Marshal; and another Lord.*

SIR PIERCE OF EXTON. SIR STEPHEN SCROOP.  
*Captain of a band of Welshmen.*

QUEEN *to King Richard.*

DUCHESS OF GLOSTER.

DUCHESS OF YORK.

*Lady attending on the Queen.*

*Lords, Herald, Officers, Soldiers, two Gardeners,  
Keeper, Messenger, Groom, and other Attendants.*

*SCENE, dispersedly in England and Wales.*

THE  
LIFE AND DEATH  
OF  
KING RICHARD II.

---

ACT THE FIRST.

SCENE I.

London. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter King RICHARD, attended; JOHN of GAUNT,  
and other Nobles, with him.*

*K. Rich.* OLD John of Gaunt, time-honour'd  
Lancaster,

Hast thou, according to thy oath and band,<sup>1</sup>  
Brought hither Henry Hereford, thy bold son;  
Here to make good the boisterous late appeal,  
Which then our leisure would not let us hear,  
Against the duke of Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray?

*Gaunt.* I have, my liege.

*K. Rich.* Tell me, moreover, hast thou sounded  
him,

If he appeal the duke on ancient malice;  
Or worthily as a good subject should,  
On some known ground of treachery in him?

*Gaunt.* As near as I could sift him on that ar-  
gument,—

On some apparent danger seen in him,  
Aim'd at your highness; no inveterate malice.

*K. Rich.* Then call them to our presence; face  
to face,

<sup>1</sup> Bond.

And frowning brow to brow, ourselves will hear  
The accuser, and the accused, freely speak:—

[*Exeunt some Attendants.*]

High stomach'd are they both, and full of ire,  
In rage deaf as the sea, hasty as fire.

*Re-enter Attendants, with BOLINGBROKE and  
NORFOLK.*

*Boling.* May many years of happy days befall  
My gracious sovereign, my most loving liege!

*Nor.* Each day still better other's happiness:  
Until the heavens, envying earth's good hap,  
Add an immortal title to your crown!

*K. Rich.* We thank you both: yet one but flatters us,

As well appeareth by the cause you come;  
Namely, to appeal each other of high treason.—  
Cousin of Hereford, what dost thou object  
Against the duke of Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray?

*Boling.* First, (heaven be the record to my speech!)  
In the devotion of a subject's love,  
Tendering the precious safety of my prince,  
And free from other misbegotten hate,  
Come I appellant to this princely presence.—  
Now, Thomas Mowbray, do I turn to thee,  
And mark my greeting well; for what I speak,  
My body shall make good upon this earth,  
Or my divine soul answer it in heaven.  
Thou art a traitor, and a miscreant;  
Too good to be so, and too bad to live:  
Since, the more fair and crystal is the sky,  
The uglier seem the clouds that in it fly.  
Once more, the more to aggravate the note,  
With a foul traitor's name stuff I thy throat;  
And wish, (so please my sovereign,) ere I move  
What my tongue speaks, my right-drawn sword  
may prove.

*Nor.* Let not my cold words here accuse my zeal:  
Not the trial of a woman's war,

The bitter clamour of two eager tongues,  
Can arbitrate this cause betwixt us twain :  
The blood is hot, that must be cool'd for this,  
Yet can I not of such tame patience boast,  
As to be hush'd, and nought at all to say :  
First, the fair reverence of your highness curbs me  
From giving reins and spurs to my free speech :  
Which else would post, until it had return'd  
These terms of treason doubled down his throat.  
Setting aside his high blood's royalty,  
And let him be no kinsman to my liege,  
I do defy him, and I spit at him ;  
Call him — a slanderous coward, and a villain :  
Which to maintain, I would allow him odds,  
And meet him, were I tied to run a-foot  
Even to the frozen ridges of the Alps,  
Or any other ground inhabitable,<sup>2</sup>  
Where ever Englishman durst set his foot.  
Mean time, let this defend my loyalty, —  
By all my hopes, most falsely doth he lie.

*Boling.* Pale trembling coward, there I throw  
my gage,

Disclaiming here the kindred of a king ;  
And lay aside my high blood's royalty,  
Which fear, not reverence, makes thee to except :  
If guilty dread hath left thee so much strength,  
As to take up mine honour's pawn, then stoop ;  
By, that, and all the rights of knighthood else,  
Will I make good against thee, arm to arm,  
What I have spoke, or thou can'st worse devise :

*Nor.* I take it up ; and, by that sword I swear,  
Which gently laid my knighthood on my shoulder,  
I'll answer thee in any fair degree,  
Or chivalrous design of knightly trial :  
And, when I mount, alive may I not light,  
If I be traitor, or unjustly fight !

<sup>2</sup> *Unhabitable.*



*K. Rich.* What doth our cousin lay to Mowbray's charge?

It must be great, that can inherit us  
So much as of a thought of ill in him.

*Boling.* Look, what I speak my life shall prove it true; —

That Mowbray hath receiv'd eight thousand nobles,  
In name of lendings for your highness' soldiers;  
The which he hath detain'd for vile employments,  
Like a false traitor, and injurious villain.

Besides I say, and will in battle prove, —

Or here, or elsewhere, to the furthest verge

That ever was survey'd by English eye, —

That all the treasons, for these eighteen years

Complotted and contrived in this land,

Fetch from false Mowbray their first head and spring.

Further I say, — and further will maintain

Upon his bad life, to make all this good, —

That he did plot the duke of Gloster's death;

Suggest his soon-believing adversaries;

And, consequently, like a traitor coward,

Sluc'd out his innocent soul through streams of blood:

Which blood, like sacrificing Abel's, cries,

Even from the tongueless caverns of the earth,

To me, for justice, and rough chastisement;

And, by the glorious worth of my descent,

This arm shall do it, or this life be spent.

*K. Rich.* How high a pitch his resolution soars! —  
Thomas of Norfolk, what say'st thou to this?

*Nor.* O, let my sovereign turn away his face,

And bid his ears a little while be deaf,

Till I have told this slander of his blood,

How God, and good men hate so foul a liar.

*K. Rich.* Mowbray, impartial are our eyes, and ears:

Were he my brother, nay, my kingdom's heir,

(As he is but my father's brother's son,)

Now by my scepter's awe I make a vow,

Such neighbour nearness to our sacred blood  
Should nothing privilege him, nor partialize  
The unstooping firmness of my upright soul ;  
He is our subject, Mowbray, so art thou ;  
Freespeech, and fearless, I to thee allow.

*Nor.* Then, Bolingbroke, as low as to thy heart,  
Through the false passage of thy throat, thou liest !  
Three parts of that receipt I had for Calais,  
Disburs'd I duly to his highness' soldiers :  
The other part reserv'd I by consent ;  
For that my sovereign liege was in my debt,  
Upon remainder of a dear account,  
Since last I went to France to fetch his queen :  
Now swallow down that lie.—For Gloster's death,—  
I slew him not ; but to my own disgrace,  
Neglected my sworn duty in that case.—  
For you, my noble lord of Lancaster,  
The honourable father to my foe,  
Once did I lay in ambush for your life,  
A trespass that doth vex my grieved soul,  
But, ere I last receiv'd the sacrament,  
I did confess it ; and exactly begg'd  
Your grace's pardon, and, I hope, I had it.  
This is my fault : As for the rest appeal'd,  
It issues from the rancour of a villain,  
A recreant and most degenerate traitor :  
Which in myself I boldly will defend ;  
And interchangeably hurl down my gage  
Upon this overweening traitor's foot,  
To prove myself a loyal gentleman  
Even in the best blood chamber'd in his bosom :  
In haste whereof, most heartily I pray  
Your highness to assign our trial day.

*K. Rich.* Wrath-kindled gentlemen, be rul'd by me ;  
Let's purge this choler without letting blood :  
This we prescribe, though no physician ;  
Deep malice makes too deep incision :  
Forget, forgive ; conclude, and be agreed ;  
Our doctors say, this is no time to bleed. —

Good uncle, let this end where it begun ;  
We'll calm the duke of Norfolk, you your son.

*Gaunt.* To be a make-peace shall become my  
age:

Throw down, my son, the duke of Norfolk's gage.

*K. Rich.* And, Norfolk, throw down his.

*Gaunt.* When, Harry ? when ?  
Obedience bids, I should not bid again.

*K. Rich.* Norfolk, throw down ; we bid ; there is  
no boot.<sup>4</sup>

*Nor.* Myself I throw, dread sovereign, at thy  
foot :

My life thou shalt command, but not my shame :  
The one my duty owes ; but my fair name,  
(Despite of death, that lives upon my grave,)  
To dark dishonour's use thou shalt not have.  
I am disgrac'd, impeach'd, and baffled here ;  
Pierc'd to the soul with slander's venom'd spear ;  
The which no balm can cure, but his heart-blood  
Which breath'd this poison.

*K. Rich.* Rage must be withstood ;  
Give me his gage :—Lions make leopards tame.

*Nor.* Yea, but not change their spots : take but  
my shame,

And I resign my gage. My dear dear lord,  
The purest treasure mortal times afford,  
Is—spotless reputation ; that away,  
Men are but gilded loam, or painted clay.  
A jewel in a ten-times-barr'd-up chest  
Is—a bold spirit in a loyal breast.  
Mine honour is my life ; both grow in one ;  
Take honour from me, and my life is done :  
Then, dear my liege, mine honour let me try :  
In that I live, and for that will I die.

*K. Rich.* Cousin, throw down your gage ; do  
you begin.

*Boling.* O, God defend my soul from such fo  
sin !

<sup>4</sup> No advantage in delay.

Shall I seem crest-fallen in my father's sight ?  
Or with pale beggar-fear impeach my height  
Before this outdar'd dastard ? Ere my tongue  
Shall wound mine honour with such feeble wrong,  
Or sound so base a parle, my teeth shall tear  
The slavish motive of recanting fear ;  
And spit it bleeding in his high disgrace,  
Where shame doth harbour, even in Mowbray's  
face. [Exit GAUNT.

*K. Rich.* We were not born to sue, but to command :

Which since we cannot do to make you friends,  
Be ready, as your lives shall answer it,  
At Coventry, upon Saint Lambert's day ;  
There shall your swords and lances arbitrate  
The swelling difference of your settled hate ;  
Since we cannot atone<sup>4</sup> you, we shall see  
Justice design<sup>5</sup> the victor's chivalry.—  
Marshal, command our officers at arms  
Be ready to direct these home-alarms. [Exit.

## SCENE II.

*The same. A Room in the Duke of Lancaster's Palace.*

*Enter GAUNT and Duchess of GLOSTER.*

*Gaunt.* Alas ! the part I had in Gloster's blood  
Doth more solicit me, than your exclams,  
To stir against the butchers of his life.  
But since correction lieth in those hands,  
Which made the fault that we cannot correct,  
Put we our quarrel to the will of heaven ;

<sup>4</sup> Reconcile.

<sup>5</sup> Show.

Who when he sees the hours ripe on earth,  
Will rain hot vengeance on offenders' heads.

*Duch.* Finds brotherhood in thee no sharper spur?  
Hath love in thy old blood no living fire?  
Edward's seven sons, whereof thyself art one,  
Were as seven phials of his sacred blood,  
Or seven fair branches springing from one root :  
Some of those seven are dried by nature's course,  
Some of those branches by the destinies cut :  
But Thomas, my dear lord, my life, my Gloster, —  
One phial full of Edward's sacred blood,  
One flourishing branch of his most royal root, —  
Is crack'd, and all the precious liquor spilt ;  
Is hack'd down, and his summer leaves all faded,  
By envy's hand, and murder's bloody axe.  
Ah, Gaunt ! his blood was thine ; and though

thou liv'st,  
Yet art thou slain in him : thou dost consent  
In some large measure to thy father's death,  
In that thou seest thy wretched brother die,  
Who was the model of thy father's life.  
Call it not patience, Gaunt, it is despair :  
In suffering thus thy brother to be slaughter'd,  
Thou show'st the naked pathway to thy life,  
Teaching stern murder how to butcher thee :  
That which in mean men we entitle — patience,  
Is pale cold cowardice in noble breasts.  
What shall I say ? to safeguard thine own life,  
The best way is — to 'venge my Gloster's death.

*Gaunt.* Heaven's is the quarrel : for heaven's  
substitute,  
His deputy anointed in his sight,  
Hath caus'd his death : the which if wrongfully,  
Let heaven revenge : for I may never lift  
An angry arm against his minister.

*Duch.* Where then, alas ! may I complain my  
self ?

*Gaunt.* To heaven, the widow's champion and  
defence.

*Duch.* Why then, I will. Farewell, old Gaunt,  
Thou go'st to Coventry, there to behold  
Our cousin Hereford and fell Mowbray fight :  
O, sit my husband's wrongs on Hereford's spear,  
That it may enter butcher Mowbray's breast !  
Or, if misfortune miss the first career,  
Be Mowbray's sins so heavy in his bosom,  
That they may break his foaming courser's back,  
And throw the rider headlong in the lists,  
A caitiff recreant to my cousin Hereford !  
Farewell, old Gaunt ; thy sometimes brother's wife,  
With her companion grief must end her life.

*Gaunt.* Sister, farewell : I must to Coventry !  
As much good stay with thee, as go with me !

*Duch.* Yet one word more ;— Grief boundeth  
where it falls,  
Not with the empty hollowness, but weight :  
I take my leave before I have begun ;  
For sorrow ends not when it seemeth done.  
Commend me to my brother, Edmund York.  
Lo, this is all : — Nay, yet depart not so :  
Though this be all, do not so quickly go ;  
I shall remember more. Bid him — O, what ? —  
With all good speed at Plashy<sup>6</sup> visit me.  
Alack, and what shall good old York there see,  
But empty lodgings and unfurnish'd walls,  
Unpeopled offices, untrodden stones ?  
And what cheer there for welcome, but my groans ?  
Therefore commend me ; let him not come there,  
To seek out sorrow that dwells every where :  
Desolate, desolate, will I hence, and die ;  
The last leave of thee takes my weeping eye.

[*Exeunt.*

<sup>6</sup> Her house in Essex.

## SCENE III.

Gosford Green, near Coventry.

*Lists set out, and a Throne. Heralds, &c. attending*

*Enter the Lord Marshal, and AUMERLE.*

*Mar.* My lord Aumerle, is Harry Hereford arm'd ?

*Aum.* Yea, at all points : and longs so enter in

*Mar.* The duke of Norfolk, sprightly and bold  
Stays but the summons of the appellant's trumpet

*Aum.* Why then, the champions are prepar'd  
and stay

For nothing but his majesty's approach.

*Flourish of Trumpets. Enter King RICHARD, who takes his seat on his throne ; GAUNT and several Noblemen, who take their places. A Trumpet is sounded, and answered by another Trumpet within. Then enter NORFOLK, in armour ; preceded by a Herald.*

*K. Rich.* Marshal, demand of yonder champion  
The cause of his arrival here in arms :

Ask him his name ; and orderly proceed  
To swear him in the justice of his cause.

*Mar.* In God's name, and the king's, say what  
thou art,

And why thou com'st, thus knightly clad in arms  
Against what man thou com'st, and what thy quarrel :

Speak truly, on thy knighthood, and thy oath ;  
And so defend thee heaven, and thy valour !

*Nor.* My name is Thomas Mowbray, duke of  
Norfolk ;

*Who hither come engaged by my oath.*

[Which, heaven defend, a knight should violate !]  
Both to defend my loyalty and truth,  
To God, my king, and my succeeding issue,  
Against the duke of Hereford that appeals me :  
And, by the grace of God, and this mine arm,  
To prove him, in defending of myself,  
A traitor to my God, my king, and me :  
And, as I truly fight, defend me heaven !

[*He takes his seat.*]

*Trumpet sounds. Enter BOLINGBROKE, in armour ;  
preceded by a Herald.*

*K. Rich.* Marshal, ask yonder knight in arms,  
Both who he is, and why he cometh hither  
Thus plated in habiliments of war ;  
And formally according to our law  
Depose him in the justice of his cause.

*Mar.* What is thy name ? and wherefore com'st  
thou hither,  
Before king Richard, in his royal lists ?  
Against whom comest thou ? and what's thy  
quarrel ?

Speak like a true knight, so defend thee heaven !

*Boling.* Harry of Hereford, Lancaster, and  
Derby,

Am I ; who ready here do stand in arms,  
To prove, by heaven's grace, and my body's valour,  
In lists, on Thomas Mowbray duke of Norfolk,  
That he's a traitor, foul and dangerous,  
To God of heaven, king Richard, and to me ;  
And as I truly fight, defend me heaven !

*Mar.* On pain of death, no person be so bold,  
Or daring-hardy, as to touch the lists ;  
Except the marshal, and such officers  
Appointed to direct these fair designs.

*Boling.* Lord marshal, let me kiss my sovereign's  
hand,

*And bow my knee before his majesty :  
For Mowbray, and myself, are like two men*



That vow a long and weary pilgrimage;  
Then let us take a ceremonious leave,  
And loving farewell, of our several friends.

*Mar.* The appellant in all duty greets your  
highness,  
And craves to kiss your hand, and take his leave.

*K. Rich.* We will descend, and fold him in our  
arms.

Cousin of Hereford, as thy cause is right,  
So be thy fortune in this royal fight !  
Farewell, my blood ; which if to-day thou shed,  
Lament we may, but not revenge thee dead.

*Boling.* O, let no noble eye profane a tear  
For me, if I be gored with Mowbray's spear ;  
As confident, as is the falcon's flight  
Against a bird, do I with Mowbray fight.—  
My loving lord, [*to Lord Marshal.*] I take my  
leave of you ;—

Of you, my noble Cousin, lord Aumerle ;—  
Not sick, although I have to do with death ;  
But lusty, young, and cheerly drawing breath.—  
Lo, as at English feasts, so I regreet  
The daintiest last, to make the end most sweet :  
O thou, the earthly author of my blood,—

[*To GAUNT.*

Whose youthful spirit, in me regenerate,  
Doth with a two-fold vigour lift me up  
To reach at victory above my head,—  
Add proof unto mine armour with thy prayers ;  
And with thy blessings steel my lance's point,  
That it may enter Mowbray's waxen coat,  
And furbish new the name of John of Gaunt,  
Even in the lusty 'haviour of his son.

*Gaunt.* Heaven in thy good cause make thee  
prosperous !

Be swift like lightning in the execution ;  
And let thy blows, doubly redoubled,  
Fall like amazing thunder on the casque

Of thy adverse pernicious enemy :

Rouse up thy youthful blood, be valiant, and live.

*Boling.* Mine innocency, and Saint George to thrive !  
[*He takes his seat.*]

*Nor.* [*Rising.*] However heaven, or fortune, cast my lot,

There lives or dies, true to king Richard's throne,

A loyal, just, and upright gentleman :

Never did captive with a freer heart

Cast off his chains of bondage, and embrace

His golden uncontroll'd enfranchisement,

More than my dancing soul doth celebrate

This feast of battle with mine adversary. —

Most mighty liege, — and my companion peers, —

Take from my mouth the wish of happy years :

As gentle and as jocund, as to jest,

Go I to fight ; Truth hath a quiet breast.

*K. Rich.* Farewell, my lord : securely I espy  
Virtue with valour couched in thine eye. —

Order the trial, marshal, and begin.

[*The King and the Lords return to their seats.*]

*Mar.* Harry of Hereford, Lancaster, and Derby,  
Receive thy lance ; and God defend the right !

*Boling.* [*Rising.*] Strong as a tower in hope, I  
cry — amen.

*Mar.* Go bear this lance [*to an Officer.*] to  
Thomas duke of Norfolk.

1 *Her.* Harry of Hereford, Lancaster, and  
Derby,

Stands here for God, his sovereign, and himself,

On pain to be found false and recreant,

To prove the duke of Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray,

A traitor to his God, his king, and him,

And dares him to set forward to the fight.

2 *Her.* Here standeth Thomas Mowbray, duke  
of Norfolk,

On pain to be found false and recreant,

Both to defend himself, and to approve

Henry of Hereford, Lancaster, and Derby,

To God, his sovereign, and to him disloyal ;  
Courageously, and with a free desire,  
Attending but the signal to begin.

*Mar.* Sound trumpets ; and set forward, combatants. *[A charge sounded.]*

Stay, the king hath thrown his warder<sup>7</sup> down.

*K. Rich.* Let them lay by their helmets and their spears,

And both return back to their chairs again : —  
Withdraw with us : — and let the trumpets sound,  
While we return these dukes what we decree. —

*[A long flourish.]*  
Draw near, *[To the Combatants.]*

And list, what with our council we have done.  
For that our kingdom's earth should not be soil'd  
With that dear blood which it hath fostered ;  
And for our eyes do hate the dire aspect  
Of civil wounds plough'd up with neighbours'  
swords ;

*[And for we think the eagle-winged pride  
Of sky-aspiring and ambitious thoughts,  
With rival-hating envy, set you on  
To wake our peace, which in our country's cradle  
Draws the sweet infant breath of gentle sleep ;]  
Which so rous'd up, with boisterous untun'd drums,  
With harsh resounding trumpets' dreadful bray,  
And grating shock of wrathful iron arms,  
Might from our quiet confines fright fair peace,  
And make us wade even in our kindred's blood ; —  
Therefore we banish you our territories : —  
You, cousin Hereford, upon pain of death,  
Till twice five summers have enrich'd our fields,  
Shall not regret our fair dominions,  
But tread the stranger paths of banishment.*

*Boling.* Your will be done : This must my comfort be, —

That sun, that warms you here, shall shine on me ;

<sup>7</sup> Truncheon.

And those his golden beams, to you here lent,  
Shall point on me, and gild my banishment.

*K. Rich.* Norfolk, for thee remains a heavier  
doom,

Which I with some unwillingness pronounce :  
The fly-slow hours shall not determinate  
The dateless limit of thy dear exile ; —  
The hopeless word of — never to return  
Breathe I against thee, upon pain of life.

*Nor.* A heavy sentence, my most sovereign liege,  
And all unlook'd for from your highness' mouth :  
A dearer merit, not so deep a maim  
As to be cast forth in the common air,  
Have I deserved at your highness' hand.  
The language I have learn'd these forty years,  
My native English, now I must forego,  
And now my tongue's use is to me no more,  
Than an unstringed viol or a harp ;  
Or like a cunning instrument cas'd up,  
Or, being open, put into his hands  
That knows no touch to tune the harmony,  
Within my mouth you have engaol'd my tongue,  
Doubly portcullis'd, with my teeth, and lips ;  
And dull, unfeeling barren ignorance  
Is made my gaoler to attend on me.

I am too old to fawn upon a nurse,  
Too far in years to be a pupil now ;  
What is thy sentence, then, but speechless death,  
Which robs my tongue from breathing native breath ?

*K. Rich.* It boots thee not to be compassionate ;  
After our sentence, plaining comes too late.

*Nor.* Then thus I turn me from my country's  
light,  
To dwell in solemn shades of endless night.

[Retiring.]

*K. Rich.* Return again, and take an oath with  
thee.

Lay on our royal sword your banish'd hands ;  
Swear by the duty that you owe to heaven,

(Our part therein we banish with yourselves,) To keep the oath that we administer : —  
You never shall, (so help your truth and heaven !  
Embrace each other's love in banishment ;  
Nor never look upon each other's face ;  
Nor never write, regreet, nor reconcile  
This lowering tempest of your home-bred hate ;  
Nor never by advised purpose meet,  
To plot, contrive, or complot any ill,  
'Gainst us, our state, our subjects, or our land.

*Boling.* I swear.

*Nor.* And I, to keep all this.

*Boling.* Norfolk, so far as to mine enemy ; —  
By this time, had the king permitted us,  
One of our souls had wander'd in the air,  
Banish'd this frail sepulchre of our flesh,  
As now our flesh is banish'd from this land :  
Confess thy treasons, ere thou fly the realm  
Since thou hast far to go, bear not along  
The clogging burden of a guilty soul.

*Nor.* No, Bolingbroke ; if ever I were traitor,  
My name be blotted from the book of life,  
And I from heaven banish'd, as from hence !  
But what thou art, heaven, thou, and I do know ;  
And all too soon, I fear, the king shall rue. —  
Farewell, my liege : — Now no way can I stray ;  
Save back to England, all the world's my way.

[*Exit*

*K. Rich.* Uncle, even in the glasses of thine eyes  
I see thy grieved heart, thy sad aspect  
Hath from the number of his banish'd years  
Pluck'd four away ; — Six frozen winters spent,  
Return [*to BOLING.*] with welcome home from  
banishment.

*Boling.* How long a time lies in one little word  
Four lagging winters, and four wanton springs,  
End in a word ; such is the breath of kings.

*Gaunt.* I thank my liege, that in regard of me,  
He shortens four years of my son's exile :

But little vantage shall I reap thereby ;  
For, ere the six years that he hath to spend,  
Can change their moons, and bring their times  
about,

My oil-dried lamp, and time bewasted light,  
Shall be extinct with age and endless night ;  
My inch of taper will be burnt and done,  
And blindfold death not let me see my son.

*K. Rich.* Why, uncle, thou hast many years to live.

*Gaunt.* But not a minute, king, that thou canst  
give :

Shorten my days thou canst with sullen sorrow,  
And pluck nights from me, but not lend a morrow :  
Thou canst help time to furrow me with age,  
But stop no wrinkle in his pilgrimage ;  
Thy word is current with him for my death ;  
But, dead, thy kingdom cannot buy my breath.

*K. Rich.* Thy son is banish'd upon good advice ;  
Whereto thy tongue a party verdict gave ;<sup>8</sup>  
Why at our justice seem'st thou then to lower ?

*Gaunt.* Things sweet to taste, prove in digestion  
sour.

You urg'd me as a judge ; but I had rather,  
You would have bid me argue like a father : —  
O, had it been a stranger, not my child,  
To smooth his fault, I should have been more mild :  
A partial slander<sup>9</sup> sought I to avoid,  
And in the sentence my own like destroy'd.  
Alas, I look'd, when some of you should say,  
I was too strict, to make mine own away ;  
But you gave leave to my unwilling tongue,  
Against my will to do myself this wrong.

*K. Rich.* Cousin, farewell : — and, uncle, bid  
him so,

Six years we banish him, and he shall go.

[*Flourish.* *Exeunt K. RICHARD and Train.*

<sup>8</sup> Had a part or share.

<sup>9</sup> Reproach of partiality.

*Aum.* Cousin, farewell : what presence must I know,

From where you do remain let paper show.

*Mar.* My Lord, no leave take I ; for I will ride  
As far as land will let me, by your side.

*Gaunt.* O, to what purpose dost thou hoard these words,

That thou return'st no greeting to thy friends ?

*Boling.* I have too few to take my leave of yet  
When the tongue's office should be prodigal

To breathe the abundant dolour of the heart.

*Gaunt.* Thy grief is but thy absence for a time

*Boling.* Joy absent, grief is present for that time

*Gaunt.* What is six winters ? they are quickly gone.

*Boling.* To men in joy ; but grief makes a long hour ten.

*Gaunt.* Call it a travel that thou tak'st for pleasure.

*Boling.* My heart will sigh, when I miscall it  
Which finds it an enforced pilgrimage.

*Gaunt.* The sullen passage of thy weary step  
Esteem a foil, wherein thou art to set  
The precious jewel of thy home-return.

*Boling.* Nay, rather, every tedious stride I  
Will but remember me what a deal of world  
I wander from the jewels that I love.

Must I not serve a long apprenticeship  
To foreign passages, and in the end,  
Having my freedom, boast of nothing else,  
But that I was a journeyman to grief ?

*Gaunt.* All places that the eye of heaven  
Are to a wise man ports and happy havens ;  
Teach thy necessity to reason thus ;  
There is no virtue like necessity.

Think not the king did banish thee ;

But thou the king : Woe doth the heavens

Where it perceives it is but faintly born

Go, say — I sent thee forth to purchase  
And not — the king exil'd thee : or a

Devouring pestilence hangs in our air,  
And thou art flying to a fresher clime.  
Look, what thy soul holds dear, imagine it  
To lie that way thou go'st, not whence thou com'st :  
Suppose the singing birds, musicians ;  
The grass whereon thou tread'st, the presence<sup>1</sup>  
                  strew'd ;

The flowers, fair ladies ; and thy steps, no more  
Than a delightful measure, or a dance :  
For gnarling<sup>2</sup> sorrow hath less power to bite  
The man that mocks at it, and sets it light.

*Boling.* O, who can hold a fire in his hand,  
By thinking on the frosty Caucasus ?  
Or cloy the hungry edge of appetite,  
By bare imagination of a feast ?  
Or wallow naked in December snow,  
By thinking on fantastick summer's heat ?  
O, no, the apprehension of the good,  
Gives but the greater feeling to the worse :  
Fell sorrow's tooth doth never rankle more,  
Than when it bites, but lanceth not the sore.

*Gaunt.* Come, come, my son, I'll bring thee on  
                  thy way :

Had I thy youth, and cause, I would not stay.

*Boling.* Then, England's ground, farewell ; sweet  
                  soil, adieu ;

My mother, and my nurse, that bears me yet !  
Where-e'er I wander, boast of this I can, ——  
Though banish'd, yet a trueborn Englishman.

[*Exeunt.*

<sup>1</sup> Presence chamber at court.

<sup>2</sup> Growling.



## SCENE IV.

*The same. A Room in the King's Castle.*

*Enter King RICHARD, BAGOT, and GREEN;  
AUMERLE following.*

*K. Rich.* We did observe. — Cousin Aumerle,  
How far brought you high Hereford on his way?

*Aum.* I brought high Hereford, if you call him so,  
But to the next high way, and there I left him.

*K. Rich.* And, say, what store of parting tears  
were shed?

*Aum.* 'Faith, none by me: except the north-  
east wind,

Which then blew bitterly against our faces,  
Awak'd the sleeping rheum; and so, by chance,  
Did grace our hollow parting with a tear.

*K. Rich.* What said our cousin, when you parted  
with him?

*Aum.* Farewell:

And, for my heart disdained that my tongue  
Should so profane the word, that taught me craft  
To counterfeit oppression of such grief,  
That words seem'd buried in my sorrow's grave.  
Marry, would the word farewell have lengthen'd  
hours,

And added years to his short banishment,  
He should have had a volume of farewells;  
But, since it would not, he had none of me.

*K. Rich.* He is our cousin, cousin; but 'tis doubt,  
When time shall call him home from banishment,  
Whether our kinsman come to see his friends.  
Ourself, and Bushy, Bagot here, and Green,  
Observ'd his courtship to the common people: —  
How he did seem to dive into their hearts,  
With humble and familiar courtesy;  
What reverence he did throw away on slaves:

Though Richard my life's counsel would not hear,  
My death's sad tale may yet undeaf his ear.

*York.* No; it is stopp'd with other flattering  
sounds,

As, praises of his state: then, there are found  
Lascivious metres; to whose venom sound  
The open ear of youth doth always listen:  
Report of fashions in proud Italy;  
Whose manners still our tardy apish nation  
Limps after, in base imitation,  
Where doth the world thrust forth a vanity,  
(So it be new, there's no respect how vile,)  
That is not quickly buzz'd into his ears?  
Then all too late comes counsel to be heard,  
Where will doth mutiny with wit's regard.  
Direct not him, whose way himself will choose;  
'Tis breath thou lack'st, and that breath wilt thou  
lose.

*Gaunt.* Methinks, I am a prophet new inspir'd;  
And thus, expiring, do foretell of him:  
His rash fierce blaze of riot cannot last:  
For violent fires soon burn out themselves:  
Small showers last long, but sudden storms are short;  
He tires betimes, that spurs too fast betimes;  
With eager feeding, food doth choke the feeder:  
Light vanity, insatiate cormorant,  
Consuming means, soon preys upon itself.  
This royal throne of kings, this scepter'd isle,  
This earth of majesty, this seat of Mars,  
This other Eden, demi-paradise;  
This fortress, built by nature for herself,  
Against infection, and the hand of war;  
This happy breed of men, this little world;  
This precious stone set in the silver sea,  
Which serves it in the office of a wall,  
Or as a moat defensive to a house,  
Against the envy of less happier lands;  
This blessed plot, this earth, this realm, this  
England,

This nurse, this teeming womb of royal kings,  
Fear'd by their breed, and famous by their birth,  
Renowned for their deeds as far from home,  
(For Christian service; and true chivalry,)  
As is the sepulchre in stubborn Jewry,  
Of the world's ransom, blessed Mary's son :  
This land of such dear souls, this dear dear land,  
Dear for her reputation through the world,  
Is now leas'd out (I die pronouncing it,)   
Like to a tenement or pelting<sup>b</sup> farm :  
England, bound in with the triumphant sea,  
Whose rocky shore beats back the envious siege  
Of watery Neptune, is now bound in with shame,  
With inky blots, and rotten parchment bonds ;  
That England, that was wont to conquer others,  
Hath made a shameful conquest of itself :  
O, would the scandal vanish with my life,  
How happy then were my ensuing death !

*Enter King RICHARD, and Queen; AUMERLE,  
BUSHY, GREEN, BAGOT, ROSS, and WIL-  
LOUGHBY.*

*York.* The king is come : deal mildly with his  
youth ;

For young hot colts, being rag'd, do rage the more.

*Queen.* How fares our noble uncle, Lancaster ?

*K. Rich.* What comfort, man ? How is't with aged  
Gaunt ?

*Gaunt.* O, how that name befits my composition<sup>c</sup>  
Old Gaunt, indeed ; and gaunt<sup>d</sup> in being old :  
Within me grief hath kept a tedious fast ;  
And who abstains from meat, that is not gaunt ?  
For sleeping England long time have I watch'd ;  
Watching breeds leanness, leanness is all gaunt :  
The pleasure that some fathers feed upon,  
Is my strict fast, I mean — my children's looks ;

<sup>b</sup> Paltry.

<sup>c</sup> Lean, thin.

And, therein fasting, hast thou made me gaunt :  
Gaunt am I for the grave, gaunt as a grave,  
Whose hollow womb inherits nought but bones.

*K. Rich.* Can sick men play so nicely with their names ?

*Gaunt.* No, misery makes sport to mock itself :  
Since thou dost seek to kill my name in me,  
I mock my name, great king, to flatter thee.

*K. Rich.* Should dying men flatter with those that live ?

*Gaunt.* No, no; men living flatter those that die.

*K. Rich.* Thou, now a dying, say'st — thou flatter'st me.

*Gaunt.* Oh! no; thou diest, though I the sicker be.

*K. Rich.* I am in health, I breathe, and see thee ill.

*Gaunt.* Now, He that made me, knows I see thee ill ;

Ill in myself to see, and in thee seeing ill.  
Thy death-bed is no lesser than the land,  
Wherein thou liest in reputation sick :  
And thou, too careless patient as thou art,  
Commit'st thy anointed body to the cure  
Of those physicians that first wounded thee :  
A thousand flatterers sit within thy crown,  
Whose compass is no bigger than thy head ;  
And yet, incaged in so small a verge,  
The waste is no whit lesser than thy land.  
O, had thy grandsire, with a prophet's eye,  
Seen how his son's son should destroy his sons,  
From forth thy reach he would have laid thy shame ;  
Deposing thee before thou wert possess'd,  
Which art possess'd now to depose thyself.  
Why, cousin, wert thou regent of the world,  
It were a shame to let this land by lease :  
But, for thy world, enjoying but this land,  
Is it not more than shame, to shame it so ?  
Landlord of England art thou now, not king :  
Thy state of law is bondsman to the law ;  
And thou —

*K. Rich.* — a lunatick lean-witted fool,  
 Presuming on an ague's privilege,  
 Dar'st with thy frozen admonition  
 Make pale our cheek ; chasing the royal bloo  
 With fury, from his native residence.  
 Now by my seat's right royal majesty,  
 Wert thou not brother to great Edward's son,  
 This tongue that runs so roundly in thy head,  
 Should run thy head from thy unreverend shou

*Gaunt.* O, spare me not, my brother Edward'  
 For that I was his father Edward's son ;  
 That blood already, like the pelican,  
 Hast thou tapp'd out, and drunkenly carous'd  
 My brother Gloster, plain well-meaning soul,  
 (Whom fair befall in heaven 'mongst happy so  
 May be a precedent and witness good,  
 That thou respect'st not spilling Edward's bl  
 Join with the present sickness that I have ;  
 And thy unkindness be like crooked age,  
 To crop at once a too-long wither'd flower.  
 Live in thy shame, but die not shame with th  
 These words hereafter thy tormentors be, —  
 Convey me to my bed, then to my grave :  
 Love they to live, that love and honour have

[*Exit, borne out by his Atten*

*K. Rich.* And let them die, that age and s  
 have ;  
 For both hast thou, and both become the gr  
 York. 'Beseech your majesty, impute his v  
 To wayward sickliness and age in him :  
 He loves you, on my life, and holds you dea  
 As Harry duke of Hereford, were he here.

*K. Rich.* Right ; you say true : as Hereford'  
 so his :  
 As theirs, so mine ; and all be as it is.

*Enter NORTHUMBERLAND.*

*North.* My liege, old Gaunt comme  
 your majesty.

*K. Rich.* What says he now ?

*North.* Nay, nothing ; all is said :

His tongue is now a stringless instrument ;

Words, life, and all, old Lancaster hath spent.

*York.* Be York the next that must be bankrupt so !  
Though death-be poor, it ends a mortal woe.

*K. Rich.* The ripest fruit first falls, and so doth he ;  
His time is spent, our pilgrimage must be :

So much for that. — Now for our Irish wars :

We must supplant those rough rug-headed kerns ;<sup>7</sup>

Which live like venom, where no venom else,

But only they, hath privilege to live.

And for these great affairs do ask some charge,

Towards our assistance, we do seize to us

The plate, coin, revenues, and moveables,

Whereof our uncle Gaunt did stand possess'd.

*York.* How long shall I be patient ? Ah, how long  
Shall tender duty make me suffer wrong ?

Not Gloster's death, nor Hereford's banishment,

Not Gaunt's rebukes, nor England's private wrongs,

Nor the prevention of poor Bolingbroke

About his marriage, nor my own disgrace,

Have ever made me sour my patient cheek,

Or bend one wrinkle on my sovereign's face. —

I am the last of noble Edward's sons,

Of whom thy father, prince of Wales, was first ;

In war, was never lion rag'd more fierce,

In peace was never gentle lamb more mild,

Than was that young and princely gentleman :

His face thou hast, for even so look'd he,

Accomplish'd with the number of thy hours ;

But, when he frown'd, it was against the French,

And not against his friends : his noble hand

Did win what he did spend, and spent not that

Which his triumphant father's hand had won :

His hands were guilty of no kindred's blood,

But bloody with the enemies of his kin.

<sup>7</sup> Irish soldiers.

O, Richard! York is too far gone with grief,  
Or else he never would compare between.

*K. Rich.* Why, uncle, what's the matter?

*York.*

O, my l

Pardon me, if you please; if not, I, pleas'd  
Not to be pardon'd, am content withal.

Seek you to seize, and gripe into your hands,  
The royalties and rights of banish'd Hereford  
Is not Gaunt dead? and doth not Hereford liv  
Was not Gaunt just? and is not Harry true?  
Did not the one deserve to have an heir?

Is not his heir a well-deserving son?

Take Hereford's rights away, and take from t  
His charters, and his customary rights;

Let not to-morrow then ensue to-day;

Be not thyself, for how art thou a king,

But by fair sequence and succession?

If you do wrongfully seize Hereford's rights,  
Call in the letters patent that he hath

By his attornies-general to sue

His livery<sup>s</sup>, and deny his offer'd homage,

You pluck a thousand dangers on your head,

You lose a thousand well-disposed hearts,

And prick my tender patience to those thought  
Which honour and allegiance cannot think.

*K. Rich.* Think what you will; we seize into  
hands

His plate, his goods, his money, and his lands

*York.* I'll not be by, the while: My liege,  
well:

What will ensue hereof, there's none can tell;

But by bad courses may be understood,

That their events can never fall out good. [

*K. Rich.* Go, Bushy, to the earl of Will  
straight;

Bid him repair to us to Ely-house,

To see this business: To-morrow next

*We will for Ireland; and 'tis time, I trow:*

<sup>s</sup> Claim possession; a law term.

And we create, in absence of ourself,  
Our uncle York lord governor of England,  
For he is just, and always lov'd us well. —  
Come on, our queen : to-morrow must we part ;  
Be merry, for our time of stay is short. [*Flourish.*  
[*Exeunt King, Queen, BUSHY, AUMERLE,*  
*GREEN, and BAGOT.*

*North.* Well, lords, the duke of Lancaster is dead.

*Ross.* And living too ; for now his son is duke.

*Will.* Barely in title, not in revenue.

*North.* Richly in both, if justice had her right.

*Ross.* My heart is great ; but it must break with  
silence,

Ere't be disburden'd with a liberal tongue.

*North.* Nay, speak thy mind ; and let him ne'er  
speak more,

That speaks thy words again, to do thee harm !

*Will.* Tends that thou'dst speak, to the duke of  
Hereford ?

If it be so, out with it boldly, man ;

Quick is mine ear to hear of good towards him.

*Ross.* No good at all, that I can do for him ;

Unless you call it good to pity him,

Stript and bereft of all his patrimony.

*North.* Now, afore heaven, 'tis shame, such  
wrongs are borne,

In him a royal prince, and many more

Of noble blood in this declining land.

The king is not himself, but basely led

By flatterers ; and what they will inform,

Merely in hate, 'gainst any of us all,

That will the king severely prosecute

'Gainst us, our lives, our children, and our heirs.

*Ross.* The commons hath he pill'd<sup>9</sup> with grievous  
taxes,

And lost their hearts ; the nobles hath he fin'd

For ancient quarrels, and quite lost their hearts.

<sup>9</sup> Pillaged.



*Willo.* And daily new exactions are devis'd ;  
As blanks, benevolences, and I wot not what :  
But what, in heaven's name, doth become of this ?

*North.* Wars have not wasted it, for warr'd he  
hath not,

But basely yielded upon compromise  
That which his ancestors achiev'd with blows :  
More hath he spent in peace, than they in wars.

*Ross.* The earl of Wiltshire hath the realm in  
farm.

*Willo.* The king's grown bankrupt, like a broken  
man.

*North.* Reproach, and dissolution, hangeth over  
him.

*Ross.* He hath not money for these Irish wars,  
His burdenous taxations notwithstanding,  
But by the robbing of the banish'd duke.

*North.* His noble kinsman : most degenerate king !  
But, lords, we hear this fearful tempest sing.  
Yet seek no shelter to avoid the storm :  
We see the wind sit sore upon our sails,  
And yet we strike not, but securely perish. <sup>1</sup>

*Ross.* We see the very wreck that we must suffer ;  
And unavoids is the danger now,  
For suffering so the causes of our wreck.

*North.* Not so ; even through the hollow eyes of  
death,  
I spy life peering ; but I dare not say  
How near the tidings of our comfort is.

*Willo.* Nay let us share thy thoughts, as thou  
dost ours.

*Ross.* Be confident to speak, Northumberland :  
We three are but thyself ; and speaking so,  
Thy words are but as thoughts ; therefore, be bold.

*North.* Then thus : — I have from Port le Blanc,  
a bay

<sup>1</sup> Perish by confidence in our security.

In Brittany, receiv'd intelligence,  
 That Harry Hereford, Reignold lord Cobham,  
 [The son of Richard Earl of Arundel,]  
 That late broke from the duke of Exeter,  
 His brother, archbishop late of Canterbury,  
 Sir Thomas Erpingham, sir John Ramston,  
 Sir John Norbery, sir Robert Waterton, and Francis  
 Quoint,——

All these well furnish'd by the duke of Bretagne,  
 With eight tall<sup>2</sup> ships, three thousand men of war,  
 Are making hither with all due expedience,<sup>3</sup>  
 And shortly mean to touch our northern shore :  
 Perhaps, they had ere this ; but that they stay  
 The first departing of the king for Ireland.  
 If then, we shall shake off our slavish yoke,  
 Imp<sup>4</sup> out our drooping country's broken wing,  
 Redeem from broking pawn the blemish'd crown,  
 Wipe off the dust that hides our scepter's gilt,<sup>5</sup>  
 And make high majesty look like itself,  
 Away, with me, in post to Ravenspurgh :  
 But if you faint, as fearing to do so,  
 Stay, and be secret, and myself will go.

*Ross.* To horse, to horse ! urge doubts to them  
 that fear.

*Willo.* Hold out my horse, and I will first be  
 there. [Exeunt.

## SCENE II.

*The same. A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter Queen, BUSHY, and BAGOT.*

*Bushy.* Madam, your majesty is too much sad :  
 You promis'd, when you parted with the king,  
 To lay aside life-harming heaviness,  
 And entertain a cheerful disposition.

<sup>2</sup> Stout.    <sup>3</sup> Expedition.    <sup>4</sup> Supply with new feathers  
<sup>5</sup> Gilding.



But what it is, that is not yet known ; what  
I cannot name ; 'tis nameless woe, I wot.<sup>8</sup>

*Enter GREEN.*

*Green.* Heaven save your majesty !—and well  
met, gentlemen :—  
I hope, the king is not yet shipp'd for Ireland.

*Queen.* Why hop'st thou so ? 'tis better hope, he is ;  
For his designs crave haste, his haste good hope ;  
Then wherefore dost thou hope, he is not shipp'd ?

*Green.* That he, our hope, might have retir'd his  
pow'r,  
And driven into despair an enemy's hope,  
Who strongly hath set footing in this land :  
The banish'd Bolingbroke repeals himself,  
And with uplifted arms is safe arriv'd  
At Ravenspurgh.

*Queen.* Now God in heaven forbid !

*Green.* O, madam, 'tis too true : and that is  
worse,—  
The lord Northumberland, his young son Henry  
Percy,  
The lords of Ross, Beaumont, and Willoughby,  
With all their powerful friends, are fled to him.

*Bushy.* Why have you not proclaim'd Northum-  
berland,  
And all the rest of the revolting faction  
Traitors ?

*Green.* We have : whereon the earl of Worcester  
Hath broke his staff, resign'd his stewardship,  
And all the household servants fled with him  
To Bolingbroke.

*Queen.* So, Green, thou art the midwife to my woe,  
And Bolingbroke my sorrow's dismal heir :  
Now hath my soul brought forth her prodigy ;

And I, a gasping new-deliver'd mother,  
Have woe to woe, sorrow to sorrow join'd.

*Bushy.* Despair not, madam.

*Queen.* Who shall hinder me?  
I will despair, and be at enmity  
With cozening hope; he is a flatterer.  
A parasite, a keeper-back of death,  
Who gently would dissolve the bands of life.  
Which false hope lingers in extremity.

*Enter YORK.*

*Green.* Here comes the duke of York.

*Queen.* With signs of war about his aged neck;  
O, full of careful business are his looks! —  
Uncle,

For heaven's sake, speak comfortable words.

*York.* Should I do so, I should belie my thoughts  
Comfort's in heaven; and we are on the earth,  
Where nothing lives but crosses, care, and grief.  
Your husband he is gone to save far off,  
Whilst others come to make him lose at home:  
Here am I left to underprop his land;  
Who, weak with age, cannot support myself; —  
Now comes the sick hour that his surfeit made;  
Now shall he try his friends that flatter'd him.

*Enter a Servant.*

*Serv.* My lord, your son was gone before I came.

*York.* He was? — Why, so! — go all which way  
it will! —

The nobles they are fled, the commons cold,  
And will, I fear, revolt on Hereford's side. —  
Sirrah,

Get thee to Plashy, to my sister Gloster:  
Bid her send me presently a thousand pound: —  
*Hold, take my ring.*

*Serv.* My lord, I had forgot to tell your lordship

To-day, as I came by, I called there ;  
But I shall grieve you to report the rest.

*York.* What is it, knave ?

*Serv.* An hour before I came, the duchess died.

*York.* God for his mercy ! what a tide of woes  
Comes rushing on this woeful land at once !  
I know not what to do : — I would to heaven,  
(So my untruth<sup>9</sup> had not provok'd him to it,)  
The king had cut off my head with my brother's. —  
What, are there posts despatch'd for Ireland ? —  
How shall we do for money for these wars ? —  
Come, sister, — cousin, I would say, pray, pardon  
me. —

Go, fellow, [*to the Servant.*] get thee home, pro-  
vide some carts,

And bring away the armour that is there. —

[*Exit Servant.*]

Gentlemen, will you go muster men ? if I know  
How, or which way, to order these affairs,  
Thus thrust disorderly into my hands,  
Never believe me. Both are my kinsmen ; —  
The one's my sovereign, whom both my oath  
And duty bids defend ; the other again,  
Is my kinsman, whom the king hath wrong'd ;  
Whom conscience and my kindred bids to right.  
Well, somewhat we must do. — Come, cousin, I'll  
Dispose of you : — Go, muster up your men,  
And meet me presently at Berkley-castle.  
I should to Plashy too ; —  
But time will not permit : — All is uneven,  
And every thing is left at six and seven. •

[*Exeunt YORK and Queen.*]

*Bushy.* The wind sits fair for news to go to Ire-  
land,

But none returns. For us to levy power,  
Proportionable to the enemy,  
Is all impossible.

<sup>9</sup> Disloyalty.

*Green.* Besides, our nearness to the king in  
Is near the hate of those love not the king.

*Bagot.* And that's the wavering commons :  
their love

Lies in their purses ; and whoso empties them,  
By so much fills their hearts with deadly hate.

*Bushy.* Wherein the king stands generally  
demn'd.

*Bagot.* If judgment lie in them, then so do  
Because we ever have been near the king.

*Green.* Well, I'll for refuge straight to Bri  
castle ;

The earl of Wiltshire is already there.

*Bushy.* Thither will I with you : for little  
The hateful commons will perform for us ;  
Except like curs to tear us all to pieces.—  
Will you go along with us?

*Bagot.* No ; I'll to Ireland to his majesty.  
Farewell : if heart's presages be not vain,  
We three here part, that ne'er shall meet again

*Bushy.* That's as York thrives to beat h  
Bolingbroke.

*Green.* Alas, poor duke ! the task he undert  
Is — numb'ring sands, and drinking oceans dry  
Where one on his side fights, thousands will fly

*Bushy.* Farewell at once ; for once, for all,  
ever.

*Green.* Well, we may meet again.

*Bagot.* I fear me, ne  
[*Exe*

### SCENE III.

*The Wilds in Glostershire.*

*Enter BOLINGBROKE and NORTHUMBERLAND  
with Forces.*

*Boling.* How far is it, my lord, to Berkley ne  
*North.* Believe me, noble lord,

I am a stranger here in Glostershire.

These high wild hills, and rough uneven ways,  
Draw out our miles, and make them wearisome :  
And yet your fair discourse hath been as sugar,  
Making the hard way sweet and délectable.

But, I bethink me, what a weary way  
From Ravenspurg to Cotswold, will be found  
In Ross and Willoughby, wanting your company ;  
Which, I protest, hath very much beguil'd  
The tediousness and process of my travel :  
But theirs is sweeten'd with the hope to have  
The present benefit which I possess :  
And hope to joy, is little less in joy,  
Than hope enjoy'd : by this the weary lords  
Shall make their way seem short ; as mine hath done  
By sight of what I have, your noble company.

*Boling.* Of much less value is my company,  
Than your good words. But who comes here ?

*Enter HARRY PERCY.*

*North.* It is my son, young Harry Percy,  
Sent from my brother Worcester, whencesoever.—  
Harry, how fares your uncle ?

*Percy.* I have thought, my lord, to have learn'd  
his health of you.

*North.* Why, is he not with the queen ?

*Percy.* No, my good lord ; he hath forsook the  
court,

Broken his staff of office, and dispers'd  
The household of the king.

*North.* What was his reason ?  
He was not so resolv'd, when last we spake together.

*Percy.* Because your lordship was proclaimed  
traitor.

But he my lord, is gone to Ravenspurg,  
To offer service to the duke of Hereford ;  
And sent me o'er by Berkley, to discover  
What power the duke of York had levied there ;  
Then with direction to repair to Ravenspurg.



*North.* Have you forget the duke of Hereford boy?

*Percy.* No my good lord; for that is not forgot  
Which ne'er I did remember! to my knowledge  
I never in my life did look on him.

*North.* Then learn to know him now; this is the duke.

*Percy.* My gracious lord, I tender you my service  
Such as it is, being tender, raw, and young;  
Which elder days shall ripen and confirm  
To more approved service and desert.

*Boling.* I thank thee, gentle Percy; and be sure  
I count myself in nothing else so happy,  
As in a soul remembring my good friends;  
And, as my fortune ripens with thy love,  
It shall be still thy true love's recompense:  
My heart this covenant makes, my hand thus seals

*North.* How far is it to Berkley? And what  
Keeps good old York there, with his men of war

*Percy.* There stands the castle, by yon tuft  
trees,  
Mann'd with three hundred men, as I have heard  
And in it are the lords of York, Berkley, and Se-  
mour;

None else of name, and noble estimate.

*Enter Ross and WILLOUGHBY.*

*North.* Here come the lords of Ross and Wil-  
loughby,  
Bloody with spurring, fiery-red with haste.

*Boling.* Welcome, my lords: I wot<sup>1</sup>, your love  
pursues

A banish'd traitor; all my treasury  
Is yet but unfelt thanks, which, more enrich'd,  
Shall be your love and labour's recompense.

*Ross.* Your presence makes us rich, most noble  
lord.

<sup>1</sup> Know.

*Willo.* And far surmounts our labour to attain it.

*Boling.* Evermore thanks, the exchequer of the  
poor ;

Which, till my infant fortune comes to years,  
Stand for my bounty. But who comes here ?

*Enter BERKLEY.*

*North.* It is my lord of Berkley, as I guess.

*Berk.* My lord of Hereford, my message is to you.

*Boling.* My lord, my answer is — to Lancaster ;  
And I am come to seek that name in England :  
And I must find that title in your tongue,  
Before I make reply to aught you say.

*Berk.* Mistake me not, my lord ; 'tis not my  
meaning,

To raze one title of your honour out : —  
To you, my lord, I come, (what lord you will,)  
From the most glorious regent of this land,  
The Duke of York ; to know, what pricks you on  
To take advantage of the absent time,<sup>2</sup>  
And fright our native peace with self-born arms.

*Enter YORK attended.*

*Boling.* I shall not need transport my words by  
you,  
Here comes his grace in person. — My noble uncle !

[*Kneels.*

*York.* Show me thy humble heart, and not thy  
knee,  
Whose duty is deceivable and false.

*Boling.* My gracious uncle ! —

*York.* Tut, tut !

Grace me no grace, nor uncle me no uncle :  
I am no traitor's uncle ; and that word — grace,  
In an ungracious mouth, is but profane.

<sup>2</sup> *Time of the king's absence.*

Why have those banish'd and forbidden legs  
Dar'd once to touch a dust of England's ground?  
But then more why;— Why have they dar'd to  
march

So many miles upon her peaceful bosom;  
Frighting her pale-fac'd villages with war,  
And ostentation of despised arms?  
Com'st thou because the anointed king is hence?  
Why, foolish boy, the king is left behind,  
And in my loyal bosom lies his power.  
Were I but now the lord of such hot youth,  
As when brave Gaunt, thy father, and myself,  
Rescued the black Prince, that young Mars of men.  
From forth the ranks of many thousand French;  
O, then, how quickly should this arm of mine,  
Now prisoner to the palsy, chastise thee,  
And minister correction to thy fault!

*Boling.* My gracious uncle, let me know my fault;  
On what condition stands it, and wherein?

*York.* Even in condition of the worst degree, —  
In gross rebellion, and detested treason:  
Thou art a banish'd man, and here art come,  
Before the expiration of thy time,  
In braving arms against thy sovereign.

*Boling.* As I was banish'd, I was banish'd Here-  
ford;

But as I come, I come for Lancaster.  
And, noble uncle, I beseech your grace,  
Look on my wrongs with an indifferent<sup>s</sup> eye:  
You are my father, for, methinks, in you  
I see old Gaunt alive; O, then, my father!  
Will you permit that I shall stand condemn'd  
A wand'ring vagabond; my rights and royalties  
Pluck'd from my arms perforce, and given away  
To upstart unthrifths? Wherefore was I born?  
If that my cousin king be king of England,  
It must be granted, I am duke of Lancaster.

You have a son, Aumerle, my noble kinsman ;  
Had you first died, and he had been thus trod down,  
He should have found his uncle Gaunt a father,  
To rouse his wrongs<sup>4</sup>, and chase them to the bay.  
I am denied to sue my livery<sup>5</sup> here,  
And yet my letters-patent give me leave :  
My father's goods are all distrain'd, and sold ;  
And these, and all, are all amiss employ'd.  
What would you have me do ? I am a subject,  
And challenge law : Attornies are denied me ;  
And therefore personally I lay my claim  
To my inheritance of free descent.

*North.* The noble duke hath been too much  
abus'd.

*Ross.* It stands your grace upon<sup>6</sup>, to do him right.

*Willo.* Base men by his endowments are made  
great.

*York.* My lords of England, let me tell you this,—  
I have had feeling of my cousin's wrongs,  
And labour'd all I could to do him right :  
But in this kind to come, in braving arms,  
Be his own carver, and cut out his way,  
To find out right with wrong, — it may not be ;  
And you, that do abet him in this kind,  
Cherish rebellion, and are rebels all.

*North.* The noble duke hath sworn, his coming is  
But for his own : and, for the right of that,  
We all have strongly sworn to give him aid ;  
And let him ne'er see joy, that breaks that oath.

*York.* Well, well, I see the issue of these arms ;  
I cannot mend it, I must needs confess,  
Because my power is weak, and all ill left :  
But, if I could, by him that gave me life,  
I would attach you all, and make you stoop  
Unto the sovereign mercy of the king ;  
But, since I cannot, be it known to you,

<sup>4</sup> The persons who wrong him.

<sup>5</sup> Possession of my land, &c. <sup>6</sup> It is your interest.

I do remain as neuter. So, fare you well ; —  
 Unless you please to enter in the castle,  
 And there repose you for this night.

*Boling.* An offer, uncle, that we will accept.  
 But we must win your grace, to go with us  
 To Bristol castle ; which, they say, is held  
 By Bushy, Bagot, and their complices,  
 The caterpillars of the commonwealth,  
 Which I have sworn to weed, and pluck away.

*York.* It may be, I will go with you : — but y  
 I'll pause ;

For I am loath to break our country's laws.  
 Nor friends, nor foes, to me welcome you are :  
 Things past redress, are now with me past care.

[*Exeun*

SCENE IV.

*A Camp in Wales.*

*Enter SALISBURY, and a Captain.*

*Capt.* My lord of Salisbury, we have staid t  
 days,  
 And hardly kept our countrymen together,  
 And yet we hear no tidings from the king :  
 Therefore we will disperse ourselves : farewell.

*Sal.* Stay yet another day, thou trusty Wel  
 man ;  
 The king reposeth all his confidence  
 In thee.

*Capt.* 'Tis thought, the king is dead ; we will n  
 stay.

The bay-trees in our country are all wither'd,  
 And meteors fright the fixed stars of heaven ;  
 The pale-fac'd moon looks bloody on the earth,  
 And lean-look'd prophets whisper fearful change  
*Rich men look sad, and ruffians dance and leap, -*  
*The one, in fear to lose what they enjoy,*

The other, to enjoy by rage and war :  
These signs forerun the death or fall of kings. —  
Farewell ; our countrymen are gone and fled,  
As well assur'd, Richard their king is dead. [*Exit.*

*Sal.* Ah, Richard ! with the eyes of heavy mind,  
I see thy glory, like a shooting star,  
Fall to the base earth from the firmament !  
Thy sun sets weeping in the lowly west,  
Witnessing storms to come, woe, and unrest :  
Thy friends are fled, to wait upon thy foes ;  
And crossly to thy good all fortune goes. [*Exit.*

---

### ACT THE THIRD.

#### SCENE I.

#### Bolingbroke's Camp at Bristol.

*Enter BOLINGBROKE, YORK, NORTHUMBERLAND,  
PERCY, WILLOUGHBY, ROSS: Officers behind  
with BUSHY and GREEN, prisoners.*

*Boling.* Bring forth these men. —  
Bushy, and Green, I will not vex your souls  
(Since presently your souls must part your bodies,)  
With too much urging your pernicious lives,  
For 'twere no charity : yet, to wash your blood  
From off my hands, here in the view of men,  
I will unfold some causes of your death.  
You have misled a prince, a royal king,  
A happy gentleman in blood and lineaments,  
By you unhappied and disfigur'd clean.<sup>7</sup>  
You have, in manner, with your sinful hours,

<sup>7</sup> Completely.

Made a divorce betwixt his queen and him ;  
 Broke the possession of a royal bed,  
 And stain'd the beauty of a fair queen's cheeks  
 With tears drawn from her eyes by your foul wrongs.  
 Myself — a prince, by fortune of my birth ;  
 Near to the king in blood ; and near in love,  
 Till you did make him misinterpret me, —  
 Have stoop'd my neck under your injuries,  
 And sigh'd my English breath in foreign clouds,  
 Eating the bitter bread of banishment :  
 Whilst you have fed upon my signories,  
 Dispark'd my parks, and fell'd my forest woods ;  
 From my own windows torn my household coat,  
 Raz'd out my impress, leaving me no sign, —  
 Save men's opinions, and my living blood, —  
 To show the world I am a gentleman.  
 This, and much more, much more than twice all this,  
 Condemns you to the death : — See them deliver'd  
 over

To execution and the hand of death.

*Bushy.* More welcome is the stroke of death to me,  
 Than Bolingbroke to England.

*Green.* My comfort is, — that heaven will take  
 our souls,  
 And plague injustice.

*Boling.* My lord Northumberland, see them despatch'd.

[*Excunt NORTHUMBERLAND and others,  
 with Prisoners.*]

Uncle, you say, the queen is at your house ;  
 For heaven's sake, fairly let her be entreated :  
 Tell her, I send to her my kind commends ;  
 Take special care my greetings be deliver'd.

*York.* A gentleman of mine I have despatch'd  
 With letters of your love to her at large.

*Boling.* Thanks, gentle uncle. — Come, lords,  
 away ;

To fight with Glendower and his complices ;  
 A while to work, and, after, holiday. [ *Excunt.* ]

## SCENE II.

*The Coast of Wales. A Castle in view.*

*Flourish : Drums and Trumpets. Enter King RICHARD, Bishop of CARLISLE, AUMERLE, and Soldiers.*

*K. Rich.* Barkloughly castle call you this at hand?

*Aum.* Yea, my lord : How brooks your grace the air,

After late tossing on the breaking seas?

*K. Rich.* Needs must I like it well ; I weep for joy,

To stand upon my kingdom once again. —

Dear earth, I do salute thee with my hand,

Though rebels wound thee with their horses' hoofs ;

As a long parted mother with her child

Plays fondly with her tears, and smiles in meeting ;

So, weeping, smiling, greet I thee, my earth,

And do thee favour with my royal hands.

Feed not thy sovereign's foe, my gentle earth,

Nor with thy sweets comfort his ravenous sense,

But let thy spiders, that suck up thy venom,

And heavy-gaited toads, lie in their way ;

Doing annoyance to the treacherous feet,

Which with usurping steps do trample thee.

Yield stinging nettles to mine enemies ;

And when they from thy bosom pluck a flower,

Guard it, I pray thee, with a lurking adder ;

Whose double tongue may with a mortal touch

Throw death upon thy sovereign's enemies. —

Mock not my senseless conjuration, lords ;

This earth shall have a feeling, and these stones

Prove armed soldiers, ere her native king

Shall falter under foul rebellious arms.

*Car.* Fear not, my lord ; that Power, that made you king,



Hath power to keep you king, in spite of all.  
The means that heaven yields must be embrac'd,  
And not neglected ; else, if heaven would,  
And we will not, heaven's offer we refuse ;  
The proffer'd means of succour and redress.

*Aum.* He means my lord, that we are too remiss ;  
Whilst Bolingbroke, through our security,  
Grows strong and great, in substance and in friends.

*K. Rich.* Discomfortable cousin ! know'st thou  
not,

That when the searching eye of heaven is hid  
Behind the globe, and lights the lower world,  
Then thieves and robbers range abroad unseen,  
In murders, and in outrage, bloody here ;  
But when, from under this terrestrial ball,  
He fires the proud tops of the eastern pines,  
And darts his light through every guilty hole,  
Then murders, treasons, and detested sins,  
The cloak of night being pluck'd from off their  
backs,

Stand bare and naked, trembling at themselves ?  
So when this thief, this traitor, Bolingbroke, —  
Who all this while hath revell'd in the night,  
Whilst we were wandering with the antipodes, —  
Shall see us rising in our throne the east,  
His treasons will sit blushing in his face,  
Not able to endure the sight of day,  
But self-affrighted, tremble at his sin.  
Not all the water in the rough rude sea  
Can wash the balm from an anointed king :  
The breath of worldly men cannot depose  
The deputy elected by the Lord :  
For every man that Bolingbroke hath press'd,  
To lift shrewd steel against our golden crown,  
God for his Richard hath in heavenly pay  
A glorious angel : then, if angels fight,  
Weak men must fall ; for heaven still guards the  
right.

*Enter SALISBURY.*

Welcome, my lord ; How far off lies your power ?

*Sal.* Nor near, nor further off, my gracious lord,  
Than this weak arm : Discomfort guides my tongue,  
And bids me speak of nothing but despair.  
One day too late, I fear, my noble lord,  
Hath clouded all thy happy days on earth :  
O, call back yesterday, bid time return,  
And thou shalt have twelve thousand fighting men !  
To-day, to-day, unhappy day, too late,  
O'erthrows thy joys, friends, fortune, and thy state ;  
For all the Welshmen, hearing thou wert dead,  
Are gone to Bolingbroke, dispers'd, and fled.

*Aum.* Comfort, my liege : why looks your grace  
so pale ?

*K. Rich.* But now, the blood of twenty thousand  
men

Did triumph in my face, and they are fled ;  
And till so much blood thither come again,  
Have I not reason to look pale and dead ?  
All souls that will be safe fly from my side ;  
For time hath set a blot upon my pride.

*Aum.* Comfort, my liege ; remember who you are.

*K. Rich.* I had forgot myself : am I not king ?  
Awake, thou sluggard majesty ! thou sleep'st.  
Is not the king's name forty thousand names ?  
Arm, arm, my name, a puny subject strikes  
At thy great glory.—Look not to the ground,  
Ye favourites of a king ; Are we not high ?  
High be our thoughts : I know, my uncle York  
Hath power enough to serve our turn. But who  
Comes here ?

*Enter SCROOP.*

*Scroop.* More health and happiness betide my  
liege,  
Than can my care-tun'd tongue deliver him.

*K. Rich.* Mine ear is open, and my heart prepar'd ;

The worst is worldly loss, thou can'st unfold.  
Say, is my kingdom lost? why, 'twas my care;  
And what loss is it, to be rid of care?  
Strives Bolingbroke to be as great as we?  
Greater he shall not be; if he serve God,  
We'll serve him too, and be his fellow so:  
Revolt our subjects? that we cannot mend;  
They break their faith to God, as well as us:  
Cry, woe, destruction, ruin, loss, decay;  
The worst is — death, and death will have his day.

*Scroop.* Glad am I, that your highness is so arm'd  
To bear the tidings of calamity.

Like an unseasonable stormy day,  
Which makes the silver rivers drown their shores,  
As if the world were all dissolv'd to tears;  
So high above his limits swells the rage  
Of Bolingbroke, covering your fearful land  
With hard bright steel, and hearts harder than steel.  
White beards have arm'd their thin and hairless  
scalps

Against thy majesty; boys, with women's voices,  
Strive to speak big, and clap their female joints  
In stiff unwieldy arms against thy crown:  
Thy very beadsmen learn to bend their bows  
Of double-fatal yew against thy state;  
Yea, distaff-women manage rusty bills  
Against thy seat: both young and old rebel,  
And all goes worse than I have power to tell.

*K. Rich.* Too well, too well, thou tell'st a tale so ill.  
Where is the earl of Wiltshire? where is Bagot?  
What is become of Bushy? where is Green?  
That they have let the dangerous enemy  
Measure our confines with such peaceful steps?  
If we prevail, their heads shall pay for it.

I warrant, they have made peace with Bolingbroke.

*Scroop.* Peace have they made with him, indeed,  
my lord.

*K. Rich.* O villains, vipers, lost without redemption!  
tion!

Dogs, easily won to fawn on any man !  
Snakes, in my heart-blood warm'd, that sting my  
heart !

*Scroop.* Sweet love, I see, changing his property,  
Turns to the sourest and most deadly hate : —  
Again uncurse their souls ; their peace is made  
With heads, and not with hands : those whom you  
curse

Have felt the worst of death's destroying wound,  
And lie full low, grav'd in the hollow ground.

*Aum.* Is Bushy, Green, and the earl of Wiltshire  
dead ?

*Scroop.* Yea, all of them at Bristol lost their heads.

*Aum.* Where is the duke my father with his power ?

*K. Rich.* No matter where ; of comfort no man  
speak :

Let's talk of graves, of worms, and epitaphs ;  
Make dust our paper, and with rainy eyes  
Write sorrow on the bosom of the earth.  
Let's choose executors, and talk of wills :  
And yet not so, — for what can we bequeath,  
Save our deposed bodies to the ground ?  
Our lands, our lives, and all are Bolingbroke's,  
And nothing can we call our own, but death ;  
And that small model of the barren earth,  
Which serves as paste and cover to our bones.  
For heaven's sake, let us sit upon the ground,  
And tell sad stories of the death of kings : —  
How some have been depos'd, some slain in war ;  
Some haunted by the ghosts they have depos'd ;  
Some poison'd by their wives, some sleeping kill'd ;  
All murder'd : — For within the hollow crown,  
That rounds the mortal temples of a king,  
Keeps death his court ; and there the antick sits,  
Scoffing his state, and grinning at his pomp ;  
Allowing him a breath, a little scene  
To monarchize, be fear'd, and kill with looks  
Infusing him with self and vain conceit, —

As if this flesh, which walls about our life,  
Were brass impregnable ; and humour'd thus,  
Comes at the last, and with a little pin  
Bores through his castle wall, and — farewell king !  
Cover your heads, and mock not flesh and blood  
With solemn reverence ; throw away respect,  
Tradition, form, and ceremonious duty,  
For you have but mistook me all this while :  
I live with bread like you, feel want, taste grief,  
Need friends : — Subjected thus,  
How can you say to me — I am a king ?

*Car.* My lord, wise men ne'er wail their present  
woes,

But presently prevent the ways to wail.  
To fear the foe, since fear oppresseth strength,  
Gives, in your weakness, strength unto your foe,  
And so your follies fight against yourself.  
Fear, and be slain ; no worse can come, to fight :  
And fight and die, is death destroying death ;  
Where fearing dying, pays death servile breath.

*Aum.* My father hath a power, enquire of him ;  
And learn to make a body of a limb.

*K. Rich.* Thou chid'st me well : — Proud Boling-  
broke, I come

To change blows with thee for our day of doom.  
This ague-fit of fear is overblown ;  
An easy task it is to win our own. —

Say, Scroop, where lies our uncle with his power ?  
Speak sweetly, man, although thy looks be sour.

*Scroop.* Men judge by the complexion of the sky  
The state and inclination of the day :

So may you by my dull and heavy eye,  
My tongue hath but a heavier tale to say.

I play the torturer, by small and small,  
To lengthen out the worst that must be spoken : —  
Your uncle York hath join'd with Bolingbroke ;  
And all your northern castles yielded up,  
And all your southern gentlemen in arms  
Upon his party.

*K. Rich.* Thou hast said enough.—  
Beshrew thee, cousin, which did lead me forth  
[*To AUMERLE.*

Of that sweet way I was in to despair!  
What say you now? what comfort have we now?  
By heaven, I'll hate him everlastingly,  
That bids me be of comfort any more.  
Go, to Flint castle; there I'll pine away;  
A king, woe's slave, shall kingly woe obey.  
That power I have, discharge; and let them go  
To ear<sup>s</sup> the land that hath some hope to grow,  
For I have none:— Let no man speak again  
To alter this, for counsel is but vain.

*Aum.* My liege, one word.

*K. Rich.* He does me double wrong,  
That wounds me with the flatteries of his tongue.  
Discharge my followers, let them hence;— Away,  
From Richard's night, to Bolingbroke's fair day.  
[*Exeunt.*

## SCENE III.

Wales. *Before Flint Castle.*

*Enter, with Drum and Colours, BOLINGBROKE and Forces; YORK, NORTHUMBERLAND, and others.*

*Boling.* So that by this intelligence we learn,  
The Welshmen are dispers'd; and Salisbury  
Is gone to meet the king, who lately landed,  
With some few private friends upon this coast.

*North.* The news is very fair and good, my lord;  
Richard, not far from hence, hath hid his head.

*York.* It would beseem the lord Northumberland,  
To say— king Richard:— Alack the heavy day,  
When such a sacred king should hide his head!

<sup>s</sup> Plough.

*North.* Your grace mistakes me ; only to be  
Left I his title out.

*York.* The time hath been,  
Would you have been so brief with him he w  
Have been so brief with you, to shorten you,  
For taking so the head, your whole head's len

*Boling.* Mistake not, uncle, further than  
should.

*York.* Take not, good cousin, further than  
should,

Lest you mistake : The heavens are o'er your

*Boling.* I know it, uncle ; and oppose not  
Myself against their will. — But who comes h

*Enter PERCY.*

Well, Harry ; what, will not this castle yield ?

*Percy.* The castle royally is mann'd, my lor  
Against thy entrance.

*Boling.* Royally !  
Why, it contains no king ?

*Percy.* Yes, my good lo  
It doth contain a king : king Richard lies  
Withing the limits of yon lime and stone ;  
And with him are the lord Aumerle, lord Salis  
Sir Stephen Scroop ; besides a clergyman  
Of holy reverence, who, I cannot learn.

*North.* Belike it is the bishop of Carlisle.

*Boling.* Noble lord, [To No  
Go to the rude ribs of that ancient castle ;  
Through brazen trumpet send the breath of p  
Into his ruin'd ears, and thus deliver.

Harry Bolingbroke

On both his knees doth kiss king Richard's ha  
And sends allegiance, and true faith of heart,  
To his most royal person : hither come

*Even at his feet to lay my arms and power ;*

*Provided that, my banishment repeal'd,  
And lands restor'd again, be freely granted :*

If not, I'll use the advantage of my power,  
And lay the summer's dust with showers of blood,  
Rain'd from the wounds of slaughtered Englishmen :  
The which, how far off from the mind of Boling-  
broke

It is, such crimson tempest should bedrench  
The fresh green lap of fair king Richard's land,  
My stooping duty tenderly shall show.  
Go, signify as much ; while here we march  
Upon the grassy carpet of this plain. —

[NORTHUMBERLAND advances to the  
Castle, with a Trumpet.

Let's march without the noise of threat'ning drum,  
That from the castle's totter'd battlements  
Our fair appointments may be well perus'd.  
Methinks, king Richard and myself should meet  
With no less terror than the elements  
Of fire and water, when their thund'ring shock  
At meeting tears the cloudy cheeks of heaven.  
Be he the fire, I'll be the yielding water :  
The rage be his while on the earth I rain  
My waters ; on the earth, and not on him.  
March on, and mark king Richard how he looks.

*A parle sounded, and answered by another Trumpet  
within. Flourish. Enter on the walls King  
RICHARD, the Bishop of CARLISLE, AUMERLE,  
SCROOP, and SALISBURY.*

York. See, see, king Richard doth himself appear,  
As doth the blushing discontented sun  
From out the fiery portal of the east ;  
When he perceives the envious clouds are bent  
To dim his glory, and to stain the track  
Of his bright passage to the occident.  
Yet looks he like a king ; behold, his eye,  
As bright as is the eagle's, lightens forth,  
Controlling majesty ; Alack, alack, for woe,  
That any harm should stain so fair a show !



*K. Rich.* We are amaz'd ; and thus long have  
stood

To watch the fearful bending of thy knee,  
[*To NORTHUMBERLAND*

Because we thought ourself thy lawful king :

And if we be, how dare thy joints forget

To pay their awful duty to our presence ?

If we be not, show us the hand of God

That hath dismiss'd us from our stewardship ;

For well we know, no hand of blood and bone

Can gripe the sacred handle of our scepter,

Unless he do profane, steal, or usurp.

And though you think, that all, as you have do

Have torn their souls, by turning them from us,

And we are barren, and bereft of friends ; —

Yet know, — my master, God omnipotent,

Is must'ring in his clouds, on our behalf,

Armies of pestilence ; and they shall strike

Your children yet unborn, and unbegot,

That lift your vassal hands against my head,

And threat the glory of my precious crown.

Tell Bolingbroke, (for yond', methinks, he is,)

That every stride he makes upon my land,

Is dangerous treason : He is come to ope

The purple testament of bleeding war ;

But ere the crown he looks for live in peace,

Ten thousand bloody crowns of mother's sons

Shall ill become the flower of England's face ;

Change the complexion of her maid-pale peace

To scarlet indignation, and bedew

Her pastures' grass with faithful English blood.

*North.* The king of heaven forbid, our lord  
king

Should so with civil and uncivil arms

Be rush'd upon ; Thy thrice-noble cousin,

Harry Bolingbroke, doth humbly kiss thy hand

And by the honourable tomb he swears,

*That stands upon thy royal grandsire's bones ;*

*And by the royalties of both your bloods,*

Currents that spring from one most gracious head;  
And by the buried hand of warlike Gaunt;  
And by the worth and honour of himself,  
Comprising all that may be sworn or said, —  
His coming hither hath no further scope.  
Than for his lineal royalties, and to beg  
Enfranchisement immediate on his knees:  
Which on thy royal party granted once,  
His glittering arms he will commend to rust,  
His barbed steeds to stables, and his heart  
To faithful service of your majesty.  
This swears he, as he is a prince, is just;  
And as I am a gentleman, I credit him.

*K. Rich.* Northumberland, say, — thus the king  
returns —

His noble cousin is right welcome hither;  
And all the number of his fair demands  
Shall be accomplish'd without contradiction:  
With all the gracious utterance thou hast,  
Speak to his gentle hearing kind commends. —  
We do debase ourself, cousin, do we not,

[*To AUMERLE.*

To look so poorly, and to speak so fair?  
Shall we call back Northumberland, and send  
Defiance to the traitor, and so die?

*Aum.* No, good my lord; let's fight with gentle  
words,

Till time lend friends, and friends their helpful  
swords.

*K. Rich.* Merciful Heaven that e'er this tongue  
of mine,

That laid the sentence of dread banishment  
On yon proud man, should take it off again  
With words of sooth<sup>9</sup>! O, that I were as great  
As is my grief, or lesser than my name!  
Or that I could forget what I have been!  
Or not remember what I must be now!

Swell'st thou, proud heart? I'll give thee scope  
beat,

Since foes have scope to beat both thee and me

*Aum.* Northumberland comes back from Bol  
broke.

*K. Rich.* What must the king do now? Must  
submit?

The king shall do it. Must he be depos'd?

The king shall be contented: must he lose

The name of king? o'God's name, let it go:

I'll give my jewels for a set of beads;

My gorgeous palace, for a hermitage;

My gay apparel, for an alms-man's gown;

My figur'd goblets for a dish of wood;

My scepter, for a palmer's walking-staff;

My subjects, for a pair of carved saints:

And my large kingdom for a little grave,

A little little grave, an obscure grave:—

Or I'll be buried in the king's highway,

Some way of common trade, where subjects' feet

May hourly trample on their sovereign's head:

For on my heart they tread, now whilst I live;

And, buried once, why not upon my head?—

*Aumerle*, thou weep'st; My tender-hearted  
sin!—

We'll make foul weather with despised tears;

Our sighs, and they, shall lodge the summer cold

And make a dearth in this revolting land.

Or shall we play the wantons with our woes,

And make some pretty match with shedding tears

As thus:—To drop them still upon one place,

Till they have fretted us a pair of graves

Within the earth; and therein laid,—*There lie*

*Two kinsmen, digg'd their graves with weeping eyes*

Would not this ill do well?—Well, well, I see

I talk but idly, and you mock at me.—

*Most mighty prince*, my lord Northumberland,

What says king Bolingbroke? will his majesty

Give Richard leave to live till Richard die ?  
You make a leg <sup>1</sup>, and Bolingbroke says — ay.

*North.* My lord, in the base <sup>2</sup> court he doth attend,  
To speak with you ; may't please you to come down ?

*K. Rich.* Down, down, I come ; like glistening Phaeton,  
Wanting the manage of unruly jades.

[*NORTH. retires to BOLING.*  
In the base court ? Base court, where kings grow base,  
To come at traitors' calls, and do them grace.  
In the base court ? Come down ? Down, court !  
down, king !

For night-owls shriek, where mounting larks should sing.

[*Exeunt, from above.*

*Boling.* What says his majesty ?

*North.* Sorrow and grief of heart  
Makes him speak fondly, like a frantick man :  
Yet he is come.

*Enter King RICHARD, and his Attendants, below.*

*Boling.* Stand all apart,  
And show fair duty to his majesty. —  
My gracious lord, — [Kneeling.

*K. Rich.* Fair cousin, you debase your princely knee,

To make the base earth proud with kissing it :  
Me rather had, my heart might feel your love,  
Than my unpleas'd eye see your courtesy.  
Up, cousin, up : your heart is up, I know,  
Thus high at least, [*touching his own head.*] although your knee be low.

*Boling.* My gracious lord, I come but for mine own.

*K. Rich.* Your own is yours, and I am yours,  
and all.

<sup>1</sup> A bow.

<sup>2</sup> Lower.

*Boling.* So far be mine, my most redoubted lord  
As my true service shall deserve your love.

*K. Rich.* Well you deserve: — They well deserve  
to have,

That know the strong'st and surest way to get.  
Uncle, give me your hand: nay, dry your eyes;  
Tears show their love, but want their remedies.  
Cousin, I am too young to be your father,  
Though you are old enough to be my heir.  
What you will have, I'll give, and willing too;  
For do we must, what force will have us do. —  
Set on towards London: Cousin, is it so?

*Boling.* Yea, my good lord.

*K. Rich.* Then I must not say,  
[*Flourish.* *Exit*

SCENE IV.

*Langley.* *The Duke of York's Garden.*

*Enter the Queen, and two Ladies.*

*Queen.* What sport shall we devise here in  
garden,

To drive away the heavy thought of care?

*1 Lady.* Madam, we'll play at bowls.

*Queen.* 'Twill make me think  
The world is full of rubs, and that my fortune  
Runs 'gainst the bias.

*1 Lady.* Madam, we will dance

*Queen.* My legs can keep no measure in delight  
When my poor heart no measure keeps in grief  
Therefore, no dancing, girl; some other sport.

*1 Lady.* Madam, we'll tell tales.

*Queen.* Of sorrow, or of joy

*1 Lady.* Of either, madam.

*Queen.* Of neither, girl:  
*For if of joy, being altogether wanting,*

It doth remember me the more of sorrow ;  
Or if of grief, being altogether had,  
It adds more sorrow to my want of joy :  
For what I have, I need not to repeat ;  
And what I want, it boots not to complain.

1 *Lady*. Madam, I'll sing.

*Queen*. 'Tis well that thou hast cause ;

But thou should'st please me better, would'st thou weep.

1 *Lady*. I could weep, madam, would it do you good,

*Queen*. And I could weep, would weeping do me good.

And never borrow any tear of thee.

But stay, here come the gardeners ;

Let's step into the shadow of these trees. —

*Enter a Gardener, and two Servants.*

My wretchedness unto a row of pins,  
They'll talk of state ; for every one doth so  
Against a change : Woe is forerun with woe.

[*Queen and Ladies retire.*]

*Gard.* Go, bind thou up yon' dangling apricocks,  
Which, like unruly children, make their sire  
Stoop with oppression of their prodigal weight :  
Give some supportance to the bending twigs. —  
Go thou, and like an executioner,  
Cut off the heads of too-fast-growing sprays,  
That look too lofty in our commonwealth :  
All must be even in our government. —  
You thus employ'd, I will go root away  
The noisome weeds, that without profit suck  
The soil's fertility from wholesome flowers.

1 *Serv.* Why should we, in the compass of a  
pale,

Keep law, and form, and due proportion,  
Showing, as in a model, our firm estate ?

*When our sea-walled garden, the whole land,*

Is full of weeds ; her fairest flowers chok'd up.  
 Her fruit-trees all unprun'd, her hedges ruin'd,  
 Her knots <sup>3</sup> disorder'd, and her wholesome herbs  
 Swarming with caterpillars ?

*Gard.* Hold thy peace : —  
 He that hath suffer'd this disorder'd spring,  
 Hath now himself met with the fall of leaf :  
 The weeds, that his broad-spreading leaves did  
 shelter,

That seem'd in eating him to hold him up,  
 Are pluck'd up, root and all, by Bolingbroke ;  
 I mean, the earl of Wiltshire, Bushy, Green.

*1 Serv.* What, are they dead ?

*Gard.* They are ; and Bolingbroke  
 Hath seiz'd the wasteful king — O ! What pity  
 is it,

That he had not so trimm'd and dress'd his land,  
 As we this garden ! We at time of year  
 Do wound the bark, the skin of our fruit-trees ;  
 Lest, being over-proud with sap and blood,  
 With too much riches it confound itself :  
 Had he done so to great and growing men,  
 They might have liv'd to bear, and he to taste  
 Their fruits of duty. All superfluous branches  
 We lop away, that bearing boughs may live :  
 Had he done so, himself had borne the crown,  
 Which waste of idle hours hath quite thrown down.

*1 Serv.* What, think you then, the king shall be  
 depos'd ?

*Gard.* Depress'd he is already ; and depos'd,  
 'Tis doubt, he will be : Letters came last night  
 To a dear friend of the good duke of York's,  
 That tell black tidings.

*Queen.* O, I am press'd to death,  
 Through want of speaking ! — Thou, old Adam's  
 likeness, [*Coming from her concealment.*]  
 Set to dress this garden, how dares

<sup>3</sup> Figures planted in box.

Thy harsh-rude tongue sound this unpleasing news ?  
Why dost thou say, king Richard is depos'd ?  
Dar'st thou, thou little better thing than earth,  
Divine his downfall ? Say, where, when, and how,  
Cam'st thou by these ill tidings ? speak, thou wretch.

*Gard.* Pardon me, madam : little joy have I,  
To breathe this news ; yet, what I say, is true.  
King Richard, he is in the mighty hold  
Of Bolingbroke ; their fortunes both are weigh'd :  
In your lord's scale is nothing but himself,  
And some few vanities that make him light ;  
But in the balance of great Bolingbroke,  
Besides himself, are all the English peers,  
And with that odds he weighs king Richard down.  
Post you to London, and you'll find it so ;  
I speak no more than every one doth know.

*Queen.* Nimble mischance, that art so light of  
foot,  
Doth not thy embassy belong to me,  
And am I last that knows it ? O, thou think'st  
To serve me last, that I may longest keep  
Thy sorrow in my breast.—Come, ladies, go,  
To meet at London London's king in woe.—  
What, was I born to this ! that my sad look  
Should grace the triumph of great Bolingbroke ?  
Gardener, for telling me this news of woe,  
I would, the plants thou graft'st may never grow.

[*Exeunt Queen and Ladies.*]

*Gard.* Poor queen ! so that thy state might be  
no worse,  
I would, my skill were subject to thy curse.—  
Here did she drop a tear ; here, in this place,  
I'll set a bank of rue, sour herb of grace :  
Rue, even for ruth, here shortly shall be seen,  
In the remembrance of a weeping queen. [*Exeunt.*]



## ACT THE FOURTH.

## SCENE I.

London. Westminster-Hall.

*The Lords Spiritual on the right side of the Throne;  
the Lords Temporal on the left; the Commons below.*

*Enter BOLINGBROKE, AUMERLE, SURREY,  
NORTHUMBERLAND, PERCY, FITZWATER, an-  
other Lord, Bishop of CARLISLE, Abbot of WEST-  
MINSTER, and Attendants. Officers behind, with  
BAGOT.*

*Boling.* Call forth Bagot: —

Now, Bagot, freely speak thy mind;  
What thou dost know of noble Gloster's death;  
Who wrought it with the king, and who perform'd  
The bloody office of his timeless end?

*Bagot.* Then set before my face the lord Aumerle.

*Boling.* Cousin, stand forth, and look upon that  
man.

*Bagot.* My lord Aumerle, I know your daring  
tongue

Scorns to unsay what once it hath deliver'd.  
In that dead time when Gloster's death was plotted,  
I heard you say, — *Is not my arm of length,  
That reacheth from the restful English court  
As far as Calais, to my uncle's head?*  
Amongst much other talk, that very time,  
I heard you say, that you had rather refuse  
The offer of an hundred thousand crowns,  
Than Bolingbroke's return to England;  
Adding withal, how blest this land would be,  
In this your cousin's death.

*Aum.* Princes, and noble lords,

What answer shall I make to this base man?

*Shall I so much dishonour my fair stars,*

On equal terms to give him chastisement?  
Either I must, or have mine honour soil'd  
With the attainder of his sland'rous lips —  
There is my gage, the manual seal of death,  
That marks thee out for hell: I say, thou liest,  
And will maintain, what thou hast said, is false,  
In thy heart-blood, though being all too base  
To stain the temper of my knightly sword.

*Boling.* Bagot, forbear, thou shalt not take it up.

*Aum.* Excepting one, I would he were the best  
In all this presence, that hath mov'd me so.

*Fitz.* If that thy valour stand on sympathies,  
There is my gage, Aumerle, in gage to thine:  
By that fair sun that shows me where thou stand'st,  
I heard thee say, and vauntingly thou spak'st it,  
That thou wert cause of noble Gloster's death.  
If thou deny'st it, twenty times thou liest;  
And I will turn thy falsehood to thy heart,  
Where it was forged, with my rapier's point.

*Aum.* Thou dar'st not, coward, live to see that  
day.

*Fitz.* Now, by my soul, I would it were this hour.

*Aum.* Fitzwater, thou art doom'd to hell for this.

*Percy.* Aumerle, thou liest; his honour is as true,  
In this appeal, as thou art all unjust:  
And, that thou art so, there I throw my gage,  
To prove it on thee to the extremest point  
Of mortal breathing; seize it, if thou dar'st.

*Aum.* And if I do not, may my hands rot off,  
And never brandish more revengeful steel  
Over the glittering helmet of my foe!

*Lord.* I take the earth to the like, forsworn Au-  
merle;  
And spur thee on with full as many lies  
As may be holla'd in thy treacherous ear  
From sun to sun: there is my honour's pawn;  
Engage it to the trial, if thou dar'st.

*Aum.* Who sets me else? by heaven, I'll throw  
at all:

I have a thousand spirits in one breast,  
To answer twenty thousand such as you.

*Surrey.* My lord Fitzwater, I do remember well  
The very time Aumerle and you did talk.

*Fitz.* My lord, 'tis true: you were in presence  
then;

And you can witness with me, this is true.

*Surrey.* As false, by heaven, as heaven itself is  
true.

*Fitz.* Surrey, thou liest.

*Surrey.* Dishonourable boy!

That lie shall lie so heavy on my sword,  
That it shall render vengeance and revenge,  
Till thou the lie-giver, and that lie, do lie  
In earth as quiet as thy father's skull.  
In proof whereof, there is my honour's pawn;  
Engage it to the trial, if thou dar'st.

*Fitz.* How fondly dost thou spur a forward horse;  
If I dare eat, or drink, or breathe, or live,  
I dare meet Surrey in a wilderness,  
And spit upon him, whilst I say, he lies,  
And lies, and lies: there is my bond of faith,  
To tie thee to my strong correction. —  
As I intend to thrive in this new world,  
Aumerle is guilty of my true appeal:  
Besides, I heard the banish'd Norfolk say,  
That thou, Aumerle, didst send two of thy men  
To execute the noble duke at Calais.

*Aum.* Some honest Christian trust me with a gage,  
That Norfolk lies: here do I throw down this,  
If he may be repeal'd to try his honour.

*Boling.* These differences shall all rest under gage,  
Till Norfolk be repeal'd: repeal'd he shall be,  
And, though mine enemy, restor'd again  
To all his land and signories; when he's return'd,  
Against Aumerle we will enforce his trial.

*Car.* That honourable day shall ne'er be seen.—  
*Many a time hath banish'd Norfolk fought  
For Jesu Christ; in glorious Christian field*

Streaming the ensign of the Christian cross,  
Against black Pagans, Turks, and Saracens :  
And, toil'd with works of war, retir'd himself  
To Italy ; and there, at Venice, gave  
His body to that pleasant country's earth,  
And his pure soul unto his captain Christ,  
Under whose colours he had fought so long.

*Boling.* Why, bishop, is Norfolk dead ?

*Car.* As sure as I live, my lord.

*Boling.* Sweet peace conduct his sweet soul to  
the bosom

Of good old Abraham ! — Lords appellants,  
Your differences shall all rest under gage,  
Till we assign you to your days of trial.

*Enter YORK, attended.*

*York.* Great duke of Lancaster, I come to thee  
From plume-pluck'd Richard ; who with willing soul  
Adopts thee heir, and his high scepter yields  
To the possession of thy royal hand :  
Ascend his throne, descending now from him, —  
And long live Henry, of that name the fourth !

*Boling.* In God's name, I'll ascend the regal  
throne.

*Car.* Marry, God forbid ! —

Worst in this royal presence may I speak,  
Yet best beseeching me to speak the truth.  
Would God, that any in this noble presence  
Were enough noble to be upright judge  
Of noble Richard ; then true nobless would  
Learn him forbearance from so foul a wrong.  
What subject can give sentence on his king ?  
And who sits here, that is not Richard's subject ?  
Thieves are not judg'd, but they are by to hear,  
Although apparent guilt be seen in them ;  
And shall the figure of God's majesty,  
His captain, steward, deputy elect,  
*Anointed, crowned, planted many years,*

Be judg'd by subject and inferior breath,  
And he himself not present? O, forbid it, God,  
That, in a Christian climate, souls refin'd  
Should show so heinous, black, obscene a deed!  
I speak to subjects, and a subject speaks,  
Stirr'd up by heaven thus boldly for his king.  
My lord of Hereford here, whom you call king,  
Is a foul traitor to proud Hereford's king:  
And if you crown him, let me prophesy,—  
The blood of English shall manure the ground,  
And future ages groan for this foul act;  
Peace shall go sleep with Turks and Infidels,  
And, in this seat of peace, tumultuous wars  
Shall kin with kin, and kind with kind confound;  
Disorder, horror, fear, and mutiny,  
Shall here inhabit, and this land be call'd  
The field of Golgotha, and dead men's skulls.  
O, if thou rear this house against this house,  
It will the woofullest division prove,  
That ever fell upon this cursed earth:  
Prevent, resist it, let it not be so,  
Lest child, child's children, cry against you—woe!

*North.* Well have you argu'd, sir; and for your  
pains,

Of capital treason we arrest you here:  
My lord of Westminster, be it your charge  
To keep him safely till his day of trial.—  
May't please you, lords, to grant the commons' suit.

*Boling.* Fetch hither Richard, that in common  
view

He may surrender; so we shall proceed  
Without suspicion.

*York.* I will be his conduct. [*Exit.*

*Boling.* Lords, you that are here under our arrest,  
Procure your sureties for your days of answer:—  
Little are we beholden to your love, [*To CARLISLE.*  
And little look'd for at your helping hands.

*Re-enter YORK, with King RICHARD, and Officers, bearing the Crown, &c.*

*K. Rich.* Alack, why am I sent for to a king,  
Before I have shook off the regal thoughts  
Wherewith I reign'd? I hardly yet have learn'd  
To insinuate, flatter, bow, and bend my knee:—  
Give sorrow leave a while to tutor me  
To this submission. Yet I well remember  
The favours<sup>4</sup> of these men: Were they not mine?  
Did they not sometime cry, all hail! to me?  
To do what service am I sent for hither?

*York.* To do that office of thine own good will,  
Which tired majesty did make thee offer, —  
The resignation of thy state and crown  
To Henry Bolingbroke.

*K. Rich.* Give me the crown: — Here, cousin,  
seize the crown;  
Here, on this side, my hand; on that side, thine.  
Now is this golden crown like a deep well,  
That owes<sup>5</sup> two buckets filling one another;  
The emptier ever dancing in the air,  
The other down, unseen, and full of water:  
That bucket down, and full of tears, am I,  
Drinking my griefs, whilst you mount up on high.

*Boling.* I thought you had been willing to resign.

*K. Rich.* My crown, I am; but still my griefs  
are mine:  
You may my glories and my state depose,  
But not my griefs; still am I king of those.

*Boling.* Part of your cares you give me with  
your crown.

*K. Rich.* Your cares set up, do not pluck my  
cares down.  
My care is — loss of care, by old care done;  
Your care is — gain of care, by new care won:

<sup>4</sup> Countenances.

<sup>5</sup> Owns.

Be judg'd by subject and inferior breath,  
And he himself not present? O, forbid it, God,  
That, in a Christian climate, souls refin'd  
Should show so heinous, black, obscene a deed!  
I speak to subjects, and a subject speaks,  
Stirr'd up by heaven thus boldly for his king.  
My lord of Hereford here, whom you call king,  
Is a foul traitor to proud Hereford's king:  
And if you crown him, let me prophesy,—  
The blood of English shall manure the ground,  
And future ages groan for this foul act;  
Peace shall go sleep with Turks and Infidels,  
And, in this seat of peace, tumultuous wars  
Shall kin with kin, and kind with kind confound;  
Disorder, horror, fear, and mutiny,  
Shall here inhabit, and this land be call'd  
The field of Golgotha, and dead men's skulls.  
O, if thou rear this house against this house,  
It will the woefullest division prove,  
That ever fell upon this cursed earth:  
Prevent, resist it, let it not be so,  
Lest child, child's children, cry against you—woe!

*North.* Well have you argu'd, sir; and for your  
pains,

Of capital treason we arrest you here:  
My lord of Westminster, be it your charge  
To keep him safely till his day of trial.—  
May't please you, lords, to grant the commons' suit.

*Boling.* Fetch hither Richard, that in common  
view

He may surrender; so we shall proceed  
Without suspicion.

*York.* I will be his conduct. [*Exit.*]

*Boling.* Lords, you that are here under our arrest,  
Procure your sureties for your days of answer:—  
Little are we beholden to your love, [*To CARLISLE.*]  
And little look'd for at your helping hands.

*Re-enter YORK, with King RICHARD, and Officers, bearing the Crown, &c.*

*K. Rich.* Alack, why am I sent for to a king,  
Before I have shook off the regal thoughts  
Wherewith I reign'd? I hardly yet have learn'd  
To insinuate, flatter, bow, and bend my knee:—  
Give sorrow leave a while to tutor me  
To this submission. Yet I well remember  
The favours<sup>4</sup> of these men: Were they not mine?  
Did they not sometime cry, all hail! to me?  
To do what service am I sent for hither?

*York.* To do that office of thine own good will,  
Which tired majesty did make thee offer, —  
The resignation of thy state and crown  
To Henry Bolingbroke.

*K. Rich.* Give me the crown: — Here, cousin,  
seize the crown;  
Here, on this side, my hand; on that side, thine.  
Now is this golden crown like a deep well,  
That owes<sup>5</sup> two buckets filling one another;  
The emptier ever dancing in the air,  
The other down, unseen, and full of water:  
That bucket down, and full of tears, am I,  
Drinking my griefs, whilst you mount up on high.

*Boling.* I thought you had been willing to resign.

*K. Rich.* My crown, I am; but still my griefs  
are mine:  
You may my glories and my state depose,  
But not my griefs; still am I king of those.

*Boling.* Part of your cares you give me with  
your crown.

*K. Rich.* Your cares set up, do not pluck my  
cares down.  
My care is — loss of care, by old care done;  
Your care is — gain of care, by new care won:

<sup>4</sup> Countenances.

<sup>5</sup> Owns.



Be judg'd by subject and inferior breath,  
And he himself not present? O, forbid it, God,  
That, in a Christian climate, souls refin'd  
Should show so heinous, black, obscene a deed!  
I speak to subjects, and a subject speaks,  
Stirr'd up by heaven thus boldly for his king.  
My lord of Hereford here, whom you call king,  
Is a foul traitor to proud Hereford's king:  
And if you crown him, let me prophesy,—  
The blood of English shall manure the ground,  
And future ages groan for this foul act;  
Peace shall go sleep with Turks and Infidels,  
And, in this seat of peace, tumultuous wars  
Shall kin with kin, and kind with kind confound;  
Disorder, horror, fear, and mutiny,  
Shall here inhabit, and this land be call'd  
The field of Golgotha, and dead men's skulls.  
O, if thou rear this house against this house,  
It will the woofullest division prove,  
That ever fell upon this cursed earth:  
Prevent, resist it, let it not be so,  
Lest child, child's children, cry against you—woe!

*North.* Well have you argu'd, sir; and for your  
pains,

Of capital treason we arrest you here:  
My lord of Westminster, be it your charge  
To keep him safely till his day of trial.—  
May't please you, lords, to grant the commons' suit.

*Boling.* Fetch hither Richard, that in common  
view

He may surrender; so we shall proceed  
Without suspicion.

*York.* I will be his conduct. [*Exit.*]

*Boling.* Lords, you that are here under our arrest,  
Procure your sureties for your days of answer:—  
Little are we beholden to your love, [*To CARLISLE.*]  
And little look'd for at your helping hands.

*Re-enter YORK, with King RICHARD, and Officers,  
bearing the Crown, &c.*

*K. Rich.* Alack, why am I sent for to a king,  
Before I have shook off the regal thoughts  
Wherewith I reign'd? I hardly yet have learn'd  
To insinuate, flatter, bow, and bend my knee:—  
Give sorrow leave a while to tutor me  
To this submission. Yet I well remember  
The favours<sup>4</sup> of these men: Were they not mine?  
Did they not sometime cry, all hail! to me?  
To do what service am I sent for hither?

*York.* To do that office of thine own good will,  
Which tired majesty did make thee offer, —  
The resignation of thy state and crown  
To Henry Bolingbroke.

*K. Rich.* Give me the crown: — Here, cousin,  
seize the crown;  
Here, on this side, my hand; on that side, thine.  
Now is this golden crown like a deep well,  
That owes<sup>5</sup> two buckets filling one another;  
The emptier ever dancing in the air,  
The other down, unseen, and full of water:  
That bucket down, and full of tears, am I,  
Drinking my griefs, whilst you mount up on high.

*Boling.* I thought you had been willing to resign.

*K. Rich.* My crown, I am; but still my griefs  
are mine:  
You may my glories and my state depose,  
But not my griefs; still am I king of those.

*Boling.* Part of your cares you give me with  
your crown.

*K. Rich.* Your cares set up, do not pluck my  
cares down.  
My care is — loss of care, by old care done;  
Your care is — gain of care, by new care won:

<sup>4</sup> Countenances.

<sup>5</sup> Owns.

Be judg'd by subject and inferior breath,  
And he himself not present? O, forbid it, God,  
That, in a Christian climate, souls refin'd  
Should show so heinous, black, obscene a deed!  
I speak to subjects, and a subject speaks,  
Stirr'd up by heaven thus boldly for his king.  
My lord of Hereford here, whom you call king,  
Is a foul traitor to proud Hereford's king:  
And if you crown him, let me prophesy,—  
The blood of English shall manure the ground,  
And future ages groan for this foul act;  
Peace shall go sleep with Turks and Infidels,  
And, in this seat of peace, tumultuous wars  
Shall kin with kin, and kind with kind confound;  
Disorder, horror, fear, and mutiny,  
Shall here inhabit, and this land be call'd  
The field of Golgotha, and dead men's skulls.  
O, if thou rear this house against this house,  
It will the woofullest division prove,  
That ever fell upon this cursed earth:  
Prevent, resist it, let it not be so,  
Lest child, child's children, cry against you—woe!

*North.* Well have you argu'd, sir; and for your  
pains,

Of capital treason we arrest you here:  
My lord of Westminster, be it your charge  
To keep him safely till his day of trial.—  
May't please you, lords, to grant the commons' suit.

*Boling.* Fetch hither Richard, that in common  
view

He may surrender; so we shall proceed  
Without suspicion.

*York.* I will be his conduct. [*Exit.*

*Boling.* Lords, you that are here under our arrest,  
Procure your sureties for your days of answer:—  
Little are we beholden to your love, [*To CARLISLE.*  
And little look'd for at your helping hands.

*Re-enter YORK, with King RICHARD, and Officers, bearing the Crown, &c.*

*K. Rich.* Alack, why am I sent for to a king,  
Before I have shook off the regal thoughts  
Wherewith I reign'd? I hardly yet have learn'd  
To insinuate, flatter, bow, and bend my knee:—  
Give sorrow leave a while to tutor me  
To this submission. Yet I well remember  
The favours<sup>4</sup> of these men: Were they not mine?  
Did they not sometime cry, all hail! to me?  
To do what service am I sent for hither?

*York.* To do that office of thine own good will,  
Which tired majesty did make thee offer, —  
The resignation of thy state and crown  
To Henry Bolingbroke.

*K. Rich.* Give me the crown:— Here, cousin,  
seize the crown;  
Here, on this side, my hand; on that side, thine.  
Now is this golden crown like a deep well,  
That owes<sup>5</sup> two buckets filling one another;  
The emptier ever dancing in the air,  
The other down, unseen, and full of water:  
That bucket down, and full of tears, am I,  
Drinking my griefs, whilst you mount up on high.

*Boling.* I thought you had been willing to resign.

*K. Rich.* My crown, I am; but still my griefs  
are mine:  
You may my glories and my state depose,  
But not my griefs; still am I king of those.

*Boling.* Part of your cares you give me with  
your crown.

*K. Rich.* Your cares set up, do not pluck my  
cares down.  
My care is — loss of care, by old care done;  
Your care is — gain of care, by new care won:

<sup>4</sup> Countenances.

<sup>5</sup> Owns.

The cares I give, I have, though given away ;  
They tend the crown, yet still with me they stay.

*Boling.* Are you contented to resign the crown?

*K. Rich.* Ay, no; — no, ay; — for I must nothing be;

Therefore no no, for I resign to thee.  
Now mark me how I will undo myself: —  
I give this heavy weight from off my head,  
And this unwieldy scepter from my hand,  
The pride of kingly sway from out my heart ;  
With mine own tears I wash away my balm,<sup>6</sup>  
With mine own hands I give away my crown,  
With mine own tongue deny my sacred state,  
With mine own breath release all duteous oaths :  
All pomp and majesty I do forswear ;  
My manors, rents, revenues, I forego ;  
My acts, decrees, and statutes, I deny :  
God pardon all oaths that are broke to me !  
God keep all vows unbroke are made to thee !  
Make me, that nothing have, with nothing griev'd ;  
And thou with all pleas'd, that hast all achiev'd !  
Long may'st thou live in Richard's seat to sit,  
And soon lie Richard in an earthy pit ! —  
God save king Henry, unking'd Richard says,  
And send him many years of sunshine days ! —  
What more remains ?

*North.*

No more, but that you read

[*Offering a paper.*]

These accusations, and these grievous crimes,  
Committed by your person and your followers,  
Against the state and profit of this land ;  
That, by confessing them, the souls of men  
May deem that you are worthily deposed.

*K. Rich.* Must I do so? and must I ravel out  
My weav'd-up follies? Gentle Northumberland,  
If thy offences were upon record,  
Would it not shame thee in so fair a troop,

<sup>6</sup> Oil of consecration.

To read a lecture of them? If thou would'st,  
There should'st thou find one heinous article, —  
Containing the deposing of a king,  
And cracking the strong warrant of an oath, —  
Mark'd with a blot, mark'd in the book of heaven : —  
Nay all of you, that stand and look upon me,  
Whilst that my wretchedness doth bait myself, —  
Though some of you are showing outward pity,  
Have here deliver'd me to my sour cross,  
And water cannot wash away your sin.

*North.* My lord, despatch ; read o'er these articles.

*K. Rich.* Mine eyes are full of tears, I cannot see :  
And yet salt water blinds them not so much,  
But they can see a sort<sup>7</sup> of traitors here.  
Nay, if I turn mine eyes upon myself,  
I find myself a traitor with the rest :  
For I have given here my soul's consent,  
To undeck the pompous body of a king ;  
Make glory base ; and sovereignty, a slave ;  
Proud majesty, a subject ; state, a peasant.

*North.* My lord, —

*K. Rich.* No lord of thine, thou haught, insulting man,  
Nor no man's lord ; I have no name, no title, —  
No, not that name was given me at the font, —  
But 'tis usurp'd : — Alack the heavy day,  
That I have worn so many winters out,  
And know not now what name to call myself !  
O, that I were a mockery king of snow,  
Standing before the sun of Bolingbroke,  
To melt myself away in water-drops ! —  
Good king, — great king, — (and yet not greatly good,)  
An if my word be sterling yet in England,  
Let it command a mirror hither straight ;

That it may show me what a face I have,  
Since it is bankrupt of his majesty.

*Boling.* Go, some of you, and fetch a looking-glass. *[Exit an Attendant.]*

*North.* Read o'er this paper while the glass doth come.

*K. Rich.* Fiend! thou torment'st me.

*Boling.* Urge it no more, my lord Northumberland.

*North.* The commons will not then be satisfied.

*K. Rich.* They shall be satisfied: I'll read enough,  
When I do see the very book indeed  
Where all my sins are writ, and that's myself. —

*Re-enter Attendant, with a Glass.*

Give me that glass, and therein will I read. —  
No deeper wrinkles yet? Hath sorrow struck  
So many blows upon this face of mine,  
And made no deeper wounds? — O, flattering glass,  
Like to my followers in prosperity,  
Thou dost beguile me! Was this face the face,  
That every day under his household roof  
Did keep ten thousand men? Was this the face,  
That, like the sun, did make beholders wink?  
Was this the face that fac'd so many follies,  
And was at last out-fac'd by Bolingbroke?  
A brittle glory shineth in this face:  
As brittle as the glory is the face;

*[Dashes the glass against the ground.]*

For there it is, crack'd in a hundred shivers. —  
Mark, silent king, the moral of this sport, —  
How soon my sorrow hath destroy'd my face.

*Boling.* The shadow of your sorrow hath destroy'd

The shadow of your face.

*K. Rich.*

Say that again.

The shadow of my sorrow? Ha! let's see: —  
'Tis very true, my grief lies all within;

And these external manners of lament  
Are merely shadows to the unseen grief,  
That swells with silence in the tortur'd soul;  
There lies the substance: and I thank thee, king,  
For thy great bounty, that not only giv'st  
Me cause to wail, but teachest me the way  
How to lament the cause. I'll beg one boon,  
And then begone, and trouble you no more.  
Shall I obtain it?

*Boling.* Name it, fair cousin.

*K. Rich.* Fair cousin? Why I am greater than a  
king:

For, when I was a king, my flatterers  
Were then but subjects; being now a subject,  
I have a king here to my flatterer.  
Being so great, I have no need to beg.

*Boling.* Yet ask.

*K. Rich.* And shall I have?

*Boling.* You shall.

*K. Rich.* Then give me leave to go.

*Boling.* Whither?

*K. Rich.* Whither you will, so I were from your  
sights.

*Boling.* Go some of you, convey him to the  
Tower.

*K. Rich.* O, good! Convey?—Conveyers<sup>s</sup> are  
you all,

That rise thus nimbly by a true king's fall.

[*Exeunt K. RICHARD, some Lords, and a Guard.*]

*Boling.* On Wednesday next, we solemnly set  
down

Our coronation: lords, prepare yourselves.

[*Exeunt all but the Abbot, Bishop of CARLISLE,  
and AUMERLE.*]

*Abbot.* A woeful pageant have we here beheld.

*Car.* The woe's to come; the children yet unborn  
Shall feel this day as sharp to them as thorn.

<sup>s</sup> Jugglers, also robbers.



*Aum.* You holy clergymen, is there no plot  
To rid the realm of this pernicious blot?

*Abbot.* Before I freely speak my mind herein,  
You shall not only take the sacrament  
To bury mine intents, but to effect  
Whatever I shall happen to devise : —  
I see your brows are full of discontent,  
Your hearts of sorrow, and your eyes of tears ;  
Come home with me to supper ; I will lay  
A plot shall show us all a merry day. [Exeunt.]

---

## ACT THE FIFTH.

### SCENE I.

London. *A Street leading to the Tower.*

*Enter QUEEN, and Ladies.*

*Queen.* This way the king will come ; this is the  
way  
To Julius Cæsar's ill-erected tower,<sup>9</sup>  
To whose flint bosom my condemned lord  
Is doom'd a prisoner by proud Bolingbroke :  
Here let us rest, if this rebellious earth  
Have any resting for her true king's queen.

*Enter King RICHARD, and Guards.*

But soft, but see, or rather do not see,  
My fair rose wither : Yet look up ; behold ;  
That you in pity may dissolve to dew,  
And wash him fresh again with true-love tears. —  
Ah, thou, the model where old Troy did stand !

<sup>9</sup> Tower of London.

Thou map of honour ; thou king Richard's tomb,  
And not king Richard ; thou most beauteous inn,  
Why should hard-favour'd grief be lodg'd in thee,  
When triumph is become an ale-house guest ?

*K. Rich.* Join not with grief, fair woman, do  
not so,

To make my end too sudden : learn, good soul,  
To think our former state a happy dream ;  
From which awak'd, the truth of what we are  
Shows us but this : I am sworn brother, sweet,  
To grim necessity ; and he and I  
Will keep a league till death. Hie thee to France,  
And cloister thee in some religious house :  
Our holy lives must win a new world's crown,  
Which our profane hours here have stricken down,

*Queen.* What, is my Richard both in shape and  
mind

Transform'd, and weakened ? Hath Bolingbroke  
Depos'd thine intellect ? hath he been in thy heart ?  
The lion, dying, thrusteth forth his paw,  
And wounds the earth, if nothing else, with rage,  
To be o'erpower'd ; and wilt thou, pupil-like,  
Take thy correction mildly ? kiss the rod,  
And fawn on rage with base humility,  
Which art a lion, and a king of beasts ?

*K. Rich.* A king of beasts, indeed ; if aught but  
beasts,

I had been still a happy king of men.

Good sometime queen, prepare thee hence for  
France :

Think, I am dead ; and that even here thou tak'st  
As from my death-bed, my last living leave,  
In winter's tedious nights, sit by the fire,  
With good old folks ; and let them tell thee tales  
Of woeful ages, long ago betid :  
And, ere thou bid good night, to quit<sup>1</sup> their grief,  
Tell thou the lamentable fall of me,

<sup>1</sup> Requite, repay.

And send the hearers weeping to their beds.  
For why, the senseless brands will sympathize  
The heavy accent of thy moving tongue,  
And, in compassion weep the fire out :  
And some will mourn in ashes, some coal-black,  
For the deposing of a rightful king.

*Enter NORTHUMBERLAND, attended.*

*North.* My lord, the mind of Bolingbroke is  
chang'd ;

You must to Pomfret, not unto the Tower. —  
And, madam, there is order ta'en for you ;  
With all swift speed you must away to France.

*K. Rich.* Northumberland, thou ladder where  
withal

The mounting Bolingbroke ascends my throne, —  
The time shall not be many hours of age  
More than it is, ere foul sin, gathering head,  
Shall break into corruption : thou shalt think,  
Though he divide the realm, and give thee half,  
It is too little, helping him to all ;  
And he shall think, that thou, which know'st the way  
To plant unrightful kings, wilt know again,  
Being ne'er so little urg'd, another way  
To pluck him headlong from the usurped throne.  
The love of wicked friends converts to fear ;  
That fear, to hate ; and hate turns one, or both,  
To worthy danger, and deserved death.

*North.* My guilt be on my head, and there an  
end.

Take leave, and part ; for you must part forthwith.

*K. Rich.* Doubly divorc'd ? — Bad men, ye violate  
A two-fold marriage ; 'twixt my crown and me ;  
And then, betwixt me and my married wife. —  
Let me unkiss the oath 'twixt thee and me ;  
And yet not so, for with a kiss 'twas made. —  
*Part us, Northumberland ; I towards the north  
Where shivering cold and sickness pines the c*

My wife to France; from whence, set forth in pomp,  
She came adorned hither like sweet May,  
Sent back like Hallowmas <sup>2</sup>, or short'st of day.

*Queen.* And must we be divided? must we part?

*K. Rich.* Ay, hand from hand, my love, and  
heart from heart.

*Queen.* Banish us both, and send the king with  
me.

*North.* That were some love, but little policy.

*Queen.* Then whither he goes, thither let me go?

*K. Rich.* So two, together weeping, make one  
woe.

Weep thou for me in France, I for thee here;

Better far off, than — near, be ne'er the near'.

Go, count thy way with sighs; I, mine with groans.

*Queen.* So longest way shall have the longest  
moans.

*K. Rich.* Twice for one step I'll groan, the way  
being short,

And piece the way out with a heavy heart.

Come, come, in wooing sorrow, let's be brief,

Since, wedding it, there is such length in grief.

One kiss shall stop our mouths, and dumbly part;

Thus give I mine, and thus I take thy heart.

[*They kiss.*

*Queen.* Give me mine own again; 'twere no good  
part,

To take on me to keep and kill thy heart.

[*Kiss again.*

So, now I have mine own again, begone,

That I may strive to kill it with a groan.

*K. Rich.* We make woe wanton with this fond  
delay:

Once more, adieu; the rest let sorrow say.

[*Exeunt.*

<sup>2</sup> Allhallows, i. e. All-saints, Nov. 1.

## SCENE II.

*The same. A Room in the Duke of York's Palace.*

*Enter YORK, and his Duchess.*

*Duch.* My lord, you told me, you would tell the rest,

When weeping made you break the story off,  
Of our two cousins coming into London.

*York.* Where did I leave?

*Duch.* At that sad stop, my lord,  
Where rude misgovern'd hands, from windows' tops,  
Threw dust and rubbish on king Richard's head.

*York.* Then, as I said, the duke, great Bolingbroke, —

Mounted upon a hot and fiery steed,  
Which his aspiring rider seem'd to know, —  
With slow, but stately pace, kept on his course,  
While all tongues cried — God save thee, Bolingbroke!

You would have thought the very windows spake,  
So many greedy looks of young and old  
Through casements darted their desiring eyes  
Upon his visage; and that all the walls,  
With painted imag'ry, had said at once, —  
Jesu preserve thee! welcome, Bolingbroke!  
Whilst he, from one side to the other turning,  
Bare-headed, lower than his proud steed's neck,  
Bespake them thus, — I thank you, countrymen:  
And thus still doing, thus he pass'd along.

*Duch.* Alas, poor Richard! where rides he the while?

*York.* As, in a theatre, the eyes of men,  
After a well-grac'd actor leaves the stage,  
Are idly bent on him that enters next,  
Thinking his prattle to be tedious:  
Even so, or with much more contempt, men's eyes

Did scowl on Richard, no man cried, God save him ;  
No joyful tongue gave him his welcome home :  
But dust was thrown upon his sacred head :  
Which with such gentle sorrow he shook off, —  
His face still combating with tears and smiles,  
The badges of his grief and patience, —  
That, had not God, for some strong purpose steel'd  
The hearts of men, they must perforce have melted,  
And barbarism itself have pitied him.  
But Heaven hath a hand in these events ;  
To whose high will we bound our calm contents.  
To Bolingbroke are we sworn subjects now,  
Whose state and honour I for aye allow.

*Enter AUMERLE.*

*Duch.* Here comes my son Aumerle.

*York.* Aumerle that was ;  
But that is lost for being Richard's friend,  
And, madam, you must call him Rutland now :  
I am in parliament pledge for his truth,  
And lasting fealty to the new-made king.

*Duch.* Welcome, my son : Who are the violets  
now,  
That strew the green lap of the new-come spring ?

*Aum.* Madam, I know not, nor I greatly care not :  
Heaven knows, I had as lief be none, as one,

*York.* Well, bear you well in this new spring of  
time,  
Lest you be cropp'd before you come to prime,  
What news from Oxford ? hold those justs<sup>3</sup> and  
triumphs ?

*Aum.* For aught I know, my lord, they do.

*York.* You will be there, I know.

*Aum.* I purpose so.

*York.* What seal is that, that hangs without thy  
bosom ?

Yea, look'st thou pale ? let me see the writing.

<sup>3</sup> *Tilts and tournaments.*

*Aum.* My lord, 'tis nothing.

*York.* No matter then who see  
I will be satisfied, let me see the writing.

*Aum.* I do beseech your grace to pardon me  
It is a matter of small consequence,  
Which for some reasons I would not have seen

*York.* Which for some reasons, sir, I mean to  
I fear, I fear, —

*Duch.* What should you fear?  
'Tis nothing but some bond that he is enter'd i  
For gay apparel, 'gainst the triumph day.

*York.* Bound to himself? what doth he wi  
bond

That he is bound to? Wife, thou art a fool. —  
Boy, let me see the writing.

*Aum.* I do beseech you, pardon me; I may  
show it.

*York.* I will be satisfied; let me see it, I say  
[*Snatches it, and re*  
Treason! foul treason! villain! traitor! slave

*Duch.* What is the matter, my lord?

*York.* Ho! who is within there? [*Enter a Serv*  
Saddle my horse.

Heaven for his mercy! what treachery is here

*Duch.* Why, what is it, my lord?

*York.* Give me my boots, I say; saddle  
horse: —

Now by mine honour, by my life, my troth,  
I will appeach the villain. [*Exit Serv*

*Duch.* What's the matter:

*York.* Peace, foolish woman.

*Duch.* I will not peace: — What is the ma  
son?

*Aum.* Good mother, be content; it is no n  
Than my poor life must answer.

*Duch.* Thy life ansu

*Re-enter Servant, with Boots.*

*York.* Bring me my boots, I will unto the king.

*Duch.* Strike him, Aumerle, — Poor boy, thou art amaz'd :

Hence, villain ; never more come in my sight. —

[*To the Servant.*

*York.* Give me my boots, I say.

*Duch.* Why, York, what wilt thou do ?

Wilt thou not hide the trespass of thine own ?

Have we more sons ? or are we like to have ?

And wilt thou pluck my fair son from mine age,

And rob me of a happy mother's name ?

Is he not like thee ? is he not thine own ?

*York.* Thou fond mad woman,

Wilt thou conceal this dark conspiracy ?

A dozen of them here have ta'en the sacrament,

And interchangeably set down their hands,

To kill the king at Oxford.

*Duch.*

He shall be none ;

We'll keep him here : Then what is that to him ?

*York.* Away,

Fond woman ! were he twenty times my son,

I would appeach him.

*Duch.*

Hadst thou groan'd for him,

As I have done, thou'dst be more pitiful.

*York.* Make way, unruly woman.

[*Exit.*

*Duch.* After, Aumerle ; mount thee upon his horse ;

Spur, post ; and get before him to the king,

And beg thy pardon ere he do accuse thee.

I'll not be long behind ; though I be old,

I doubt not but to ride as fast as York :

And never will I rise up from the ground,

Till Bolingbroke have pardon'd thee : Away :

Begone.

[*Exeunt.*



## SCENE III.

Windsor. *A Room in the Castle.*

*Enter BOLINGBROKE, as King; PERCY, and o  
Lords.*

*Boling.* Can no man tell of my unthrifty son  
'Tis full three months since I did see him last :  
If any plague hang over us, 'tis he.  
I would to heaven, my lords, he might be found  
Inquire at London, 'mongst the taverns there,  
For there, they say, he daily doth frequent,  
With unrestrained loose companions ;  
Even such, they say, as stand in narrow lanes,  
And beat our watch, and rob our passengers ;  
While he, young, wanton, and effeminate boy,  
Takes on the point of honour, to support  
So dissolute a crew.

*Percy.* My lord, some two days since I saw  
prince ;

And told him of these triumphs held at Oxford  
*Boling.* And what said the gallant ?

*Percy.* His answer was, — he would unto  
stews ;

And from the common'st creature pluck a glove  
And wear it as a favour ; and with that  
He would unhorse the lustiest challenger.

*Boling.* As dissolute, as desperate ! yet thro  
both

I see some sparkles of a better hope,  
Which elder days may happily bring forth.  
But who comes here ?

*Enter AUMERLE hastily.*

*Aum.*

Where is the king ?

*Boling.*

Our cousin, that he stares and looks so wildly

*Aum.* God save your grace. I do beseech your majesty,  
To have some conference with your grace alone.

*Boling.* Withdraw yourselves, and leave us here alone. — [*Exeunt PERCY and Lords.*]  
What is the matter with our cousin now?

*Aum.* For ever may my knees grow to the earth,  
[*Kneels.*]  
My tongue cleave to my roof within my mouth,  
Unless a pardon, ere I rise, or speak.

*Boling.* Intended, or committed, was this fault?  
If but the first, how heinous e'er it be,  
To win thy after-love, I pardon thee.

*Aum.* Then give me leave that I may turn the key,  
That no man enter till my tale be done.

*Boling.* Have thy desire.

[*AUMERLE locks the door.*]

*York.* [*Within.*] My liege beware; look to thyself;

Thou hast a traitor in thy presence there.

*Boling.* Villain, I'll make thee safe. [*Drawing.*]

*Aum.* Stay thy revengeful hand;  
Thou hast no cause to fear.

*York.* [*Within.*] Open the door, secure, fool-hardy king:

Shall I, for love, speak treason to thy face?

Open the door, or I will break it open.

[*BOLINGBROKE opens the door.*]

*Enter YORK.*

*Boling.* What is the matter, uncle? speak;  
Recover breath; tell us how near is danger,  
That we may arm us to encounter it.

*York.* Peruse this writing here, and thou shalt know  
The treason that my haste forbids me show.

*Aum.* Remember, as thou read'st, thy pro-  
past :

I do repent me ; read not my name there,  
My heart is not confederate with my hand.

*York.* 'Twas, villain, ere thy hand did se-  
down. —

I tore it from the traitor's bosom, king :  
Fear, and not love, begets his penitence :  
Forget to pity him, lest thy pity prove  
A serpent that will sting thee to the heart.

*Boling.* O heinous, strong, and bold conspirac-  
O loyal father of a treacherous son !  
Thou sheer<sup>4</sup>, immaculate, and silver fountain,  
From whence this stream through muddy passes  
Hath held his current, and defil'd himself !  
Thy overflow of good converts to bad ;  
And thy abundant goodness shall excuse  
This deadly blot in thy digressing son.

*York.* So shall he spend mine honour with  
shame,

As thriftless sons their scraping fathers' gold.  
Mine honour lives when his dishonour dies,  
Or my sham'd life in his dishonour lies ;  
Thou kill'st me in his life ; giving him breath,  
The traitor lives, the true man's put to death.

*Duch.* [*Within.*] What ho, my liege !  
Heaven's sake let me in.

*Boling.* What shrill'd-voic'd suppliant makes  
eager cry ?

*Duch.* A woman, and thine aunt, great k-  
'tis I.

Speak with me, pity me, open the door ;  
A beggar begs, that never begg'd before.

*Boling.* My dangerous cousin, let your mothe-  
I know, she's come to pray for your foul sin.

*York.* If thou do pardon, whosoever pray,  
More sins, for this forgiveness, prosper may.

<sup>4</sup> Transparent.

'This fester'd joint cut off, the rest rests sound ;  
This let alone, will all the rest confound.

*Enter Duchess.*

*Duch.* O king, believe not this hard-hearted man.

*York.* Thou frantic woman, what dost thou make here ?

*Duch.* Sweet York, be patient : Hear me, gentle liege. [*Kneels.*

*Boling.* Rise up, good aunt.

*Duch.* Not yet, I thee beseech :  
For ever will I kneel upon my knees,  
And never see day that the happy sees,  
Till thou give joy ; until thou bid me joy,  
By pardoning Rutland, my transgressing boy.

*Aum.* Unto my mother's prayers, I bend my knee. [*Kneels.*

*York.* Against them both, my true joints bended be. [*Kneels.*

Ill may'st thou thrive, if thou grant any grace !

*Duch.* Pleads he in earnest ? look upon his face ;  
His eyes do drop no tears, his prayers are in jest ;  
His words come from his mouth, ours from our breast :

He prays but faintly, and would be denied ;  
We pray with heart, and soul, and all beside :  
His weary joints would gladly rise, I know ;  
Our knees shall kneel till to the ground they grow :  
His prayers are full of false hypocrisy ;  
Ours, of true zeal and deep integrity.  
Our prayers do out-pray his ; then let them have  
That mercy which true prayers ought to have.

*Boling.* Good aunt, stand up,

*Duch.* Nay, do not say — stand up ;  
But, pardon, first ; and afterwards, stand up.  
And if I were thy nurse, thy tongue to teach,  
Pardon—should be the first word of thy speech.  
I never long'd to hear a word till now ;  
Say—*pardon, king ; let pity teach thee how :*

The word is short, but not so short as sweet ;  
 No word like, pardon, for kings' mouths so meet  
 Thine eye begins to speak, set thy tongue then  
 Or, in thy piteous heart plant thou thine ear ;  
 That, hearing how our complaints and prayers do pierce  
 Pity may move thee, pardon to rehearse.

*Boling.* Good aunt, stand up.

*Duch.* I do not sue to stand  
 Pardon is all the suit I have in hand.

*Boling.* I pardon him, as God shall pardon me.

*Duch.* O happy vantage of a kneeling knee !  
 Yet am I sick for fear : speak it again ;  
 Twice saying pardon, doth not pardon twain,  
 But makes one pardon strong.

*Boling.* With all my heart  
 I pardon him.

*Duch.* A god on earth thou art.

*Boling.* But for our trusty brother-in-law, —  
 the abbot,  
 With all the rest of that consorted crew, —  
 Destruction straight shall dog them at the heel  
 Good uncle, help to order several powers  
 To Oxford, or where'er these traitors are :  
 They shall not live within this world, I swear,  
 But I will have them, if I once know where.  
 Uncle, farewell, — and cousin too, adieu :  
 Your mother well hath pray'd, and prove you true

*Duch.* Come, my old son : — I pray Heaven bless  
 thee new. [Exit

#### SCENE IV.

*Enter* EXTON *and a Servant.*

*Exton.* Didst thou not mark the king, what was  
 he spake ?  
*Have I no friend will rid me of this living fear ?*  
*Was it not so ?*

*Serv.* Those were his very words.

Exton. *Have I no friend?* quoth he : he spake  
it twice,

And urg'd it twice together ; did he not ?

Serv. He did.

Exton. And, speaking it, he wistfully look'd on  
me ;

As who should say, — I would, thou wert the man  
That would divorce this terror from my heart ;

Meaning, the king at Pomfret. Come, let's go ;

I am the king's friend, and will rid his foe. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE V.

Pomfret. *The Castle.*

*Enter King RICHARD.*

K. Rich. I have been studying how I may com-  
pare

This prison, where I live, unto the world :

And, for because the world is populous,

And here is not a creature but myself,

I cannot do it ; — Yet I'll hammer it out.

My brain I'll prove the female to my soul ;

My soul, the father : and these two beget

A generation of still-breeding thoughts,

And these same thoughts people this little world ;

In humours, like the people of this world ;

For no thought is contented. The better sort, —

As thoughts of things divine, — are intermix'd

With scruples, and do set the word itself

Against the word :

Thoughts tending to ambition, they do plot

Unlikely wonders : how these vain weak nails

May tear a passage through the flinty ribs

Of this hard world, my ragged prison walls ;

And, for they cannot, die in their own pride.

Thoughts tending to content, flatter themselves, —

*That they are not the first of fortune's slaves,*

Nor shall not be the last ; like silly beggars,  
Who, sitting in the stocks refuge their shame, —  
That many have, and others must sit there :  
And in this thought they find a kind of ease,  
Bearing their own misfortune on the back  
Of such as have before endur'd the like.  
Thus play I, in one person, many people,  
And none contented : Sometimes am I king ;  
Then treason makes me wish myself a beggar,  
And so I am : Then crushing penury  
Persuades me I was better when a king ;  
Then am I king'd again : and, by-and-by,  
Think that I am unking'd by Bolingbroke,  
And straight am nothing : — but whate'er I am,  
Nor I, nor any man, but that but man is,  
With nothing shall be pleas'd till he be eas'd  
With being nothing. — Musick do I hear ? [*Musick.*  
Ha, ha ! keep time : — How sour sweet musick is,  
When time is broke, and no proportion kept !  
So is it in the musick of men's lives.  
And here have I the daintiness of ear,  
To check time broke in a disorder'd string ;  
But, for the concord of my state and time,  
Had not an ear to hear my true time broke.  
I wasted time, and now doth time waste me.  
For now hath time made me his numb'ring clock :  
My thoughts are minutes ; and, with sighs, they jar  
Their watches on unto mine eyes, the outward  
watch,  
Whereto my finger, like a dial's point,  
Is pointing still, in cleansing them from tears.  
Now, sir, the sounds that tell what hour it is,  
Are clamorous groans, that strike upon my heart,  
Which is the bell : So sighs, and tears, and groan  
Show minutes, times, and hours : — but my time  
Runs posting on in Bolingbroke's proud joy.  
This musick mads me, let it sound no more ;  
For, though it have holpe madmen to their wits,  
In me, it seems it will make wise men mad

Yet blessing on his heart that gives it me !  
For 'tis a sign of love ; and love to Richard  
Is a strange brooch in this all-hating world.

*Enter Groom.*

*Groom.* Hail, royal prince !

*K. Rich.* What art thou ? and how comest thou  
hither,

Where no man never comes, but that sad dog  
That brings me food, to make misfortune live ?

*Groom.* I was a poor groom of thy stable, king,  
When thou wert king ; who, travelling towards  
York,

With much ado, at length have gotten leave  
To look upon my sometime master's face.

O, how it yearn'd my heart, when I beheld,  
In London streets, that coronation day,  
When Bolingbroke rode on roan Barbary !  
That horse, that thou so often hast bestrid ;  
That horse, that I so carefully have dress'd !

*K. Rich.* Rode he on Barbary ? Tell me, gentle  
friend,  
How went he under him ?

*Groom.* So proudly, as if he disdain'd the ground.

*K. Rich.* So proud that Bolingbroke was on his  
back !

That jade hath eat bread from my royal hand ;  
This hand hath made him proud with clapping him.  
Would he not stumble ? Would he not fall down,  
(Since pride must have a fall,) and break the neck  
Of that proud man that did usurp his back ?  
Forgiveness, horse ! why do I rail on thee,  
Since thou, created to be aw'd by man,  
Wast born to bear ? I was not made a horse ;  
And yet I bear a burden like an ass,  
Spur-gall'd, and tir'd, by jauncing Bolingbroke.



*Enter Keeper, with a Dish.*

*Keep.* Fellow, give place; here is no longer stay.

[*To the Groom.*

*K. Rich.* If thou love me, 'tis time thou wert away.

*Groom.* What my tongue dares not, that my heart shall say. [*Exit.*

*Keep.* My lord, will't please you to fall to?

*K. Rich.* Taste of it first, as thou art wont to do.

*Keep.* My lord, I dare not; sir Pierce of Exton, who

Lately came from the king, commands the contrary.

*K. Rich.* The devil take Henry of Lancaster, and thee!

Patience is stale, and I am weary of it.

[*Beats the Keeper.*

*Keep.* Help, help, help!

*Enter EXTON, and Servants, armed.*

*K. Rich.* How now? what means death in this rude assault?

Villain, thy own hand yields thy death's instrument. [*Snatching a weapon, and killing one.*

Go thou, and fill another room in hell.

[*He kills another, then EXTON strikes him down.*

That hand shall burn in never-quenching fire,  
That staggers thus my person. — Exton, thy fierce hand

Hath with the king's blood stain'd the king's own land.

Mount, mount, my soul! thy seat is up on high;  
Whilst my gross flesh sinks downward, here to die.

[*Dies.*

*Exton.* As full of valour, as of royal blood:  
*Both* have I spilt; O, would the deed were good!

For now the devil, that told me — I did well,  
Says that this deed is chronicled in hell.  
This dead king to the living king I'll bear ; —  
Take hence the rest, and give them burial here.  
[*Exeunt.*

## SCENE VI.

Windsor. *A Room in the Castle.*

*Flourish.* Enter BOLINGBROKE, and YORK, with  
Lords and Attendants.

*Boling.* Kind uncle York, the latest news we hear  
Is — that the rebels have consum'd with fire  
Our town of Cicester in Glostershire ;  
But whether they be ta'en, or slain, we hear not.

*Enter* NORTHUMBERLAND.

Welcome, my lord : What is the news ?

*North.* First, to thy sacred state wish I all happiness.

The next news is, — I have to London sent  
The heads of Salisbury, Spencer, Blunt, and Kent :  
The manner of their taking may appear  
At large discoursed in this paper here.

[*Presenting a paper.*

*Boling.* We thank thee, gentle Percy, for thy  
pains ;  
And to thy worth will add right worthy gains.

*Enter* FITZWATER.

*Fitz.* My lord, I have from Oxford sent to London  
The heads of Brocas, and Sir Bennet Seely ;  
Two of the dangerous consorted traitors,  
That sought at Oxford thy dire overthrow.

*Boling.* Thy pains, Fitzwater, shall not be forgot;  
Right noble is thy merit, well I wot.

*Enter PERCY, with the Bishop of CARLISLE.*

*Percy.* The grand conspirator, abbot of Westminster,

With clog of conscience, and sour melancholy,  
Hath yielded up his body to the grave;  
But here is Carlisle living, to abide  
Thy kingly doom, and sentence of his pride.

*Boling.* Carlisle, this is your doom:—  
Choose out some secret place, some reverend room,  
More than thou hast, and with it joy thy life;  
So, as thou liv'st in peace, die free from strife:  
For, though mine enemy thou hast ever been,  
High sparks of honour in thee have I seen.

*Enter EXTON, with Attendants bearing a Coffin.*

*Exton.* Great king, within this coffin I present  
Thy buried fear: herein all breathless lies  
The mightiest of thy greatest enemies,  
Richard of Bourdeaux, by me hither brought.

*Boling.* Exton, I thank thee not; for thou hast  
wrought  
A deed of slander, with thy fatal hand,  
Upon my head, and all this famous land.

*Exton.* From your own mouth, my lord, did I  
this deed.

*Boling.* They love not poison that do poison need,  
Nor do I thee; though I did wish him dead,  
I hate the murderer, love him murdered.  
The guilt of conscience take thou for thy labour,  
But neither my good word, nor princely favour:  
With Cain go wander through the shade of night,  
And never show thy head by day nor light.—  
Lords, I protest my soul is full of woe,  
That blood should sprinkle me, to make me grow:

e, mourn with me for what I do lament,  
put on sullen black incontinent ;<sup>b</sup>  
make a voyage to the Holy Land,  
wash this blood off from my guilty hand : —  
ch sadly after ; grace my mournings here,  
weeping after this untimely bier. [*Exeunt.*

<sup>b</sup> Immediately.



---

---

**KING HENRY IV.**

**PART I.**

---

---

## PREFACE OF THE EDITOR

TO

## THE TWO PARTS OF HENRY IV.

My late excellent friend, Mrs. Montagu, in her Essay on the Writings and Genius of Shakspeare, has paid particular attention to Henry the IVth. In this, as in every part of her work, good principles, judicious argument, and refined taste, appear in all her observations; but I confine myself to the more immediate objects of the present publication,—purity, and decency of expression.

Every person must be sensible, that of all the historical plays, the Two Parts of Henry the IVth. are the most difficult to render fit for family reading. To clear them of all indecent, and indelicate expressions, without destroying the wit and spirit of Falstaff, and without injuring the narrative, is indeed an arduous undertaking; but I hope I may remove many objectionable passages, though I may not be able to render the work perfect. "*Est quædam prodire tenus, si non datur ultra.*" Feeling the difficulty of the task, I take as a guide the following extract from the just observations of my deceased friend.

"There are delicacies of decorum in one age unknown to another age: but whatever is immoral, is equally blameable in all ages; and every approach to obscenity, is an offence, for which wit cannot atone, nor the barbarism or the corruption of the times afford an excuse. Mine hostess Quickly is of a species not extinct. It may be said, the author there sinks from comedy to farce; but she helps to complete the character of Falstaff, and some of the dialogues in which she is engaged are divert-

*Every scene in which Doll Tearsheet appears indecent; and therefore not only indefensible, but inexcusable."*

After the foregoing quotation, my readers will not be surprised, if the name of the last mentioned person is not to be found in the following plays. I hope that all obscenity is equally banished from them. I wish it were in my power in like manner to exclude every expression which approaches to vulgarity or indelicacy ; but this, I fear, cannot be done, unless the whole of those scenes are omitted, in which any of the comic characters appear. The present publication may possibly be censured by two classes of readers, of very different sentiments. Those persons who are unwilling to be deprived of any part of the wit of Falstaff (whatever may be the expense of retaining it) will perhaps be displeased at the omission of the evening scene between him and Doll Tearsheet, and their followers. To them I reply, that consistently with the design of the present edition of Shakspeare, the omission was unavoidable ; but I regret it the less, because, as was suggested in my preface, those readers can gratify their taste by having recourse to former editions of the Second Part of Henry the IVth.

Other persons may possibly complain that there still remain in this work some expressions which are not consistent with that perfect delicacy of sentiment, with which it were desirable that every publication should be conducted. To this objection I fear that I can give no answer that will be quite satisfactory. I can only say, that I have endeavoured to render the speeches of Falstaff and his companions as correct as they could be rendered, without losing sight of their characters and dispositions. Those persons who still object to their language, cannot I believe do better, than confine their reading to the serious parts of the three following plays, which possess such merit, as can hardly be equalled in any other dramatic poet, and is seldom exceeded by our own immortal bard.



## PERSONS REPRESENTED.

---

KING HENRY THE FOURTH.

HENRY, *Prince of Wales*, } *sons to the King.*

PRINCE JOHN of Lancaster, }

EARL of WESTMORELAND, }

SIR WALTER BLUNT, }

*friends to the King.*

THOMAS PERCY, *Earl of Worcester.*

HENRY PERCY, *Earl of Northumberland :*

HENRY PERCY, *surnamed HOTSPUR, his son.*

EDWARD MORTIMER, *Earl of March.*

SCROOP, *Archbishop of York.*

ARCHIBALD, *Earl of Douglas.*

OWEN GLENDOWER.

SIR RICHARD VERNON.

SIR JOHN FALSTAFF.

POINS.

GADSHILL.

PETO. BARDOLPH.

LADY PERCY, *wife to Hotspur, and sister to Mortimer.*

LADY MORTIMER, *daughter to Glendower, and wife to Mortimer.*

MRS. QUICKLY, *Hostess of a Tavern in Eastcheap.*

*Lords, Officers, Sheriff, Vintner, Chamberlain, Drawers, two Carriers, Travellers, and Attendants.*

SCENE, *England.*

FIRST PART  
OF  
KING HENRY IV.

---

ACT THE FIRST.

SCENE I.

London. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter King HENRY, WESTMORELAND, Sir  
WALTER BLUNT, and others.*

*K. Hen.* So shaken as we are, so wan with care,  
Find we a time for frightened peace to pant,  
And breathe short-winded accents of new broils  
To be commenc'd in stronds<sup>1</sup> afar remote.  
No more the thirsty Erinnys<sup>2</sup> of this soil  
Shall daub her lips with her own children's blood;  
No more shall trenching war channel her fields,  
Nor bruise her flowrets with the armed hoofs  
Of hostile paces : those opposed eyes,  
Which, — like the meteors of a troubled heaven,  
All of one nature, of one substance bred, —  
Did lately meet in the intestine shock  
And furious close of civil butchery,  
Shall now, in mutual, well-beseeming ranks,  
March all one way ; and be no more oppos'd  
Against acquaintance, kindred, and allies :  
The edge of war, like an ill-sheathed knife,

Strands, banks of the sea.

<sup>2</sup> The fury of discord.

No more shall cut his master. Therefore, friends,  
As far as to the sepulchre of Christ,  
(Whose soldier now, under whose blessed cross  
We are impressed and engag'd to fight,)   
Forthwith a power of English shall we levy;  
Whose arms were moulded in their mothers' womb  
To chase these pagans, in those holy fields,  
Over whose acres walk'd those blessed feet,  
Which, fourteen hundred years ago, were nail'd  
For our advantage, on the bitter cross.  
But this our purpose is a twelve-month old,  
And bootless 'tis to tell you — we will go;  
Therefore we meet not now : — Then let me hear  
Of you, my gentle cousin Westmoreland,  
What yesternight our council did decree,  
In forwarding this dear expedience.<sup>3</sup>

*West.* My liege, this haste was hot in question,  
And many limits<sup>4</sup> of the charge set down  
But yesternight : when, all athwart, there came  
A post from Wales, loaden with heavy news;  
Whose worst was, — that the noble Mortimer,  
Leading the men of Herefordshire to fight  
Against the irregular and wild Glendower,  
Was by the rude hands of that Welshman taken,  
And a thousand of his people butchered.

*K. Hen.* It seems, then, that the tidings of this  
broil  
Brake off our business for the Holy Land.

*West.* This, match'd with other, did, my gracious  
lord;  
For more uneven and unwelcome news  
Came from the north, and thus it did import.  
On Holy-rood day<sup>5</sup>, the gallant Hotspur there,  
Young Harry Percy, and brave Archibald,  
That ever-valiant and approved Scot,  
At Holmedon met.  
Where they did spend a sad and bloody hour;

<sup>3</sup> Expedition.

<sup>4</sup> Estimates.

September 14.

As by discharge of their artillery,  
And shape of likelihood, the news was told ;  
For he that brought them, in the very heat  
And pride of their contention did take horse,  
Uncertain of the issue any way.

*K. Hen.* Here is a dear and true industrious  
friend,

Sir Walter Blunt, new lighted from his horse,  
Stain'd with the variation of each soil  
Betwixt that Holmedon and this seat of ours ;  
And he hath brought us smooth and welcome news.  
The earl of Douglas is discomfited ;  
Ten thousand bold Scots, two-and-twenty knights,  
Balk'd<sup>6</sup> in their own blood, did sir Walter see  
On Holmedon's plain : Of prisoners Hotspur took  
Mordake the earl of Fife, and eldest son  
To beaten Douglas ; and the earls of Athol,  
Of Murray, Angus, and Menteith.  
And is not this an honourable spoil ?  
A gallant prize ? ha, cousin, is it not ?

*West.* It is a conquest for a prince to boast of.

*K. Hen.* Yea, there thou mak'st me sad, and  
mak'st me sin

In envy that my lord Northumberland  
Should be the father of so blest a son :  
A son who is the theme of honour's tongue ;  
Amongst a grove, the very straightest plant ;  
Who is sweet fortune's minion, and her pride :  
Whilst I, by looking on the praise of him,  
See riot and dishonour stain the brow  
Of my young Harry. O, that it could be prov'd,  
That some night-tripping fairy had exchang'd  
In cradle-cloths our children where they lay,  
And call'd mine — Percy, his — Plantagenet !  
Then would I have his Harry, and he mine.  
But let him from my thoughts : — What think you,  
coz',

<sup>6</sup> *Piled up in a heap.*

Of this young Percy's pride? the prisoners,  
Which he in this adventure hath surpriz'd,  
To his own use he keeps: and sends me word,  
I shall have none but Mordake earl of Fife.

*West.* This is his uncle's teaching, this is Worcester,

Malevolent to you in all aspects:  
Which makes him prune<sup>7</sup> himself, and bristle up  
The crest of youth against your dignity.

*K. Hen.* But I have sent for him to answer this;  
And, for this cause, awhile we must neglect  
Our holy purpose to Jerusalem.

Cousin, on Wednesday next our council we  
Will hold at Windsor, so inform the lords:  
But come yourself with speed to us again;  
For more is to be said, and to be done,  
Than out of anger can be uttered.

*West.* I will, my liege. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II.

*Another Room in the Palace.*

*Enter HENRY Prince of Wales, and FALSTAFF.*

*Fal.* Now, Hal, what time of day is it, lad?

*P. Hen.* Thou art so fat-witted, with drinking of old sack, and sleeping upon benches after noon, that thou hast forgotten to demand that truly which thou would'st truly know. What hast thou to do with the time of the day? unless hours were cups of sack, and minutes capons, I see no reason, why thou should'st be so superfluous to demand the time of the day.

*Fal.* Indeed, you come near me, now, Hal: for we that take purses, go by the moon and seven

<sup>7</sup> Trim as birds clean their feathers.

stars ; and not by Phœbus, — he, *that wandering knight so fair*. And, I pray thee, sweet wag, when thou art king, — as, save thy grace, (majesty, I should say ; for grace thou wilt have none,) —

*P. Hen.* What, none ?

*Fal.* No, by my troth ; not so much as will serve to be prologue to an egg and butter,

*P. Hen.* Well, how then ? come, roundly, roundly.

*Fal.* Marry, then, sweet wag, when thou art king, let not us that are squires of the night's body, be called thieves of the day's beauty ; let us be — Diana's foresters, gentlemen of the shade, minions of the moon : And let men say, we be men of good government : being governed as the sea is, by our noble and chaste mistress the moon, under whose countenance we — steal.

*P. Hen.* Thou say'st well ; and it holds well too : for the fortune of us, that are the moon's men, doth ebb and flow like the sea ; being governed as the sea is, by the moon. As, for proof, now : A purse of gold most resolutely snatched on Monday night, and most dissolutely spent on Tuesday morning ; got with swearing — lay by<sup>8</sup> ; and spent with crying — bring in<sup>9</sup> : now, in as low an ebb as the foot of the ladder ; and, by and by, in as high a flow as the ridge of the gallows.

*Fal.* Thou say'st true, lad. And is not my hostess of the tavern a most sweet girl ?

*P. Hen.* As the honey of Hybla, my old lad of the castle. And is not a buff jerkin a most sweet robe of durance ?<sup>1</sup>

*Fal.* How now, how now, mad wag ? what, in thy quips, and thy quiddities ? what have I to do with a buff jerkin ?

*P. Hen.* Why, what have I to do with my hostess of the tavern ?

<sup>8</sup> Stand still.

<sup>9</sup> More wine.

<sup>1</sup> 'The dress of sheriffs' officers.

*Fal.* Well, thou hast called her to a reckoning many a time and oft.

*P. Hen.* Did I ever call for thee to pay thy part?

*Fal.* No; I'll give thee thy due, thou hast paid all there.

*P. Hen.* Yea, and elsewhere, so far as my coin would stretch; and, where it would not, I have used my credit.

*Fal.* Yea, and so used it, that were it not here apparent that thou art heir apparent,—But I pr'y-thee, sweet wag, shall there be gallows standing in England when thou art king? and resolution thus fobbed, as it is, with the rusty curb of old father antick the law? Do not thou, when thou art king, hang a thief.

*P. Hen.* No; thou shalt.

*Fal.* Shall I? O rare! I'll be a brave judge.

*P. Hen.* Thou judgest false already! I mean, thou shalt have the hanging of the thieves, and so become a rare hangman.

*Fal.* Well, Hal, well; and in some sort it jumps with my humour, as well as waiting in the court, I can tell you.

*P. Hen.* For obtaining of suits?

*Fal.* Yea, for obtaining of suits: whereof the hangman hath no lean wardrobe. I am as melancholy as a lugged bear.

*P. Hen.* Or an old lion; or a lover's lute.

*Fal.* Yea, or the drone of a Lincolnshire bagpipe.<sup>2</sup>

*P. Hen.* What sayest thou to a hare, or the melancholy of Moor-ditch?

*Fal.* Thou hast the most unsavoury similes; an art, indeed, the most comparative, rascalliest, — sweet young prince, — But, Hal, I pr'ythee, trouble me no more with vanity. I wish thou and I knew where a commodity of good names were to!

bought : an old lord of the council rated me the other day in the street about you, sir ; but I marked him not : and yet he talked very wisely ; but I regarded him not : and yet he talked wisely, and in the street too.

*P. Hen.* Thou did'st well ; for wisdom cries out in the streets, and no man regards it.

*Fal.* O thou art, indeed, able to corrupt a saint. Thou hast done much harm upon me, Hal, — Heaven forgive thee for it ! Before I knew thee, Hal, I knew nothing ; and now am I, if a man should speak truly, little better than one of the wicked. I must give over this life, and I will give it over ; an I do not, I am a villain.

*P. Hen.* Where shall we take a purse to-morrow, Jack ?

*Fal.* Where thou wilt, lad, I'll make one ; an I do not, call me villain, and baffle<sup>3</sup> me.

*P. Hen.* I see a good amendment of life in thee ; from praying, to purse-taking.

*Enter POINS, at a distance.*

*Fal.* Why, Hal, 'tis my vocation, Hal ; 'tis no sin for a man to labour in his vocation. Poins ! — Now shall we know if Gadshill have set a match.<sup>4</sup> This is the most omnipotent villain that ever cried, Stand, to a true man.

*P. Hen.* Good morrow, Ned.

*Poins.* Good morrow, sweet Hal. — What says monsieur Remorse ? What says sir John Sack-and-Sugar ? — My lads, my lads, to-morrow morning, by four o'clock, early at Gadshill : There are pilgrims going to Canterbury with rich offerings, and traders riding to London with fat purses : I have visors for you all, you have horses for yourselves : Gadshill lies to-night in Rochester : I have bespoke supper to-morrow night in Eastcheap ; we may do it as

<sup>3</sup> Treat me with ignominy.    <sup>4</sup> Made an appointment.



secure as sleep: If you will go, I will stuff your purses full of crowns: if you will not, tarry at home, and be hanged.

*Fal.* Hear me, Yedward; if I tarry at home, and go not, I'll hang you for going.

*Poins.* You will, chops?

*Fal.* Hal, wilt thou make one?

*P. Hen.* Who, I rob? I a thief? not I, by my faith.

*Fal.* There's neither honesty, manhood, nor good fellowship in thee, nor thou camest not of the blood royal, if thou darest not stand for ten shillings.<sup>5</sup>

*P. Hen.* Well, then, once in my days I'll be a madcap.

*Fal.* Why, that's well said.

*P. Hen.* Well, come what will, I'll tarry at home.

*Fal.* I'll be a traitor then, when thou art king.

*P. Hen.* I care not.

*Poins.* Sir John, I pr'ythee, leave the prince and me alone; I will lay him down such reasons for this adventure, that he shall go.

*Fal.* Well, may'st thou have the spirit of persuasion, and he the ears of profiting, that what thou speakest may move, and what he hears may be believed, that the true prince may (for recreation sake) prove a false thief; for the poor abuses of the time want countenance. Farewell: You shall find me in Eastcheap.

*P. Hen.* Farewell, thou latter spring! Farewell All-hallowen summer!<sup>6</sup> [Exit FALSTAFF.]

*Poins.* Now, my good sweet honey lord, ride with us to-morrow; I have a jest to execute, that I cannot manage alone. Falstaff, Bardolph, Peto, and Gadshill, shall rob those men that we have already waylaid; yourself, and I, will not be there: and

<sup>5</sup> The value of a coin called real or royal.

<sup>6</sup> Fine weather at All-hallowntide, (i. e. All-Saints Nov. 1st.) is called a All-hallowen summer.

when they have the booty, if you and I do not rob them, cut this head from my shoulders.

*P. Hen.* But how shall we part with them in setting forth?

*Poins.* Why, we will set forth before or after them, and appoint them a place of meeting, wherein it is at our pleasure to fail; and then will they adventure upon the exploit themselves; which they shall have no sooner achieved, but we'll set upon them.

*P. Hen.* Ay, but, 'tis like, that they will know us, by our horses, by our habits, and by every other appointment, to be ourselves.

*Poins.* Tut! our horses they shall not see, I'll tie them in the wood; our visors we will change, after we leave them; and, sirrah, I have cases of buckram for the nonce<sup>7</sup>, to immask our noted outward garments.

*P. Hen.* But, I doubt, they will be too hard for us.

*Poins.* Well, for two of them, I know them to be as true-bred cowards as ever turned back; and for the third, if he fight longer than he sees reason, I'll forswear arms. The virtue of this jest will be, the incomprehensible lies that this same fat rogue will tell us, when we meet at supper: how thirty, at least, he fought with; what wards, what blows, what extremities he endur'd; and, in the reproof of this, lies the jest.

*P. Hen.* Well, I'll go with thee; provide us all things necessary, and meet me to-morrow night in Eastcheap; there I'll sup. Farewell.

*Poins.* Farewell, my lord. [Exit POINS.]

*P. Hen.* I know you all, and will a while uphold  
The unyok'd humour of your idleness:  
Yet herein will I imitate the sun;  
Who doth permit the base contagious clouds

<sup>7</sup> Occasion.

To smother up his beauty from the world,  
That, when he please again to be himself,  
Being wanted, he may be more wonder'd at,  
By breaking through the foul and ugly mists  
Of vapours, that did seem to strangle him.  
If all the year were playing holidays,  
To sport would be as tedious as to work ;  
But, when they seldom come, they wish'd-for come,  
And nothing pleaseth but rare accidents.  
So, when this loose behaviour I throw off,  
And pay the debt I never promised,  
By how much better than my word I am,  
By so much shall I falsify men's hopes ;  
And, like bright metal on a sullen ground,  
My reformation, glittering o'er my fault,  
Shall show more goodly, and attract more eyes,  
Than that which hath no foil to set it off.  
I'll so offend, to make offence a skill ;  
Redeeming time, when men think least I will.  
[Exit.]

## SCENE III.

*Another Room in the Palace.*

*Enter King* HENRY, NORTHUMBERLAND, WOR-  
CESTER, HOTSPUR, Sir WALTER BLUNT, and  
*others.*

*K. Hen.* My blood hath been too cold and tem-  
perate,  
Unapt to stir at these indignities,  
And you have found me ; for, accordingly,  
You tread upon my patience ; but, be sure,  
I will from henceforth rather be myself,  
*Mighty*, and to be fear'd, than my condition ;  
*Which* hath been smooth as oil, soft as young down,

Disposition.

And therefore lost that title of respect,  
Which the proud soul ne'er pays but to the proud.

*Wor.* Our house, my sovereign liege, little deserves,

The scourge of greatness to be used on it ;  
And that same greatness to which our own hands  
Have help to make so portly.

*North.* My lord, —

*K. Hen.* Worcester, get thee gone, for I see  
danger

And disobedience in thine eye ; O, sir,  
Your presence is too bold and peremptory,  
And majesty might never yet endure  
The moody frontier of a servant brow.  
You have good leave to leave us ; when we need  
Your use and counsel, we shall send for you. —

[*Exit WORCESTER.*

You were about to speak. [ *To NORTH.*

*North.* Yea, my good lord.

Those prisoners in your highness' name demanded,  
Which Harry Percy here at Holmedon took,  
Were, as he says, not with such strength denied  
As is deliver'd to your majesty :  
Either envy, therefore, or misprision  
Is guilty of this fault, and not my son.

*Hot.* My liege, I did deny no prisoners.  
But, I remember, when the fight was done,  
When I was dry with rage, and extreme toil,  
Breathless and faint, leaning upon my sword,  
Came there a certain lord, neat, trimly dress'd,  
Fresh as a bridegroom ; and his chin, new reap'd,  
Show'd like a stubble-land at harvest-home ;  
He was perfumed like a milliner ;  
And 'twixt his finger and his thumb he held  
A pouncet-box <sup>9</sup>, which ever and anon  
He gave his nose, and took't away again ; —  
Who, therewith angry, when it next came there,

<sup>9</sup> A small box for musk or other perfumes

Took it in snuff: — and still he smil'd and talk'd;  
And, as the soldiers bore dead bodies by,  
He call'd them — untaught knaves, unmannerly,  
To bring a slovenly unhandsome corse  
Betwixt the wind and his nobility.  
With many holiday and lady terms  
He question'd me; among the rest demanded  
My prisoners, in your majesty's behalf.  
I then, all smarting, with my wounds being cold,  
To be so pester'd with a popinjay  
Out of my grief and my impatience,  
Answer'd neglectingly, I know not what;  
He should, or he should not; — for he made me mad,  
To see him shine so brisk, and smell so sweet,  
And talk so like a waiting-gentlewoman,  
Of guns, and drums, and wounds, (God save the  
mark !)

And telling me, the sovereign'st thing on earth  
Was parmaceti, for an inward bruise;  
And that it was great pity, so it was,  
That villainous saltpetre should be digg'd  
Out of the bowels of the harmless earth,  
Which many a good tall <sup>1</sup> fellow had destroy'd  
So cowardly; and, but for these vile guns,  
He would himself have been a soldier.  
This bald unjointed chat of his, my lord,  
I answer'd indirectly, as I said;  
And, I beseech you, let not his report  
Come current for an accusation,  
Betwixt my love and your high majesty.

*Blunt.* The circumstance consider'd, good my  
Whatever Harry Percy then had said,  
To such a person, and in such a place,  
At such a time, with all the rest re-told,  
May reasonably die, and never rise  
To do him wrong, or any way impeach  
What then he said, so he unsay it now.

*K. Hen.* Why, yet he doth deny his prisoners ;  
But with proviso, and exception, —  
That we, at our own charge, shall ransom straight  
His brother-in-law, the foolish Mortimer ;  
Who, on my soul, hath wilfully betray'd  
The lives of those that he did lead to fight  
Against the great magician, vile Glendower ;  
Whose daughter, as we hear, the earl of March  
Hath lately married. Shall our coffers then  
Be emptied, to redeem a traitor home ?  
Shall we buy treason ? and indent <sup>2</sup> with fears,  
When they have lost and forfeited themselves ?  
No, on the barren mountains let him starve ;  
For I shall never hold that man my friend,  
Whose tongue shall ask me for one penny cost  
To ransom home revolted Mortimer.

*Hot.* Revolted Mortimer !  
He never did fall off, my sovereign liege,  
But by the chance of war : — To prove that true,  
Needs no more but one tongue for all those wounds,  
Those mouthed wounds, which valiantly he took,  
When on the gentle Severn's sedgy bank,  
In single opposition, hand to hand,  
He did confound the best part of an hour  
In changing hardiment with great Glendower :  
Three times they breath'd, and three times did they  
    drink,  
Upon agreement, of swift Severn's flood ;  
Who then, affrighted with their bloody looks,  
Ran fearfully among the trembling reeds,  
And hid his crisp <sup>3</sup> head in the hollow bank  
Blood-stained with these valiant combatants.  
Never did bare and rotten policy  
Colour her working with such deadly wounds ;  
Nor never could the noble Mortimer  
Receive so many, and all willingly :  
Then let him not be slander'd with revolt.

<sup>2</sup> *Sign an indenture.*

<sup>3</sup> Curled.

*K. Hen.* Thou dost belie him, Percy, thou dost belie him ;  
He never did encounter with Glendower ;  
I tell thee,  
He durst as well have met the devil alone,  
As Owen Glendower for an enemy.  
Art not ashamed ? But, sirrah, henceforth  
Let me not hear you speak of Mortimer :  
Send me your prisoners with the speediest means,  
Or you shall hear in such a kind from me  
As will displease you. — My lord Northumberland,  
We license your departure with your son : —  
Send us your prisoners, or you'll hear of it.

[*Exeunt King HENRY, BLUNT, and Train.*]

*Hot.* And if the devil come and roar for them,  
I will not send them : — I will after straight,  
And tell him so ; for I will ease my heart,  
Although it be with hazard of my head.

*North.* What, drunk with choler ? stay, and pause awhile ;  
Here comes your uncle.

*Re-enter WORCESTER.*

*Hot.* Speak of Mortimer ?  
Yes, I will speak of him ; and let my soul  
Want mercy, if I do not join with him :  
Yea, on his part, I'll empty all these veins,  
And shed my dear blood drop by drop i' the dust,  
But I will lift the down-trod Mortimer  
As high i' the air as this unthankful king,  
As this ingrate and canker'd Bolingbroke.

*North.* Brother, the king hath made your nephew mad.

[*To WORCESTER.*]

*Wor.* Who struck this heat up, after I was gone ?

*Hot.* He will, forsooth, have all my prisoners ;  
And when I urg'd the ransom once again  
Of my wife's brother, then his cheek look'd pale ;  
And on my face he turn'd an eye of death,  
Trembling even at the name of Mortimer.

*Wor.* I cannot blame him: Was he not proclaim'd,  
By Richard that dead is, the next of blood?

*North.* He was; I heard the proclamation:  
And then it was, when the unhappy king  
(Whose wrongs in us God pardon!) did set forth  
Upon his Irish expedition:  
From whence he, intercepted, did return  
To be depos'd, and shortly, murdered.

*Wor.* And for whose death, we in the world's wide  
mouth  
Live scandaliz'd, and foully spoken of.

*Hot.* But, soft, I pray you; Did king Richard  
then  
Proclaim my brother Edmund Mortimer  
Heir to the crown?

*North.* He did; myself did hear it.

*Hot.* Nay, then I cannot blame his cousin king,  
That wish'd him on the barren mountains starv'd.  
But shall it be, that you,—that set the crown  
Upon the head of this forgetful man;  
And, for his sake, wear the detested blot  
Of murd'rous subordination,—shall it be,  
That you a world of curses undergo;  
Being the agents, or base second means,  
The cords, the ladder, or the hangman rather?—  
O, pardon me, that I descend so low,  
To show the line, and the predicament,  
Wherein you range under this subtle king.—  
Shall it, for shame, be spoken in these days,  
Or fill up chronicles in time to come,  
That men of your nobility and power,  
Did gage them both in an unjust behalf,—  
As both of you, God pardon it! have done,—  
To put down Richard, that sweet lovely rose,  
And plant this thorn, this canker, Bolingbroke?  
And shall it in more shame, be further spoken,  
That you are fool'd, discarded, and shook off  
By him, for whom these shames ye underwent?  
*No; yet time serves, wherein you may redeem*



Your banish'd honours, and restore yourselves  
Into the good thoughts of the world again :  
Revenge the jeering, and disdain'd contempt,  
Of this proud king ; who studies day and night,  
To answer all the debt he owes to you,  
Even with the bloody payment of your deaths.  
Therefore, I say, ——

*Wor.* Peace, cousin, say no more :  
And now I will unclasp a secret book,  
And to your quick-conceiving discontents  
I'll read your matter deep and dangerous ;  
As full of peril, and advent'rous spirit,  
As to o'er-walk a current, roaring loud,  
On the unsteadfast footing of a spear.

*Hot.* If he fall in, good night:—or sink or swim:  
Send danger from the east unto the west,  
So honour cross it from the north to south,  
And let them grapple ; — O ! the blood more stirs,  
To rouse a lion, than to start a hare.

*North.* Imagination of some great exploit  
Drives him beyond the bounds of patience.

*Hot.* By heaven, methinks, it were an easy leap,  
To pluck bright honour from the pale-fac'd moon ;  
Or dive into the bottom of the deep,  
Where fathom-line could never touch the ground,  
And pluck up drowned honour by the locks ;  
So he, that doth redeem her thence, might wear,  
Without corival, all her dignities :  
But out upon this half-fac'd fellowship !

*Wor.* He apprehends a word of figures here,  
But not the form of what he should attend. —  
Good cousin, give me audience for a while.

*Hot.* I cry you mercy.

*Wor.* Those same noble Scots,  
That are your prisoners, ——

*Hot.* I'll keep them all ;  
By heaven, he shall not have a Scot of them :  
No, if a Scot would save his soul, he shall not :  
I'll keep them, by this hand.

*Wor.* You start away,  
And lend no ear unto my purposes. —  
Those prisoners you shall keep.

*Hot.* Nay, I will ; that's flat : —  
He said, he would not ransom Mortimer ;  
Forbad my tongue to speak of Mortimer ;  
But I will find him when he lies asleep,  
And in his ear I'll holla — Mortimer !

Nay,  
I'll have a starling shall be taught to speak  
Nothing but Mortimer, and give it him,  
To keep his anger still in motion.

*Wor.* Hear you,  
Cousin ; a word.

*Hot.* All studies here I solemnly defy,  
Save how to gall and pinch this Bolingbroke :  
And that same sword-and-buckler prince of Wales, —  
But that I think his father loves him not,  
And would be glad he met with some mischance,  
I'd have him poison'd with a pot of ale.

*Wor.* Farewell, kinsman ! I will talk to you,  
When you are better temper'd to attend.

*North.* Why, what a wasp-stung and impatient fool  
Art thou, to break into this woman's mood ;  
Tying thine ear to no tongue but thine own !

*Hot.* Why, look you, I am whipp'd and scourg'd  
with rods,

Nettled, and stung with pismires, when I hear  
Of this vile politician, Bolingbroke.  
In Richard's time, — What do you call the place ? —  
A plague upon't ! — it is in Glostershire ; —  
'Twas where the mad-cap duke his uncle kept ;  
His uncle York ! — where I first bow'd my knee  
Unto this king of smiles, this Bolingbroke,  
When you and he came back from Ravenspurgh.

*North.* At Berkley castle.

*Hot.* You say true : —  
Why, what a candy deal of courtesy  
This fawning greyhound then did proffer me !

Look, — *when his infant fortune came to age,*  
And, — *gentle Harry Percy,* — and, *kind cousin,* —  
The devil take such cozeners ! — Heaven forgive  
me ! —

Good uncle, tell your tale, for I have done.

*Wor.* Nay, if you have not, to't again ;  
We'll stay your leisure.

*Hot.* I have done, i'faith.

*Wor.* Then once more to your Scottish prisoners.  
Deliver them up without their ransome straight,  
And make the Douglas' son your only mean  
For powers in Scotland ; which, — for divers reasons,  
Which I shall send you written, — be assur'd,  
Will easily be granted. — You my lord, —

[To NORTHUMBERLAND.]

Your son in Scotland being thus employ'd, —  
Shall secretly into the bosom creep  
Of that same noble prelate, well belov'd,  
The archbishop.

*Hot.* Of York, is't not ?

*Wor.* True ; who bears hard  
His brother's death at Bristol, the lord Scroop.  
I speak not this in estimation,  
As what I think might be, but what I know  
Is ruminated, plotted, and set down ;  
And only stays but to behold the face  
Of that occasion that shall bring it on.

*Hot.* I smell it ; upon my life, it will do well.

*North.* Before the game's afoot, thou still let'st  
slip.

*Hot.* Why, it cannot choose but be a noble plot : —  
And then the power of Scotland, and of York, —  
To join with Mortimer, ha ?

*Wor.* And so they shall.

*Hot.* In faith, it is exceedingly well aim'd.

*Wor.* And 'tis no little reason bids us speed,  
To save our heads by raising of a head :<sup>3</sup>

<sup>3</sup> A body of forces.

For, bear ourselves as even as we can,  
The king will always think him in our debt ;  
And think we think ourselves unsatisfied,  
Till he hath found a time to pay us home.  
And see already, how he doth begin  
To make us strangers to his looks of love.

*Hot.* He does, he does ; we'll be reveng'd on him.

*Wor.* Cousin, farewell . — No further go in this,  
Than I by letters shall direct your course.  
When time is ripe, (which will be suddenly,)  
I'll steal to Glendower and lord Mortimer ;  
Where you and Douglas, and our powers at once,  
(As I will fashion it,) shall happily meet,  
To bear our fortunes in our own strong arms,  
Which now we hold at much uncertainty.

*North.* Farewell, good brother : we shall thrive,  
I trust.

*Hot.* Uncle, adieu : — O, let the hours be short,  
Till fields, and blows, and groans applaud our sport !  
[*Exeunt.*

---

## ACT THE SECOND.

### SCENE I.

Rochester. *An Inn Yard.*

*Enter a Carrier, with a Lantern in his hand.*

1 *Car.* Heigh ho ! An't be not four by the day,  
I'll be hanged : Charles' wain is over the new  
chimney, and yet our horse not packed. What,  
ostler !

*Ost.* [*Within.*] Anon, anon.

1 *Car.* I pr'ythee, Tom, beat Cut's <sup>4</sup> saddle, put a few flocks in the point; the poor jade is wrung in the withers out of all cess.<sup>5</sup>

*Enter another Carrier.*

2 *Car.* Pease and beans are as dank here as a dog, and that is the next way to give poor jades the bots: this house is turned upside down, since Robin ostler died.

1 *Car.* Poor fellow! never joyed since the price of oats rose; it was the death of him.

2 *Car.* I think this be the most villainous house in all London road for fleas: I am stung like a tench.<sup>6</sup>

1 *Car.* Like a tench? by the mass, there is ne'er a king in Christendom could be better bit than I have been since the first cock.

2 *Car.* What, ostler! come away and be hanged, come away. I have a gammon of bacon, and two razes of ginger, to be delivered as far as Charing-cross.

1 *Car.* The turkies in my pannier are quite starved.—What, ostler!—A plague on thee! hast thou never an eye in thy head? canst not hear? An 'twere not as good a deed as drink, to break the pate of thee, I am a very villain.—Come, and be hanged:—Hast no faith in thee?

*Enter GADSHILL.*

*Gads.* Good morrow, carriers. What's o'clock?

1 *Car.* I think it be two o'clock.

*Gads.* I pr'ythee, lend me thy lantern, to see my gelding in the stable.

1 *Car.* Nay, soft, I pray ye; I know a trick worth two of that.

<sup>4</sup> Name of his horse. <sup>5</sup> Measure. <sup>6</sup> Spotted like a tench.

*Gads.* I pr'ythee lend me thine.

*2 Car.* Ay, when? canst tell?—Lend me thy lantern, quoth a?—marry, I'll see thee hanged first.

*Gads.* Sirrah carrier, what time do you mean to come to London?

*2 Car.* Time enough to go to bed with a candle, I warrant thee.—Come, neighbour Mugs, we'll call up the gentlemen; they will along with company, for they have great charge. [*Exeunt Carriers.*]

*Gads.* What, ho! chamberlain!

*Cham.* [*Within.*] At hand, quoth pick-purse.<sup>7</sup>

*Gads.* That's even as fair as—at hand, quoth the chamberlain: for thou variest no more from picking of purses, than giving direction doth from labouring; thou lay'st the plot how.

*Enter Chamberlain.*

*Cham.* Good morrow, master Gadshill. It holds current, that I told you yesternight: There's a franklin<sup>8</sup> in the wild of Kent, hath brought three hundred marks with him in gold: I heard him tell it to one of his company, last night at supper; a kind of auditor; one that hath abundance of charge too, heaven knows what. They are up already, and call for eggs and butter: They will away presently.

*Gads.* Sirrah, if they meet not with saint Nicholas' clerks<sup>9</sup>, I'll give thee this neck.

*Cham.* No, I'll none of it: I pr'ythee keep that for the hangman; for, I know, thou worship'st saint Nicholas as truly as a man of falsehood may.

*Gads.* What talkest thou to me of the hangman? if I hang, I'll make a fat pair of gallows: for, if I hang, old sir John hangs with me; and, thou

<sup>7</sup> A proverb, from the pick-purse being always ready.

<sup>8</sup> Freeholder.

<sup>9</sup> Cant term for highwaymen.

knowest, he's no starveling. Tut: there are other Trojans that thou dreamest not of, the which, for sport sake, are content to do the profession some grace; that would, if matters should be looked into, for their own credit sake, make all whole. I am joined with no foot land-rakers<sup>1</sup>, no long-staff six-penny strikers; none of these mad, mustachio, purple-hued malt-worms; but with nobility and tranquillity: burgo-masters, and great oneyers<sup>2</sup>; such as can hold in; such as will strike sooner than speak, and speak sooner than drink, and drink sooner than pray: And yet I lie; for they pray continually to their saint, the common-wealth; or, rather, not pray to her, but prey on her; for they ride up and down on her, and make her their boots.<sup>3</sup>

*Cham.* What, the commonwealth their boots? will she hold out water in wet weather?

*Gads.* She will, she will; justice hath liquored her.<sup>4</sup> We steal as in a castle, cock-sure; we have the receipt of fernseed, we walk invisible.

*Cham.* Nay, by my faith! I think you are more beholden to the night than to fern-seed, for your walking invisible.

*Gads.* Give me thy hand: thou shalt have a share in our purchase, as I am a true man.

*Cham.* Nay, rather let me have it as you are a false thief.

*Gads.* Go to; *Homo* is a common name to all men. Bid the ostler bring my gelding out of the stable. Farewell, you muddy knave. [Exit.]

<sup>1</sup> Footpads.

<sup>2</sup> Publick accountants.

<sup>3</sup> Booty.

<sup>4</sup> Oiled, smoothed her over.

## SCENE II.

*The Road by Gadshill.*

*Enter Prince HENRY and POINS; BARDOLPH and PETO, at some distance.*

*Poins.* Come, shelter, shelter; I have removed Falstaff's horse, and he frets like a gummed velvet.

*P. Hen.* Stand close.

*Enter FALSTAFF.*

*Fal.* Poins! Poins! and be hanged! Poins!

*P. Hen.* Peace, ye fat-kidney'd rascal; what a brawling dost thou keep!

*Fal.* Where's Poins, Hal!

*P. Hen.* He is walked up to the top of the hill; I'll go seek him. [*Pretends to seek POINS.*]

*Fal.* I am accursed to rob in that thief's company: the rascal hath removed my horse, and tied him I know not where. If I travel but four foot by the squire<sup>s</sup> further afoot, I shall break my wind. Well, I doubt not but to die a fair death for all this, if I 'scape hanging for killing that rogue. I have forsworn his company hourly any time these two-and-twenty years, and yet I am bewitched with the rogue's company. If the rascal have not given me medicines to make me love him, I'll be hanged; it could not be else; I have drunk medicines. — Poins! — Hal! — a plague upon you both! — Bardolph; — Peto! — I'll starve ere I'll rob a foot further. An 'twere not as good a deed as drink, to turn true man, and leave these rogues, I am the veriest varlet



that ever chewed with a tooth. Eight yards of uneven ground is three score and ten miles afoot with me; and the stony-hearted villains know it well enough: A plague upon't, when thieves cannot be true to one another! [*They whistle.*] Whew!—A plague upon you all! Give me my horse, you rogues; give my horse, and be hanged.

*P. Hen.* Peace, lie down; lay thine ear close to the ground, and list if thou canst hear the tread of travellers.

*Fal.* Have you any levers to lift me up again, being down? I'll not bear my own flesh so far a foot again, for all the coin in thy father's exchequer. What a plague mean ye, to colt<sup>6</sup> me thus?

*P. Hen.* Thou liest, thou art not colted, thou art uncolted.

*Fal.* I pr'ythee, good prince Hal, help me to my horse: good king's son.

*P. Hen.* Out, you rogue! shall I be your ostler!

*Fal.* Go hang thyself in thy own heir-apparent garters! If I be ta'en, I'll peach for this. An I have not ballads made on you all, let a cup of sack be my poison: When a jest is so forward, and afoot too — I hate it.

*Enter GADSHILL.*

*Gads.* Stand.

*Fal.* So I do, against my will.

*Poins.* O, 'tis our setter: I know his voice.

*Enter BARDOLPH.*

*Bard.* What news?

*Gads.* Case ye, case ye: on with your visors: there's money of the king's coming down the hill: 'tis going to the king's exchequer.

<sup>6</sup> Make a youngster of me.

*Fal.* You lie, you rogue ; 'tis going to the king's tavern.

*Gads.* There's enough to make us all. —

*Fal.* To be hanged.

*P. Hen.* Sirs, you four shall front them in the narrow lane ; Ned Poins, and I, will walk lower : if they 'scape from your encounter, then they light on us.

*Peto.* How many be there of them ?

*Gads.* Some eight, or ten.

*Fal.* Will they not rob us ?

*P. Hen.* What, a coward, sir John Paunch ?

*Fal.* Indeed, I am not John of Gaunt, your grandfather ; but yet no coward, Hal.

*P. Hen.* Well, we leave that to the proof.

*Poins.* Sirrah Jack, thy horse stands behind the hedge ; when thou needest him, there thou shalt find him. Farewell, and stand fast.

*Fal.* Now cannot I strike him, if I should be hanged.

*P. Hen.* Ned, where are our disguises ?

*Poins.* Here, hard by ; stand close.

[*Exeunt P. HENRY and POINS.*]

*Fal.* Now, my masters, happy man be his dole, say I ; every man to his business.

*Enter Travellers.*

1 *Trav.* Come, neighbour ; the boy shall lead our horses down the hill : we'll walk afoot a while, and ease our legs.

*Thieves.* Stand.

*Trav.* Heaven bless us !

*Fal.* Strike ; down with them ; cut the villains' throats : Ah ! caterpillars ! bacon-fed knaves ! they hate us youth : down with them ; fleece them.

1 *Trav.* O, we are undone, both we and ours, for ever.

*Fal.* Hang ye, knaves ; are ye undone ? No, ye

fat chuffs<sup>7</sup>; I would, your store were here! On, bacons, on! What, ye knaves? young men must live; You are grand-jurors are ye? We'll jure ye, i'faith.

[*Exeunt FALSTAFF, &c. driving the Travellers out.*]

*Re-enter Prince HENRY and POINS.*

*P. Hen.* The thieves have bound the true men: Now, could thou and I rob the thieves, and go merrily to London, it would be argument for a week, laughter for a month, and a good jest for ever.

*Poins.* Stand close, I hear them coming.

*Re-enter Thieves.*

*Fal.* Come, my masters, let us share, and then to horse before day. An the Prince and Poins be not two arrant cowards, there's no equity stirring: there's no more valour in that Poins, than in a wild duck.

*P. Hen.* Your money? [*Rushing out upon them.*]

*Poins.* Villains.

[*As they are sharing, the Prince and Poins set upon them. FALSTAFF, after a blow or two, and the rest, run away, leaving their booty behind them.*]

*P. Hen.* Got with much ease. Now merrily to horse:

The thieves are scatter'd, and possess'd with fear  
So strongly, that they dare not meet each other;  
Each takes his fellow for an officer.

Away, good Ned. Falstaff sweats to death,  
And lards the lean earth as he walks along:  
Wer't not for laughing, I should pity him.

*Poins.* How the rogue roar'd! [*Exeunt.*]

<sup>7</sup> Clowns.

## SCENE III.

Warkworth. *A Room in the Castle.*

*Enter HOTSPUR, reading a letter.*

— *But, for mine own part, my lord, I could be well contented to be there, in respect of the love I bear your house.* — He could be contented, — Why is he not then? In respect of the love he bears our house — he shows in this, he loves his own barn better than he loves our house. Let me see some more. *The purpose you undertake is dangerous ; — Why, that's certain ; 'tis dangerous to take a cold, to sleep, to drink : but I tell you, my lord fool, out of this nettle, danger, we pluck this flower, safety. The purpose you undertake, is dangerous ; the friends you have named, uncertain ; the time itself unsorted ; and your whole plot too light, for the counterpoise of so great an opposition.* — Say you so, say you so? I say unto you again, you are a shallow, cowardly hind, and you lie. What a lack-brain is this? Our plot is a good plot as ever was laid ; our friends true and constant : a good plot, good friends, and full of expectation : an excellent plot, very good friends. What a frosty-spirited rogue is this? Why, my lord of York commends the plot, and the general course of the action. By this hand, an I were now by this rascal, I could brain him with his lady's fan. Is there not my father, my uncle, and myself? lord Edmund Mortimer, my lord of York, and Owen Glendower? Is there not, besides, the Douglas? Have I not all their letters, to meet me, in arms by the ninth of the next month? and are they not, some of them, set forward already? What a *pagan rascal is this?* an infidel? Ha! you shall see now, in very sincerity of fear and cold

heart, will he to the king, and lay open all our proceedings. O, I could divide myself, and go to buffets, for moving such a dish of skimmed milk with so honourable an action ! Hang him ! let him tell the king : We are prepared : I will set forward to-night.

*Enter Lady PERCY.*

How now, Kate ? I must leave you within these two hours.

*Lady.* O my good lord, why are you thus alone ?

For what offence have I, this fortnight, been  
A banish'd woman from my Harry's bed ?  
Tell me, sweet lord, what is't that takes from thee  
Thy stomach, pleasure, and thy golden sleep ?  
Why dost thou bend thine eyes upon the earth ;  
And start so often when thou sitt'st alone ?  
Why hast thou lost the fresh blood in thy cheeks ;  
And given my treasures, and my rights of thee,  
To thick-ey'd musing, and curs'd melancholy ?  
In thy faint slumbers, I by thee have watch'd,  
And heard thee murmur tales of iron wars :  
Speak terms of manage to thy bounding steed ;  
Cry, *Courage ! — to the field !* And thou hast talk'd  
Of sallies, and retires ; of trenches, tents,  
Of palisadoes, frontiers, parapets ;  
Of basilisks, of cannon, culverin ;  
Of prisoners' ransome, and of soldiers slain,  
And all the 'currents of a heady fight.  
Thy spirit within thee hath been so at war,  
And thus hath so bestirr'd thee in thy sleep,  
That beads of sweat have stood upon thy brow,  
Like bubbles in a late disturbed stream :  
And in thy face strange motions have appear'd  
Such as we see when men restrain their breath  
On some great sudden haste. O, what  
are these ?

Some heavy business hath my lord in hand,  
And I must know it, else he loves me not.

*Hot.* What, ho ! is Gilliams with the packet  
gone ?

*Enter Servant.*

*Serv.* He is, my lord, an hour ago.

*Hot.* Hath Butler brought those horses from the  
sheriff ?

*Serv.* One, horse, my lord, he brought even now.

*Hot.* What horse ? a roan, a crop-ear, is it not ?

*Serv.* It is, my lord.

*Hot.* That roan shall be my throne.  
Well, I will back him straight : O *esperance* !<sup>8</sup> —  
Bid Butler lead him forth into the park.

[*Exit Servant.*

*Lady.* But hear you, my lord.

*Hot.* What say'st, my lady ?

*Lady.* What is it carries you away ?

*Hot.* My horse,

My love, my horse.

*Lady.* Out, you mad-headed ape !  
A weasel hath not such a deal of spleen,  
As you are toss'd with. In faith,  
I'll know your business, Harry, that I will.  
I fear, my brother Mortimer doth stir  
About his title ; and hath sent for you,  
To line<sup>9</sup> his enterprize : But if you go —

*Hot.* So far afoot, I shall be weary, love.

*Lady.* Come, come, you paraquito, answer me  
Directly to this question that I ask.  
In faith, I'll break thy little finger, Harry,  
An if thou wilt not tell me all things true.

*Hot.* Away,  
Away, you trifler ! — Love ! — I love thee not,  
I care not for thee, Kate : this is no world

<sup>8</sup> Motto of the Percy family.

<sup>9</sup> Strengthen.

To play with mammets <sup>1</sup>, and to tilt with lips :  
We must have bloody noses, and crack'd crowns,  
And pass them current too. — My horse, my  
horse ! —

What say'st thou, Kate ? what would'st thou have  
with me ?

*Lady.* Do you not love me ? do you not, indeed ?  
Well, do not then ; for, since you love me not,  
I will not love myself. Do you not love me ?  
Nay, tell me, if you speak in jest, or no.

*Hot.* Come, wilt thou see me ride ?  
And when I am o' horseback, I will swear  
I love thee infinitely. But hark you, Kate ;  
I must not have you henceforth question me  
Whither I go, nor reason whereabout :  
Whither I must, I must ; and, to conclude,  
This evening must I leave you, gentle Kate.  
I know you wise ; but yet no farther wise,  
Than Harry Percy's wife ; constant you are ;  
But yet a woman : and for secresy,  
No lady closer ; for I will believe,  
Thou wilt not utter what thou dost not know ;  
And so far will I trust thee, gentle Kate !

*Lady.* How ! so far ?

*Hot.* Not an inch farther. But hark you, Kate !  
Whither I go, thither shall you go too ;  
To-day will I set forth, to-morrow you. —  
Will this content you, Kate ?

*Lady.*

It must, of force.

[*Exeunt.*]

<sup>1</sup> Puppets.

## SCENE IV.

Eastcheap. *A Room in the Boar's Head Tavern.*

*Enter Prince HENRY and POINS.*

*P. Hen.* Ned, pr'ythee, come out of that fat room, and lend me thy hand to laugh a little.

*Poins.* Where hast been, Hal?

*P. Hen.* With three or four loggerheads, amongst three or four score hogsheads. I have sounded the very base string of humility. Sirrah, I am sworn brother to a leash of drawers; and can call them all by their Christian names, as — Tom, Dick, and Francis. They take it already upon their salvation, that, though I be but prince of Wales, yet I am the king of courtesy; and tell me flatly I am no proud Jack, like Falstaff; but a lad of mettle, a good boy, so they call me; and when I am king of England, I shall command all the good lads in Eastcheap. — To conclude, I am so good a proficient in one quarter of an hour, that I can drink with any tinker in his own language during my life. I tell thee, Ned, thou hast lost much honour, that thou wert not with me in this action. But, sweet Ned, — to sweeten which name of Ned, I give thee this pennyworth of sugar, clapped even now in my hand by an under-skinker<sup>2</sup>; one that never spake other English in his life, than — *Eight shillings and sixpence*, and — *You are welcome*; with this shrill addition, — *Anon, anon, sir! Score a pint of bastard in the Half-moon*, or so. But, Ned, to drive away the time till Falstaff come, I pr'ythee, do thou stand in some by-room, while I question my puny drawer, to what end he gave me the sugar; and do thou never leave calling —

<sup>2</sup> Tapster.



Francis, that his tale to me may be nothing but—anon. Step aside, and I'll show thee a precedent.

*Poins.* Francis!

*P. Hen.* Thou art perfect.

*Poins.* Francis! [Exit *POINS.*]

*Enter FRANCIS.*

*Fran.* Anon, anon, sir.—Look down into the Pomegranate, Ralph.

*P. Hen.* Come hither, Francis.

*Fran.* My lord.

*P. Hen.* How long hast thou to serve, Francis?

*Fran.* Forsooth, five year, and as much as to—

*Poins.* [Within.] Francis!

*Fran.* Anon, anon, sir.

*P. Hen.* Five years! by'r lady, a long lease for the clinking of pewter. But, Francis, darest thou be so valiant, as to play the coward with thy indenture, and to show it a fair pair of heels, and run from it?

*Fran.* O, sir! I'll be sworn upon all the books in England, I could find in my heart—

*Poins.* [Within.] Francis!

*Fran.* Anon, anon, sir.

*P. Hen.* How old art thou, Francis?

*Fran.* Let me see,—About Michaelmas next I shall be—

*Poins.* [Within.] Francis!

*Fran.* Anon, sir.—Pray you, stay a little, my lord.

*P. Hen.* Nay, but hark you, Francis: For the sugar thou gavest me,—'twas a pennyworth, was't not?

*Fran.* O, sir! I would it had been two.

*P. Hen.* I will give thee for it a thousand pound: ask me when thou wilt, and thou shalt have it.

*Poins.* [Within.] Francis!

*Fran.* Anon, anon.

*P. Hen.* Anon, Francis? No, Francis: but to-morrow, Francis; or Francis, on Thursday; or, indeed, Francis, when thou wilt. But, Francis, —

*Fran.* My lord?

*P. Hen.* Wilt thou rob this leathern-jerkin, crystal-button, nott-pated, agate-ring, caddis-garter, smooth-tongue, Spanish-pouch, —

*Fran.* O sir, who do you mean?

*P. Hen.* Why then, your brown bastard<sup>3</sup> is your only drink: for, look you, Francis, your white canvass doublet will sully: in Barbary, sir, it cannot come to so much.

*Fran.* What, sir?

*Poins.* [*Within.*] Francis!

*P. Hen.* Away, you rogue; Dost thou not hear them call?

[*Here they both call him; the Drawer stands amazed, not knowing which way to go.*]

*Enter Vintner.*

*Vint.* What! stand'st thou still, and hear'st such a calling? Look to the guests within. [*Exit FRAN.*] My lord, old sir John, with half a dozen more, are at the door; Shall I let them in?

*P. Hen.* Let them alone awhile, and then open the door. [*Exit Vintner.*] *Poins!*

*Re-enter POINS.*

*Poins.* Anon, anon, sir.

*P. Hen.* Sirrah, Falstaff and the rest of the thieves are at the door; Shall we be merry?

*Poins.* As merry as crickets, my lad. But hark ye; What cunning match have you made with this jest of the drawer? come, what's the issue?

*P. Hen.* I am now of all humours, that have show'd themselves humours, since the old days of

<sup>3</sup> A sweet wine.

goodman Adam, to the pupil age of this present twelve o'clock at midnight. [*Re-enter FRANCIS with Wine.*] 'What's o'clock, Francis?

*Fran.* Anon, anon, sir.

*P. Hen.* That ever this fellow should have fewer words than a parrot, and yet the son of a woman!—His industry is — up stairs, and down stairs; his eloquence, the parcel of a reckoning. I am not yet of Percy's mind, the Hotspur of the north; he that kills me some six or seven dozen of Scots at a breakfast, washes his hands, and says to his wife, — *Fye upon this quiet life! I want work.* O my sweet Harry, says she, *how many hast thou killed to-day?* Give my roan horse a drench, says he; and answers, *Some fourteen*, an hour after; *a trifle, a trifle.* I pr'ythee, call in Falstaff; I'll play Percy, and he shall play dame Mortimer his wife. Call in ribs, call in tallow.

*Enter FALSTAFF, GADSHILL, BARDOLPH, and PETO.*

*Poins.* Welcome, Jack. Where hast thou been?

*Fal.* A plague of all cowards, I say, and a vengeance too! marry, and amen! — Give me a cup of sack, boy. — Ere I lead this life long, I'll sew nether-stocks<sup>4</sup>, and mend them, and foot them too. A plague of all cowards! — Give me a cup of sack, rogue. — Is there no virtue extant? [*He drinks.*]

*P. Hen.* Didst thou never see Titan kiss a dish of butter? pitiful-hearted Titan, that melted at the sweet tale of the son! if thou didst, then behold that compound.

*Fal.* You rogue, there's lime in this sack too: There is nothing but roguery to be found in villainous man: Yet a coward is worse than a cup of sack with lime in it; a villainous coward. — Go thy ways,

<sup>4</sup> Stockings.

old Jack; die when thou wilt, if manhood, good manhood, be not forgotten upon the face of the earth, then am I a shotten herring. There live not three good men unhanged in England; and one of them is fat, and grows old: Heaven help the while! a bad world, I say! I would, I were a weaver; I could sing psalms or any thing: A plague of all cowards, I say still.

*P. Hen.* How now, wool-sack? what mutter you?

*Fal.* A king's son! If I do not beat thee out of thy kingdom with a dagger of lath, and drive all thy subjects afore thee like a flock of wild geese, I'll never wear hair on my face more. You prince of Wales!

*P. Hen.* Why, you round man! what's the matter?

*Fal.* Are you not a coward? answer me to that; and Poin's there?

*Poins.* Ye fat paunch, an ye call me coward I'll stab thee.

*Fal.* I call thee coward: I'll see thee hang'd ere I call thee coward; but I would give a thousand pound I could run as fast as thou canst. You are straight enough in the shoulders, you care not who sees your back: Call you that backing of your friends? A plague upon such backing! give me them that will face me. — Give me a cup of sack: — I am a rogue, if I drunk to-day.

*P. Hen.* O villain! thy lips are scarce wiped since thou drunk'st last.

*Fal.* All's one for that. A plague of all cowards, still say I. [*He drinks.*]

*P. Hen.* What's the matter?

*Fal.* What's the matter? there be four of us here have ta'en a thousand pound this morning.

*P. Hen.* Where is it, Jack? where is it?

*Fal.* Where is it? taken from us it is: a hundred upon poor four of us.

*P. Hen.* What, a hundred, man?

*Fal.* I am a rogue, if I were not at half-sword with a dozen of them two hours together. I have 'scap'd by miracle. I am eight times thrust through the doublet; four, through the hose; my buckler cut through and through; my sword hacked like a hand-saw, *ecce signum*. I never dealt better since I was a man; all would not do. A plague of all cowards! — Let them speak: if they speak more or less than truth, they are villains, and the sons of darkness.

*P. Hen.* Speak, sirs; how was it?

*Gads.* We four set upon some dozen, —

*Fal.* Sixteen, at least, my lord.

*Gads.* And bound them.

*Peto.* No, no, they were not bound.

*Fal.* You rogue, they were bound, every man of them; or I am a Jew else, an Ebrew Jew.

*Gads.* As we were sharing, some six or seven fresh men set upon us,

*Fal.* And unbound the rest, and then come in the other.

*P. Hen.* What, fought ye with them all?

*Fal.* All? I know not what ye call, all; but if I fought not with fifty of them, I am a bunch of radish: if there were not two or three and fifty upon poor old Jack, then I am no two-legged creature.

*Poins.* Pray heaven you have not murdered some of them.

*Fal.* Nay, that's past praying for: for I have peppered two of them: two, I am sure, I have paid; two rogues in buckram suits. I tell thee what, Hal, — if I tell thee a lie, spit in my face, call me horse. Thou knowest my old ward; — here I lay, and thus I bore my point. Four rogues in buckram let drive at me, —

*P. Hen.* What, four? thou said'st but two, even now.

*Fal.* Four, Hal; I told thee four.

*Poins.* Ay, ay, he said four.

*Fal.* These four came all a-front, and mainly thrust at me. I made me no more ado, but took all their seven points in my target, thus.

*P. Hen.* Seven? why, there were but four, even now.

*Fal.* In buckram.

*Poins.* Ay, four, in buckram suits.

*Fal.* Seven, by these hilts, or I am a villain else.

*P. Hen.* Pr'ythee, let him alone; we shall have more anon.

*Fal.* Dost thou hear me, Hal?

*P. Hen.* Ay, and mark thee too, Jack.

*Fal.* Do so, for it is worth the listening to. These nine in buckram, that I told thee of, ——

*P. Hen.* So, two more already.

*Fal.* Their points being broken, ——

*Poins.* Down fell their hose.

*Fal.* Began to give me ground: But I followed me close, came in foot and hand; and with a thought, seven of the eleven I paid.

*P. Hen.* O monstrous! eleven buckram men grown out of two!

*Fal.* But, as the devil would have it, three misbegotten knaves, in Kendal<sup>5</sup> green, came at my back, and let drive at me;—for it was so dark, Hal, that thou could'st not see thy hand.

*P. Hen.* These lies are like the father that begets them; gross as a mountain, open, palpable. Why, thou knotty-pated fool.

*Fal.* What, art thou mad? art thou mad? is not the truth, the truth?

*P. Hen.* Why, how could'st thou know these men in Kendal green, when it was so dark thou could'st not see thy hand? come tell us your reason; What sayest thou to this?

*Poins.* Come, your reason, Jack, your reason.

*Fal.* What, upon compulsion? No, were I at

<sup>5</sup> A town in Westmoreland famous for making cloth.

the strappado, or all the racks in the world, I would not tell you on compulsion. Give you a reason on compulsion! if reasons were as plenty as blackberries, I would give no man a reason upon compulsion, I.

*P. Hen.* I'll be no longer guilty of this sin; this sanguine coward, this horse-back-breaker, this huge hill of flesh; —

*Fal.* Away, you starveling, you elf-skin, you dried neats-tongue, you stock-fish, — O, for breath to utter what is like thee? — you tailor's yard, you sheath, you bow-case!

*P. Hen.* Well, breathe awhile, and then to it again: and when thou hast tired thyself in base comparisons, hear me speak but this.

*Poins.* Mark, Jack.

*P. Hen.* We two saw you four set on four; you bound them, and were masters of their wealth. — Mark now, how a plain tale shall put you down. — Then did we two set on you four: and, with a word, out-faced you from your prize, and have it; yea, and can show it you here in the house: — and, Falstaff, you ran away as nimbly, with as quick dexterity, and roared for mercy, and still ran and roared, as ever I heard a bull-calf. What a slave art thou, to hack thy sword as thou hast done; and then say, it was in fight? What trick, what device, what starting-hole, canst thou now find out, to hide thee from this open and apparent shame?

*Poins.* Come, let's hear, Jack; What trick hast thou now?

*Fal.* By the Lord, I knew ye, as well as he that made ye. Why, hear ye, my masters: Was it for me to kill the heir apparent? Should I turn upon the true prince? Why, thou knowest, I am as valiant as Hercules: but beware instinct; the lion will not touch the true prince. Instinct is a great matter; I was a coward on instinct. I shall think the better of myself and thee, during my life. L

for a valiant lion, and thou for a true prince. But, lads, I am glad you have the money. — Hostess, clap to the doors; watch to-night, pray to-morrow. — Gallants, lads, boys, hearts of gold, all the titles of good fellowship come to you! What, shall we be merry? shall we have a play extempore?

*P. Hen.* Content; — and the argument shall be, thy running away.

*Fal.* Ah! no more of that, Hal, an thou lovest me.

*Enter Hostess.*

*Host.* My lord, the prince, —

*P. Hen.* How now, my lady the hostess? what say'st thou to me?

*Host.* Marry, my lord, there is a nobleman of the court at door, would speak with you: he says, he comes from your father.

*P. Hen.* Give him as much as will make him a royal man, and send him back again to my mother.

*Fal.* What manner of man is he?

*Host.* An old man.

*Fal.* What doth gravity out of his bed at midnight? — shall I give him his answer?

*P. Hen.* Pr'ythee, do, Jack.

*Fal.* 'Faith, and I'll send him packing. [*Exit.*

*P. Hen.* Now, sirs; by'r lady, you fought fair; — so did you, Peto; so did you, Bardolph: you are lions too, you ran away upon instinct, you will not touch the true prince; no, — fye!

*Bard.* 'Faith, I ran when I saw others run.

*P. Hen.* Tell me now in earnest, how came Falstaff's sword so hacked?

*Peto.* Why, he hacked it with his dagger; and said, he would swear truth out of England, but he would make you believe it was done in fight; and persuaded us to do the like.

*Bard.* Yea, and to tickle our noses with spear-grass, to make them bleed: and then to beslobber  
VOL. V.



our garments with it, and to swear it was the blood of true men. I did that I did not this seven year before, I blushed to hear his monstrous devices.

*P. Hen.* O villain, thou stolest a cup of sack eighteen years ago, and wert taken with the manner<sup>6</sup>, and ever since thou hast blushed extempore: Thou hadst fire and sword on thy side, and yet thou ran'st away; What instinct hast thou for it?

*Bard.* My lord, do you see these meteors? do you behold these exhalations?

*P. Hen.* I do.

*Bard.* What think you they portend?

*P. Hen.* Hot livers and cold purses.<sup>7</sup>

*Bard.* Choler, my lord, if rightly taken.

*P. Hen.* No, if rightly taken, halter.

*Re-enter FALSTAFF.*

Here comes lean Jack, here comes bare-bone. How now, my sweet creature of bombast<sup>8</sup>? How long is't ago, Jack, since thou sawest thine own knee?

*Fal.* My own knee? when I was about thy years, Hal, I was not an eagle's talon in the waist; I could have crept into any alderman's thumb-ring: A plague of sighing and grief! it blows a man up like a bladder. There's villainous news abroad: here was sir John Bracy from your father; you must to the court in the morning. That same mad fellow of the north, Percy; and he of Wales, that gave Amaimon<sup>9</sup> the bastinado, — What, a plague, call you him? —

*Poins.* O, Glendower.

*Fal.* Owen, Owen; the same; — and his son-in-law, Mortimer; and old Northumberland; and that

<sup>6</sup> In the fact.      <sup>7</sup> Drunkenness and poverty.

<sup>8</sup> Bombast is the stuffing of clothes.

<sup>9</sup> A dæmon; who is described as one of the four kings who rule over all the dæmons in the world.

sprightly Scot of Scots, Douglas, that runs o’horse-back up a hill perpendicular.

*P. Hen.* He that rides at high speed, and with his pistol kills a sparrow flying.

*Fal.* You have hit it.

*P. Hen.* So did he never the sparrow.

*Fal.* Well, that rascal hath good mettle in him; he will not run.

*P. Hen.* Why, what a rascal art thou then, to praise him so for running?

*Fal.* O’horseback, ye cuckoo! but, afoot, he will not budge a foot.

*P. Hen.* Yes, Jack, upon instinct.

*Fal.* I grant ye, upon instinct. Well, he is there too, and one Mordake, and a thousand blue-caps<sup>1</sup> more: Worcester is stolen away to-night; thy father’s beard is turned white with the news; you may buy land now as cheap as stinking mackarel. — But tell me, Hal, art thou not horribly afear’d? thou being heir apparent, could the world pick thee out three such enemies again, as that fiend Douglas, that spirit Percy, and that devil Glendower? Art thou not horribly afraid? doth not thy blood thrill at it?

*P. Hen.* Not a whit, i’faith; I lack some of thy instinct.

*Fal.* Well, thou wilt be horribly chid to-morrow, when thou comest to thy father: if thou love me, practise an answer.

*P. Hen.* Do thou stand for my father, and examine me upon the particulars of my life.

*Fal.* Shall I? content: — This chair shall be my state, this dagger my scepter, and this cushion my crown.

*P. Hen.* Thy state is taken for a joint-stool, thy golden scepter for a leaden dagger, and thy precious rich crown, for a pitiful bald crown!

<sup>1</sup> Scotsmen in blue bonnets.

*Fal.* Well, 'an the fire of grace be not quite out of thee, now shalt thou be moved. — Give me a cup of sack, to make mine eyes look red, that it may be thought I have wept: for I must speak in passion, and I will do it in king Cambyeses'<sup>2</sup> vein.

*P. Hen.* Well, here is my leg.<sup>3</sup>

*Fal.* And here is my speech: — Stand aside, nobility.

*Host.* This is excellent sport, i'faith.

*Fal.* Weep not, sweet queen, for trickling tears are vain.

*Host.* O, the father, how he holds his countenance!

*Fal.* For Heaven's sake, lords, convey my tristful queen,

For tears do stop the flood-gates of her eyes.

*Host.* O rare! he doth it as like one of these harlotry players, as I ever see.

*Fal.* Peace, good pint-pot; peace, good tickle-brain.<sup>4</sup> — Harry, I do not only marvel where thou spendest thy time, but also how thou art accompanied: for though the camomile, the more it is trodden on, the faster it grows, yet youth, the more it is wasted, the sooner it wears. That thou art my son, I have partly thy mother's word, partly my own opinion; but chiefly, a villainous trick of thine eye, and a foolish hanging of thy nether lip, that doth warrant me. If then thou be son to me, here lies the point: — Why, being son to me, art thou so pointed at? Shall the blessed sun of heaven prove a micher<sup>5</sup>, and eat blackberries? a question not to be asked. Shall the son of England prove a thief, and take purses? a question to be asked. There is a thing, Harry, which thou hast often heard of, and it is known to many in our land by the name

<sup>2</sup> A character in a Tragedy, by T. Preston, 1570.

<sup>3</sup> Obeisance.

<sup>4</sup> Name of a strong liquor.

<sup>5</sup> A truant boy.

of pitch : this pitch, as ancient writers do report, doth defile ; so doth the company thou keepest : for, Harry, now I do not speak to thee in drink, but in tears ; not in pleasure, but in passion ; not in words only, but in woes also : — And yet there is a virtuous man, whom I have often noted in thy company, but I know not his name.

*P. Hen.* What manner of man, an it like your majesty ?

*Fal.* A good portly man, and a corpulent ; of a cheerful look, a pleasing eye, and a most noble carriage ; and, as I think, his age some fifty, or, by'r-lady, inclining to threescore ; and now I remember me, his name is Falstaff : if that man should be wantonly given, he deceiveth me ; for, Harry, I see virtue in his looks. If then the tree may be known by the fruit, as the fruit by the tree, then, peremptorily I speak it, there is virtue in that Falstaff : him keep with, the rest banish. And tell me now, thou naughty varlet, tell me, where hast thou been this month ?

*P. Hen.* Dost thou speak like a king ? Do thou stand for me, and I'll play my father.

*Fal.* Depose me ? if thou dost it half so gravely, so majestically, both in word and matter, hang me up by the heels for a rabbit-sucker, or a poulter's hare.

*P. Hen.* Well, here I am set.

*Fal.* And here I stand : — judge, my masters.

*P. Hen.* Now, Harry ? whence come you ?

*Fal.* My noble lord, from Eastcheap.

*P. Hen.* The complaints I hear of thee are grievous.

*Fal.* 'Sblood, my lord, they are false : — nay, I'll tickle ye for a young prince, i'faith.

*P. Hen.* Swearest thou, ungracious boy ? henceforth ne'er look on me. Thou art violently carried away from grace : there is a devil haunts thee, in the likeness of a fat old man : a tun of man is thy

companion. Why dost thou converse with that trunk of humours, that huge bombard<sup>6</sup> of sack, that roasted Mannintree<sup>7</sup> ox, that reverend vice, that grey iniquity, that father ruffian, that vanity in years? Wherein is he good, but to taste sack and drink it? where in neat and cleanly, but to carve a capon and eat it? wherein cunning, but in craft? wherein crafty, but in villainy? wherein villainous, but in all things? wherein worthy, but in nothing?

*Fal.* I would, your grace would take me with you; Whom means your grace?

*P. Hen.* That villainous abominable misleader of youth, Falstaff, that old white-bearded Satan.

*Fal.* My lord, the man I know.

*P. Hen.* I know, thou dost.

*Fal.* But to say, I know more harm in him than in myself, were to say more than I know. That he is old, (the more the pity,) his white hairs do witness it: but that he is villainous, that I utterly deny. If sack and sugar be a fault, God help the wicked! If to be old and merry be a sin, then many an old host that I know, is lost: if to be fat be to be hated, then Pharaoh's lean kine are to be loved. No, my good lord; banish Peto, banish Bardolph, banish Poins: but for sweet Jack Falstaff, kind Jack Falstaff, true Jack Falstaff, valiant Jack Falstaff, and therefore more valiant, being as he is, old Jack Falstaff, banish not him thy Harry's company; banish plump Jack, and banish all the world.

*P. Hen.* I do, I will. [A knocking heard.]

[*Exeunt, Hostess, FRANCIS, and BARDOLPH.*]

*Re-enter BARDOLPH, running.*

*Bard.* O, my lord, my lord: the sheriff, with a most monstrous watch, is at the door.

<sup>6</sup> A leather black jack to hold beer.

<sup>7</sup> In Essex, where a large ox was roasted whole.

*Fal.* Out, you rogue ! play out the play : I have much to say in the behalf of that Falstaff.

*Re-enter Hostess, hastily.*

*Host.* O, my lord, my lord ! —

*Fal.* Heigh, heigh ! the devil rides upon a fiddlestick : What's the matter ?

*Host.* The sheriff and all the watch are at the door : they are come to search the house ? Shall I let them in ?

*Fal.* Dost thou hear, Hal ? never call a true piece of gold a counterfeit : thou art essentially mad, without seeming so.

*P. Hen.* And thou a natural coward, without instinct.

*Fal.* I deny your *major* : if you will deny the sheriff, so ; if not, let him enter : if I become not a cart as well as another man, a plague on my bringing up ! I hope, I shall as soon be strangled with a halter, as another.

*P. Hen.* Go, hide thee behind the arras ; — the rest walk up above. Now, my masters, for a true face and good conscience.

*Fal.* Both which I have had : but their date is out, and therefore I'll hide me.

[*Exeunt all but the Prince and POINS.*]

*P. Hen.* Call in the sheriff. —

*Enter Sheriff and Carrier.*

Now, master Sheriff ; what's your will with me ?

*Sher.* First pardon me, my lord. A hue and cry Hath follow'd certain men unto this house.

*P. Hen.* What men ?

*Sher.* One of them is well known, my gracious lord,

A gross fat man.

*Car.*

As fat as butter.

*P. Hen.* The man, I do assure you, is not here;  
For I myself at this time have employ'd him.  
And, sheriff, I will engage my word to thee,  
That I will, by to-morrow dinner-time,  
Send him to answer thee, or any man,  
For any thing he shall be charg'd withal :  
And so let me entreat you leave the house.

*Sher.* I will, my lord : There are two gentlemen  
Have in this robbery lost three hundred marks.

*P. Hen.* It may be so : if he have robb'd these men,  
He shall be answerable ; and so farewell.

*Sher.* Good night, my noble lord.

*P. Hen.* I think it is good morrow ; Is it not ?

*Sher.* Indeed, my lord, I think it be two o'clock.

[*Exeunt Sheriff and Carrier.*]

*P. Hen.* This oily rascal is known as well as  
Paul's. Go, call him forth.

*Poins.* Falstaff ! — fast asleep behind the arras,  
and snorting like a horse.

*P. Hen.* Hark, how hard he fetches breath :  
Search his pockets. [*POINS searches.*] What hast  
thou found ?

*Poins.* Nothing but papers, my lord.

*P. Hen.* Let's see what they be : read them.

*Poins.* Item, A capon, 2s. 2d.

Item, Sauce, 4d.

Item, Sack, two gallons, 5s. 8d.

Item, Anchovies, and sack after supper, 2s. 6d.

Item, Bread, a half-penny.

*P. Hen.* O monstrous ! but one half-penny worth  
of bread to this intolerable deal of sack ! — What  
there is else, keep close ; we'll read it at more ad-  
vantage : there let him sleep till day. I'll to the  
court in the morning : we must all to the wars, and  
thy place shall be honourable. I'll procure t'  
fat rogue a charge of foot ; and, I know, his d  
will be a march of twelve-score. The money sh  
paid back again with advantage. Be with m  
unes in the morning ; and so good morn

*Poins.* Good morrow, good my lord.

ACT THE THIRD.

SCENE I.

Bangor. *A Room in the Archdeacon's House.*

*Enter HOTSPUR, WORCESTER, MORTIMER, and  
GLENDOWER.*

*Mort.* These promises are fair, the parties sure,  
And our induction full of prosperous hope.

*Hot.* Lord Mortimer — and cousin Glendower —  
Will you sit down? —

And, uncle Worcester: — A plague upon it!  
I have forgot the map.

*Glend.* No, here it is.  
Sit, cousin Percy; sit, good cousin Hotspur:  
For by that name as oft as Lancaster  
Doth speak of you, his cheek looks pale: and, with  
A rising sigh, he wisheth you in heaven.

*Hot.* And you in hell, as often as he hears  
Owen Glendower spoke of.

*Glend.* I cannot blame him: at my nativity  
The front of heaven was full of fiery shapes,  
Of burning cressets<sup>8</sup>: and, at my birth,  
The frame and huge foundation of the earth  
Shak'd like a coward.

*Hot.* Why, so it would have done  
At the same season, if your mother's cat had  
But kitten'd, though yourself had ne'er been born.

<sup>8</sup> *Lights set cross-ways upon beacons, and also upon  
poles, which were used in processions, &c.*



*Glend.* I say the earth did shake when I was born.

*Hot.* And I say, the earth was not of my mind, If you suppose, as fearing you it shook.

*Glend.* The heavens were all on fire, the earth did tremble.

*Hot.* O, then the earth shook to see the heavens on fire,

And not in fear of your nativity.

Diseased nature oftentimes breaks forth

In strange eruptions : oft the teeming earth

Is with a kind of colick pinch'd and vex'd

By the imprisonment of unruly wind

Within her womb ; which, for enlargement striving,

Shakes the old beldame earth, and topples<sup>9</sup> down

Steeple, and moss-grown towers. At your birth.

Our grandam earth, having this distemperature,

In passion shook.

*Glend.* Cousin, of many men

I do not bear these crossings. Give me leave

To tell you once again, — that at my birth,

The front of heaven was full of fiery shapes ;

The goats ran from the mountains, and the herds

Were strangely clamorous to the frightened fields.

These signs have mark'd me extraordinary ;

And all the courses of my life do show,

I am not in the roll of common men.

Where is he living, — clipp'd in with the sea

That chides the banks of England, Scotland,

Wales, —

Which calls me pupil, or hath read to me ?

And bring him out, that is but woman's son,

Can trace me in the tedious ways of art,

And hold me pace in deep experiments.

*Hot.* I think, there is no man speaks better

Welsh : —

I will to dinner.

*Mort.* Peace, cousin Percy ; you will make him mad.

*Glend.* I can call spirits from the vasty deep.

*Hot.* Why, so can I ; or so can any man :  
But will they come, when you do call for them ?

*Glend.* Why, I can teach you, cousin, to command

The devil.

*Hot.* And I can teach thee, coz, to shame the devil,

By telling truth ; Tell truth, and shame the devil. —  
If thou have power to raise him, bring him hither,  
And I'll be sworn, I have power to shame him hence.

O, while you live, tell truth, and shame the devil.

*Mort.* Come, come,  
No more of this unprofitable chat.

*Glend.* Three times hath Henry Bolingbroke made head

Against my power : thrice from the banks of Wye,  
And sandy-bottom'd Severn, have I sent him,  
Bootless home, and weather-beaten back.

*Hot.* Home without boots, and in foul weather too !

How 'scapes he agues in the devil's name ?

*Glend.* Come, here's the map ; Shall we divide our right,

According to our three-fold order ta'en ?

*Mort.* The archdeacon hath divided it  
Into three limits very equally :  
England, from Trent and Severn hitherto,  
By south and east, is to my part assign'd :  
All westward, Wales beyond the Severn shore,  
And all the fertile land within that bound,  
To Owen Glendower : — and, dear coz, to you  
The remnant northward, lying off from Trent.  
And our indentures tripartite are drawn :  
Which being sealed interchangeably,  
(*A business that this night may execute,*)

To-morrow, cousin Percy, you, and I,  
And my good lord of Worcester, will set forth,  
To meet your father, and the Scottish power,  
As is appointed us, at Shrewsbury,  
My father Glendower is not ready yet,  
Nor shall we need his help these fourteen days:-  
Within that space, [*To GLEND.*] you may have  
drawn together

Your tenants, friends, and neighbouring gentlemen  
*Glend.* A shorter time shall send me to you lords  
And in my conduct shall your ladies come:  
From whom you now must steal, and take my  
leave;

For there will be a world of water shed,  
Upon the parting of your wives and you.

*Hot.* Methinks, my moiety, north from Burton  
here,

In quantity equals not one of yours:  
See, how this river comes me cranking in,  
And cuts me, from the best of all my land,  
A huge half moon, a monstrous cantle<sup>1</sup> out.  
I'll have the current in this place damm'd up;  
And here the smug and silver Trent shall run,  
In a new channel, fair and evenly:  
It shall not wind with such a deep indent,  
To rob me of so rich a bottom here.

*Glend.* Not wind? it shall, it must; You see it  
doth.

*Mort.* Yea,  
But mark, how he bears his course, and runs me up  
With like advantage on the other side;  
Robbing the opposed continent as much,  
As on the other side it takes from you.

*Wor.* Yea, but a little charge will trench him here.  
And on this north side win this cape of land;  
And then he runs straight and even.

*Hot.* I'll have it so: a little charge will do it.

<sup>1</sup> Corner.

*Glend.* I will not have it alter'd.

*Hot.*

Will not you?

*Glend.* No, nor you shall not.

*Hot.*

Who shall say me nay?

*Glend.* Why that will I.

*Hot.*

Let me not understand you then,  
Speak it in Welsh.

*Glend.* I can speak English, lord, as well as you;  
For I was train'd up in the English court:  
Where, being but young, I framed to the harp  
Many an English ditty, lovely well,  
And gave the tongue a helpful ornament;  
A virtue that was never seen in you.

*Hot.* Marry, and I'm glad of it with all my  
heart;

I had rather be a kitten, and cry — mew,  
Than one of these same metre ballad-mongers:  
I had rather hear a brazen canstick<sup>2</sup> turn'd,  
Or a dry wheel grate on an axle-tree;  
And that would set my teeth nothing on edge,  
Nothing so much as mincing poetry;  
'Tis like the forc'd gait of a shuffling nag.

*Glend.* Come, you shall have Trent turn'd.

*Hot.* I do not care: I'll give thrice so much  
land

To any well-deserving friend;  
But in the way of bargain, mark ye me,  
I'll cavil on the ninth part of a hair.  
Are the indentures drawn? shall we be gone?

*Glend.* The moon shines fair, you may away by  
night:

I'll haste the writer, and, withal,  
Break<sup>3</sup> with your wives of your departure hence:  
I am afraid, my daughter will run mad,  
So much she doteth on her Mortimer. [Exit.

*Mort.* Fye, cousin Percy! how you cross my  
father!

<sup>2</sup> Candlestick.

<sup>3</sup> Break the matter

*Hot.* I cannot choose : sometimes he angers me,  
With telling me of the moldwarp<sup>4</sup> and the ant,  
Of the dreamer Merlin and his prophecies ;  
And of a dragon and a finless fish,  
A clip-wing'd griffin, and a moulten raven,  
A couching lion, and a ramping cat,  
And such a deal of skimble-skamble stuff  
As puts me from my faith. I tell you what, —  
He held me, but last night, at least nine hours,  
In reckoning up the several devils' names,  
That were his lackeys: I cried, humph, — and well,  
— go to, —

But mark'd him not a word. O, he's as tedious  
As is a tired horse, a railing wife ;  
Worse than a smoky house : — I had rather live  
With cheese and garlick, in a windmill, far,  
Than feed on cates, and have him talk to me,  
In any summer-house in Christendom.

*Mort.* In faith, he is a worthy gentleman;  
Exceedingly well read, and profited  
In strange concealments ; valiant as a lion,  
And wond'rous affable : and as bountiful  
As mines of India. Shall I tell you, cousin?  
He holds your temper in a high respect,  
And curbs himself even of his natural scope,  
When you do cross his humour ; faith, he does :  
I warrant you, that man is not alive,  
Might so have tempted him as you have done,  
Without the taste of danger and reproof ;  
But do not use it oft, let me entreat you.

*Wor.* In faith, my lord, you are too wilful-blame ;  
And since your coming hither have done enough  
To put him quite beside his patience.  
You must needs learn, lord, to amend this fault :  
Though sometimes it show greatness, courage,  
blood,  
(And that's the dearest grace it renders you,)

<sup>4</sup> Mole.

Yet oftentimes it doth present harsh rage,  
Defect of manners, want of government,  
Pride, haughtiness, opinion, and disdain :  
The least of which, haunting a nobleman,  
Loses men's hearts ; and leaves behind a stain  
Upon the beauty of all parts besides,  
Beguiling them of commendation.

*Hot.* Well, I am school'd ; good manners be your  
speed !

Here come our wives, and let us take our leave.

*Re-enter GLENDOWER, with the Ladies.*

*Mort.* This is the deadly spite that angers me, —  
My wife can speak no English, I no Welsh.

*Glend.* My daughter weeps ; she will not part  
with you,

She'll be a soldier too, she'll to the wars.

*Mort.* Good father, tell her, — that she, and my  
aunt Percy,

Shall follow in your conduct speedily.

[*GLENDOWER speaks to his Daughter in Welsh,  
and she answers him in the same.*]

*Glend.* She's desperate here ; a peevish self-will'd  
harlotry,

One no persuasion can do good upon.

[*Lady M. speaks to MORTIMER in Welsh.*]

*Mort.* I understand thy looks ; that pretty Welsh  
Which thou pourest down from these swelling  
heavens,

I am too perfect in ; and, but for shame,

In such a parley would I answer thee.

[*Lady M. speaks.*]

I understand thy kisses, and thou mine,

And that's a feeling disputation :

But I will never be a truant, love,

Till I have learn'd thy language ; for thy tongue  
Makes Welsh as sweet as ditties highly penn'd,

Sung by a fair queen in a summer's bower,  
With ravishing division to her lute.<sup>b</sup>

*Glend.* Nay, if you melt, then will she run mad.

[*Lady M. speaks again.*]

*Mort.* O, I am ignorance itself in this.

*Glend.* She bids you

Upon the wanton rushes lay you down,  
And rest your gentle head upon her lap,  
And she will sing the song that pleaseth you,  
And on your eye-lids crown the god of sleep,  
Charming your blood with pleasing heaviness;  
Making such difference 'twixt wake and sleep,  
As is the difference 'twixt day and night,  
The hour before the heavenly-harness'd team  
Begins his golden progress in the east.

*Mort.* With all my heart, I'll sit and hear her  
sing:

By that time will our book, I think, be drawn.

*Glend.* Do so,

And those musicians that shall play to you,  
Hang in the air a thousand leagues from hence;  
Yet straight they shall be here: sit, and attend.

*GLENDOWER speaks some Welsh words, and then  
the Musick plays.*

*Hot.* Now I perceive the devil understands  
Welsh;

And 'tis no marvel, he's so humorous.

By'r lady, he's a good musician.

*Lady P.* Then should you be nothing but musical: for you are altogether governed by humours.  
Lie still, ye thief, and hear the lady sing in Welsh.

*Hot.* I had rather hear *Lady*, my brach<sup>c</sup>, howl  
in Irish.

*Lady P.* Would'st thou have thy head broken?

*Hot.* No.

<sup>b</sup> A compliment to queen Elizabeth.

<sup>c</sup> Hound.

*Lady P.* Then be still.

*Hot.* Peace ! she sings.

*A Welsh SONG sung by Lady M.*

*Hot.* Come, Kate, I'll have your song too.

*Lady P.* Not mine, in good sooth.

*Hot.* Not yours, in good sooth ! 'Heart, you swear

Like a comfit-maker's wife ! Not you, in good sooth ;  
And, As true as I live ; and, As sure as day :  
And giv'st such sarcenet surety for thy oaths,  
As if thou never walk'dst further than Finsbury.<sup>7</sup>  
Swear me, Kate, like a lady, as thou art,  
A good mouth-filling oath ; and leave *in sooth*,  
And such protests of pepper-gingerbread,  
To velvet guards<sup>8</sup>, and Sunday citizens.  
Come, sing.

*Lady P.* I will not sing.

*Hot.* 'Tis the next way to turn tailor, or be red-breast teacher. An the indentures be drawn, I'll away within these two hours ; and so come in when ye will. [Exit.

*Glend.* Come, come, lord Mortimer ; you are as slow,  
As hot lord Piercy is on fire to go.  
By this our book's drawn ; we'll but seal, and then  
To horse immediately.

*Mort.* With all my heart. [Exeunt.

<sup>7</sup> In Moorfields.

<sup>8</sup> Laced velvet, the finery of cockneys.



## SCENE II.

London. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter King HENRY, Prince of WALES, and Lords.*

*K. Hen.* Lord, gives us leave; the Prince of Wales, and I,

Must have some conference; But be near at hand,  
For we shall presently have need of you. —

*[Exeunt Lords.]*

I know not whether heaven will have it so,  
For some displeasing service I have done,  
That in his secret doom, out of my blood  
He'll breed revengement and a scourge for me;  
But thou dost, in thy passages of life,  
Make me believe, — that thou art only mark'd  
For the hot vengeance and the rod of heaven,  
To punish my mis-treadings. Tell me else,  
Could such inordinate, and low desires,  
Such poor, such bare, such lewd, such mean attempts,  
Such barren pleasures, rude society,  
As thou art match'd withal, and grafted to,  
Accompany the greatness of thy blood,  
And hold their level with thy princely heart.

*P. Hen.* So please your majesty, I would, I could  
Quit all offences with such clear excuse,  
As well as, I am doubtless, I can purge  
Myself of many I am charg'd withal;  
Yet such extenuation let me beg,  
As, in reproof of many tales devis'd, —  
Which oft the ear of greatness needs must hear, —  
By smiling pick-thanks<sup>9</sup> and base newsmongers,  
I may, for some things true, wherein my youth,  
Hath faulty wander'd and irregular,  
Find pardon on my true submission.

• Officious parasites.

*K. Hen.* God pardon thee ! — yet let me wonder, Harry,  
At thy affections, which do hold a wing  
Quite from the flight of all thy ancestors.  
Thy place in council thou hast rudely lost,  
Which by thy younger brother is supplied ;  
And art almost an alien to the hearts  
Of all the court and princes of my blood :  
The hope and expectation of thy time  
Is ruin'd ; and the soul of every man  
Prophetically does fore-think thy fall.  
Had I so lavish of my presence been,  
So common-hackney'd in the eyes of men,  
So stale and cheap to vulgar company ;  
Opinion, that did help me to the crown,  
Had still kept loyal to possession ;  
And left me in reputeless banishment,  
A fellow of no mark, nor likelihood.  
By being seldom seen, I could not stir,  
But, like a comet, I was wonder'd at :  
That men would tell their children, *This is he :*  
Others would say, — *Where ? which is Bolingbroke ?*  
And then I stole all courtesy from heaven,  
And dress'd myself in such humility,  
That I did pluck allegiance from men's hearts,  
Loud shouts and salutations from their mouths,  
Even in the presence of the crowned king.  
Thus did I keep my person fresh and new ;  
My presence, like a robe pontifical,  
Ne'er seen, but wonder'd at : and so my state,  
Seldom, but sumptuous, showed like a feast ;  
And won, by rareness, such solemnity.  
The skipping king, he ambled up and down  
With shallow jesters, and rash bavin<sup>1</sup> wits,  
Soon kindled, and soon burn'd ; carded his state ;  
Mingled his royalty with capering fools ;  
Had his great name profaned with their scorns ;

<sup>1</sup> Brushwood.

And gave his countenance, against his name,  
To laugh at gibing boys, and stand the push  
Of every beardless vain comparative :  
Grew a companion to the common streets,  
Enfeoff'd himself to popularity :  
That being daily swallow'd by men's eyes,  
They surfeited with honey ; and began  
To loathe the taste of sweetness, whereof a little  
More than a little is by much too much.  
So, when he had occasion to be seen,  
He was but as the cuckoo is in June,  
Heard, not regarded ; seen, but with such eyes,  
As, sick and blunted with community,  
Afford no extraordinary gaze,  
Such as is bent on sun-like majesty  
When it shines seldom in admiring eyes :  
But rather drowz'd, and hung their eye-lids down,  
Slept in his face, and render'd such aspect  
As cloudy men use to their adversaries ;  
Being with his presence glutted, gorg'd, and full.  
And in that very line, Harry, stand'st thou :  
For thou hast lost thy princely privilege,  
With vile participation ; not an eye  
But is a-weary of thy common sight,  
Save mine, which hath desir'd to see thee more ;  
Which now doth that I would not have it do,  
Make blind itself with foolish tenderness.

*P. Hen.* I shall hereafter, my thrice-gracious lord,  
Be more myself.

*K. Hen.* For all the world,  
As thou art to this hour, was Richard then  
When I from France set foot at Ravenspurgh ;  
And even as I was then, is Percy now.  
Now by my scepter, and my soul to boot,  
He hath more worthy interest to the state,  
Than thou, the shadow of succession :  
For, of no right, nor colour like to right,  
He doth fill fields with harness<sup>2</sup> in the realm ;

<sup>2</sup> Armour.

Turns head against the lion's armed jaws ;  
 And, being no more in debt to years than thou,  
 Leads ancient lords and reverend bishops on,  
 To bloody battles, and to bruising arms.  
 What never-dying honour hath he got  
 Against renowned Douglas ; whose high deeds,  
 Whose hot incursions, and great name in arms,  
 Holds from all soldiers chief majority,  
 And military title capital,  
 Through all the kingdoms that acknowledge Christ ?  
 Thrice hath this Hotspur Mars in swathing clothes,  
 This infant warrior in his enterprizes  
 Discomfited great Douglas : ta'en him once,  
 Enlarged him, and made a friend of him,  
 To fill the mouth of deep defiance up,  
 And shake the peace and safety of our throne.  
 And what say you to this ? Percy, Northumber-  
 land,

The archbishop's grace of York, Douglas, Mortimer,  
 capitulate <sup>3</sup> against us, and are up.

But wherefore do I tell these news to thee ?

Why, Harry, do I tell thee of my foes,

Which art my near'st and dearest <sup>4</sup> enemy ?

Thou that art like enough, — through vassal fear,

By inclination, and the start of spleen, —

Wilt fight against me under Percy's pay,

Follow his heels, and court'sy at his frowns,

How much thou art degenerate.

*Hen.* Do not think so, you shall not find it so ;

Heaven forgive them, that have so much sway'd

Majesty's good thoughts away from me !

Will I redeem all this on Percy's head,

On the closing of some glorious day,

Would I tell you that I am your son ;

I will wear a garment all of blood,

Stain my favours in a bloody mask,

Wash'd away, shall scour my shame with it.

<sup>3</sup> *Combine.*

<sup>4</sup> *Most fatal.*

And that shall be the day, whene'er it lights,  
That this same child of honour and renown,  
This gallant, Hotspur, this all-praised knight,  
And your unthought-of Harry, chance to meet:  
For every honour sitting on his helm,  
'Would they were multitudes; and on my head  
My shames redoubled! for the time will come,  
That I shall make this northern youth exchange  
His glorious deeds for my indignities.  
Percy is but my factor, good my lord,  
To engross up glorious deeds on my behalf;  
And I will call him to so strict account,  
That he shall render every glory up,  
Yea, even the slightest worship of his time,  
Or I will tear the reckoning from his heart.  
This, in the name of God, I promise here:  
The which if he be pleas'd I shall perform,  
I do beseech your majesty, may salve  
The long-grown wounds of my intemperance:  
If not, the end of life cancels all bands;  
And I will die a hundred thousand deaths,  
Ere break the smallest parcel of this vow.

*K. Hen.* A hundred thousand rebels die in this:—  
Thou shalt have charge, and sovereign trust, herein.

*Enter BLUNT.*

How now, good Blunt? thy looks are full of speed.

*Blunt.* So hath the business that I come to speak of.  
Lord Mortimer of Scotland hath sent word,—  
That Douglas, and the English rebels, met  
The eleventh of this month at Shrewsbury:  
A mighty and a fearful head they are,  
If promises be kept on every hand,  
As ever offer'd foul play in a state.

*K. Hen.* The earl of Westmorland set forth to-day;  
With him my son, lord John of Lancaster;  
For this advertisement is five days old:—

On Wednesday next, Harry, you shall set  
Forward ; on Thursday, we ourselves will march :  
Our meeting is Bridgnorth : and, Harry, you  
Shall march through Glostershire ; by which account,  
Our business valued, some twelve days hence  
Our general forces at Bridgnorth shall meet.  
Our hands are full of business : let's away ;  
Advantage feeds him fat, while men delay.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III.

Eastcheap. *A Room in the Boar's Head Tavern.*

*Enter FALSTAFF and BARDOLPH.*

*Fal.* Bardolph, am I not fallen away vilely since this last action ? do I not bate ? do I not dwindle ? Why, my skin hangs about me like an old lady's loose gown ; I am wither'd like an old apple-John. Well, I'll repent, and that suddenly, while I am in some liking<sup>5</sup> ; I shall be out of heart shortly, and then I shall have no strength to repent. An I have not forgotten what the inside of a church is made of, I am a pepper-corn, a brewer's horse : the inside of a church ! Company, villainous company, hath been the spoil of me.

*Bard.* Sir John, you are so fretful, you cannot live long.

*Fal.* Why, there is it : — come, sing me a song ; make me merry. I was as virtuously given, as a gentleman need to be ; virtuous enough ; swore like ; diced, not above seven times a week ; paid my money that I borrowed, three or four times ; lived well, and in good compass : and now I live out of order, out of all compass.

<sup>5</sup> Have some flesh.

*Bard.* Why, you are so fat, sir John, that you must needs be out of all compass; out of all reasonable compass, sir John.

*Fal.* Do thou amend thy face, and I'll amend my life: 'Thou art our admiral<sup>6</sup>, thou bearest the lantern in the poop, —but 'tis in the nose of thee; thou art the knight of the burning lamp.

*Bard.* Why, sir John, my face does you no harm.

*Fal.* No, I'll be sworn; I make good use of it. When thou ran'st up Gads-hill in the night to catch my horse, if I did not think thou hadst been an *ignis fatuus*, or a ball of wildfire, there's no purchase in money. O, thou art a perpetual triumph, an everlasting bonfire-light! Thou hast saved me a thousand marks in links and torches, walking with thee in the night betwixt tavern and tavern: but the sack that thou hast drunk me, would have bought me lights as good cheap, at the dearest chandler's in Europe. I have maintained that salamander of yours with fire, any time this two-and-thirty years: Heaven reward me for it!

*Enter Hostess.*

How now, dame Partlet the hen<sup>7</sup>? have you inquired yet, who picked my pocket?

*Host.* Why, sir John! what do you think, sir John? Do you think I keep thieves in my house? I have searched, I have inquired, so has my husband, man by man, boy by boy, servant by servant: the tithe of a hair was never lost in my house before.

*Fal.* You lie, hostess; Bardolph was shaved and lost many a hair: and I'll be sworn, my pocket was picked: Go to, you are woman, go.

*Host.* Who I? I defy thee: I was never called so in mine own house before.

*Fal.* Go to, I know you well enough.

<sup>6</sup> Admiral's ship.

<sup>7</sup> In the story-book of Reynard the Fox.

*Host.* No, sir John: you do not know me, sir John: I know you, sir John: you owe me money, sir John, and now you pick a quarrel to beguile me of it; I bought you a dozen of shirts to your back.

*Fal.* Dowlas, dowlas: I have given them away to bakers' wives, and they have made bolters of them.

*Host.* Now, as I am a true woman, holland of eight shillings an ell. You owe money here besides, sir John, for your diet, and by-drinkings, and money lent you, four-and-twenty pound.

*Fal.* He had his part of it; let him pay.

*Host.* He? alas, he is poor; he hath nothing.

*Fal.* How! poor? look upon his face; What call you rich? let them coin his nose, let them coin his cheeks; I'll not pay a denier. What, will you make a younker of me? shall I not take mine ease in mine inn, but I shall have my pocket picked? I have lost a seal-ring of my grandfather's worth forty marks.

*Host.* O! I have heard the prince tell him, I know not how oft, that that ring was copper.

*Fal.* How! the prince is a Jack<sup>a</sup>, a sneak-cup; and, if he were here, I would cudgel him like a dog, if he would say so.

*Enter Prince HENRY and POINS, marching. FALSTAFF meets the Prince, playing on his Truncheon like a fife.*

*Fal.* How now, lad? is the wind in that door, must we all march?

*Bard.* Yea, two and two, Newgate-fashion.

*Host.* My lord, I pray you, hear me.

*P. Hen.* What sayest thou, mistress Quickly? How does thy husband? I love him well, he is an honest man.

*Host.* Good my lord, hear me.

<sup>a</sup> A term of contempt frequently used by Shakspeare.  
VOL. V.



*Fal.* Pr'ythee, let her alone, and list to me.

*P. Hen.* What sayest thou, Jack?

*Fal.* The other night I fell asleep here behind the arras, and had my pocket picked.

*P. Hen.* What didst thou lose, Jack?

*Fal.* Wilt thou believe me, Hal? three or four bonds of forty pound a-piece, and a seal-ring of my grandfather's.

*P. Hen.* A trifle, some eight-penny matter.

*Host.* So I told him, my lord; and I said, I heard your grace say so: And, my lord, he speaks most vilely of you, like a foul-mouthed man as he is; and said, he would cudgel you.

*P. Hen.* What! he did not?

*Host.* There's neither faith, truth, nor womanhood in me else.

*Fal.* There's no more faith in thee than in a stewed prune; nor no more truth in thee, than in a drawn fox; and for womanhood, maid Marian<sup>9</sup> may be the deputy's wife of the ward to thee. Go, you thing, go.

*Host.* Say, what thing? what thing? I am an honest man's wife: and, setting thy knighthood aside, thou art a knave to call me so.

*Fal.* Setting thy womanhood aside, thou art a beast to say otherwise.

*Host.* Say, what beast, thou knave, thou?

*Fal.* What beast? why an otter.

*P. Hen.* An otter, sir John! why an otter?

*Fal.* Why? she's neither fish, nor flesh.

*Host.* Thou art an unjust man in saying so.

*P. Hen.* Thou sayest true, Hostess; and he slanders thee most grossly.

*Host.* So he doth you, my lord; and said this other day, you ought him a thousand pound.

*P. Hen.* Sirrah, do I owe you a thousand pound?

<sup>9</sup> A female character, who attends morris-dancers; generally a man dressed like a woman.

*Fal.* A thousand pound, Hal? a million: thy love is worth a million; thou owest me thy love.

*Host.* Nay, my lord, he called you Jack, and said, he would cudgel you.

*Fal.* Did I, Bardolph?

*Bard.* Indeed, sir John, you said so.

*Fal.* Yea; if he said, my ring was copper.

*P. Hen.* I say, 'tis copper: Darest thou be as good as thy word now?

*Fal.* Why, Hal, thou knowest, as thou art but man, I dare: but, as thou art prince, I fear thee, as I fear the roaring of the lion's whelp.

*P. Hen.* And why not, as the lion?

*Fal.* The king himself is to be feared as the lion: Dost thou think, I'll fear thee as I fear thy father?

*P. Hen.* O, sirrah, there's no room for faith, truth, nor honesty, in this bosom of thine. Charge an honest woman with picking thy pocket! Why, thou impudent rascal, if there were any thing in thy pocket but tavern-reckonings, and one poor penny-worth of sugar-candy to make thee long winded; if thy pocket were enriched with any other injuries but these, I am a villain. And yet you will stand to it; you will not pocket up wrong: Art thou not ashamed?

*Fal.* Dost thou hear, Hal? thou knowest, in the state of innocency, Adam fell; and what should poor Jack Falstaff do, in the days of villainy? Thou seest, I have more flesh than another man; and therefore more frailty.—You confess, then, you picked my pocket?

*P. Hen.* It appears so by the story.

*Fal.* Hostess, I forgive thee: Go, make ready breakfast; love thy husband, look to thy servants, cherish thy guests: thou shalt find me tractable to any honest reason: thou seest, I am pacified.—Still?—Nay, pr'ythee, be gone. [*Exit Hostess.*] Now, Hal, to the news at court: for the robbery, lad,—How is that answered?

*P. Hen.* O, my sweet beef, I must still be good angel to thee: — The money is paid back again.

*Fal.* O, I do not like that paying back, 'tis a double labour.

*P. Hen.* I am good friends with my father, and may do any thing.

*Fal.* Rob me the exchequer the first thing thou doest, and do it with unwashed hands too.

*Bard.* Do, my lord.

*P. Hen.* I have procured thee, Jack, a charge of foot.

*Fal.* I would it had been of horse. Where shall I find one that can steal well? O for a fine thief, of the age of two-and-twenty, or thereabouts! I am heinously unprovided. Well, Heaven be thanked for these rebels, they offend none but the virtuous; I laud them, I praise them.

*P. Hen.* Bardolph —

*Bard.* My lord.

*P. Hen.* Go bear this letter to lord John of Lancaster,

My brother John; this to my lord of Westmoreland, —

Go, Poins, to horse, to horse; for thou, and I, Have thirty miles to ride yet ere dinner time. — Jack,

Meet me to-morrow i' the Temple-hall

At two o'clock i' the afternoon:

There shalt thou know thy charge; and there receive

Money, and order for their furniture.

The land is burning; Percy stands on high;

And either they, or we, must lower lie.

[*Exeunt Prince, POINS, and BARDOLPH.*]

*Fal.* Rare words! brave world! — Hostess, my breakfast; come: —

O, I could wish, this tavern were my drum. [*Exit.*]

## ACT THE FOURTH.

## SCENE I.

*The Rebel Camp near Shrewsbury.*

*Enter HOTSPUR, WORCESTER, and DOUGLAS.*

*Hot.* Well said, my noble Scot: If speaking truth,

In this fine age, were not thought flattery,  
Such attribution should the Douglas<sup>1</sup> have,  
As not a soldier of this season's stamp  
Should go so general current through the world.  
By heaven, I cannot flatter; I defy  
The tongues of soothers; but a braver place  
In my heart's love, hath no man than yourself:  
Nay, task me to the word; approve me, lord.

*Doug.* Thou art the king of honour:  
No man so potent breathes upon the ground,  
But I will beard him.

*Hot.* Do so, and 'tis well:—

*Enter a Messenger, with Letters.*

What letters hast thou there?—I can but thank  
you.

*Mess.* These letters come from your father,—

*Hot.* Letters from him! why comes he not himself?

*Mess.* He cannot come, my lord; he's grievous sick.

*Hot.* O how has he the leisure to be sick,  
In such a justling time? Who leads his power?  
Under whose government come they along?

<sup>1</sup> This expression is applied by way of pre-eminence to the head of the Douglas family.

*Mess.* His letters bear his mind, not I, my lord.

*Wor.* I pr'ythee, tell me, doth he keep his bed?

*Mess.* He did, my lord, four days ere I set forth;  
And at the time of my departure thence,  
He was much fear'd by his physicians.

*Wor.* I would, the state of time had first been  
whole,

Ere he by sickness had been visited;  
His health was never better worth than now.

*Hot.* Sick now! droop now! this sickness doth  
infect

The very life-blood of our enterprize;  
'Tis catching hither, even to our camp. —  
He writes me here, — that inward sickness —  
And that his friends by deputation could not  
So soon be drawn; nor did he think it meet,  
To lay so dangerous and dear a trust  
On any soul remov'd, but on his own.  
Yet doth he give us bold advertisement, —  
That with our small conjunction, we should on,  
To see how fortune is dispos'd to us:  
For, as he writes, there is no quailing<sup>2</sup> now;  
Because the king is certainly possess'd  
Of all our purposes. What say you to it?

*Wor.* Your father's sickness is a maim to us.

*Hot.* A perilous gash, a very limb lopp'd off: —  
And yet, in faith, 'tis not; his present want  
Seems more than we shall find it: — Were it good  
To set the exact wealth of all our states  
All at one cast? to set so rich a main  
On the nice hazard of one doubtful hour?  
It were not good: for therein should we read  
The very bottom and the soul of hope;  
The very list<sup>3</sup>, the very utmost bound  
Of all our fortunes.

*Doug.* Faith, and so we should;

<sup>2</sup> Languishing.

<sup>3</sup> Limit, boundary.

Where now remains a sweet reversion :  
We may boldly spend upon the hope of what  
Is to come in :

A comfort of retirement lives in this.

*Hot.* A rendezvous, a home to fly unto.

*Wor.* But yet, I would your father had been here,  
The quality and hair<sup>4</sup> of our attempt  
Brooks no division : It will be thought  
By some, that know not why he is away,  
That wisdom, loyalty, and mere dislike  
Of our proceedings, kept the earl from hence ;  
And think, how such an apprehension  
May turn the tide of fearful faction,  
And breed a kind of question in our cause :  
For well you know, we of the offering side  
Must keep aloof from strict abitreement ;  
And stop all sight-holes, every loop, from whence  
The eye of reason may pry in upon us :  
This absence of your father's draws a curtain,  
That shows the ignorant a kind of fear  
Before not dreamt of.

*Hot.* You strain too far.  
I, rather, of his absence make this use ; —  
It lends a lustre, and more great opinion,  
A larger dare to our great enterprize,  
Than if the earl were here : for men must think,  
If we, without his help, can make a head  
To push against the kingdom ; with his help,  
We shall o'erturn it, topsy-turvy down. —  
Yet all goes well, yet all our joints are whole.

*Doug.* As heart can think : there is not such a  
word  
Spoke of in Scotland, as this term of fear.

*Enter Sir RICHARD VERNON.*

*Hot.* My cousin Vernon ! welcome, by my soul.

<sup>4</sup> *The complexion, the character.*

*Ver.* Pray Heaven, my news be worth a welcome lord.

The earl of Westmoreland, seven thousand strong  
Is marching hitherwards; with him, prince John.

*Hot.* No harm: What more?

*Ver.* And further, I have learn'd —  
The king himself in person is set forth,  
Or hitherwards intended speedily,  
With strong and mighty preparation.

*Hot.* He shall be welcome, too. Where is his son  
The nimble-footed madcap prince of Wales,  
And his comrades, that daff'd<sup>5</sup> the world aside,  
And bid it pass?

*Ver.* All furnish'd, all in arms,  
All plum'd like estridges<sup>6</sup> that wing'd the wind;  
Bated<sup>7</sup> like eagles having lately bath'd;  
Glittering in golden coats, like images;  
As full of spirit as the month of May,  
And gorgeous as the sun at Midsummer;  
Wanton as youthful goats, wild as young bulls.  
I saw young Harry, — with his beaver on,  
His cuisses<sup>8</sup> on his thighs, gallantly arm'd, —  
Rise from the ground like feather'd Mercury,  
And vaulted with such ease into his seat,  
As if an angel dropp'd down from the clouds,  
To turn and wind a fiery Pegasus,  
And witch the world with noble horsemanship.

*Hot.* No more, no more; worse than the sun in  
March,  
This praise doth nourish agues. Let them come:  
They come like sacrifices in their trim,  
And to the fire-ey'd maid of smoky war,  
All hot, and bleeding, will we offer them:  
The mailed Mars shall on his altar sit,  
Up to the ears in blood. I am on fire,  
To hear this rich reprisal is so nigh,

<sup>5</sup> Threw contemptuously.

<sup>7</sup> Fresh.

<sup>6</sup> Ostriches.

<sup>8</sup> Armour for the thighs.

And yet not ours : — Come, let me take my horse,  
Who is to bear me, like a thunderbolt,  
Against the bosom of the prince of Wales :  
Harry to Harry shall, hot horse to horse,  
Meet, and ne'er part, till one drop down a corse.—  
O, that Glendower were come!

*Ver.* There is more news :  
I learn'd in Worcester as I rode along,  
He cannot draw his power this fourteen days.

*Doug.* That's the worst tidings that I hear of yet.

*Wor.* Ay, by my faith, that bears a frosty sound.

*Hot.* What may the king's whole battle reach  
unto?

*Ver.* To thirty thousand.

*Hot.* Forty let it be ;  
My father and Glendower being both away,  
The powers of us may serve so great a day.  
Come, let us make a muster speedily :  
Doomsday is near ; die all, die merrily.

*Doug.* Talk not of dying ; I am out of fear  
Of death, or death's hand, for this one half year.  
[*Exeunt.*

## SCENE II.

*A Publick Road near Coventry.*

*Enter FALSTAFF and BARDOLPH.*

*Fal.* Bardolph, get thee before to Coventry ; fill  
me a bottle of sack : our soldiers shall march  
through ; we'll to Sutton-Colfield to-night.

*Bard.* Will you give me money, captain?

*Fal.* Lay out, lay out.

*Bard.* This bottle makes an angel.

*Fal.* An if it do, take it for thy labour ; and if it  
make twenty, take them all, I'll answer the coinage.  
Bid my lieutenant *Peto* meet me at the town's end.

*Bard.* I will, captain : farewell. [Exit.



*Fal.* If I be not ashamed of my soldiers, I am a souced gurnet. I have misused the king's press vilely. I have got in exchange of a hundred and fifty soldiers, three hundred and odd pounds. I press me none but good householders, yeomen's sons: inquire me out contracted bachelors, such as had been asked twice on the banns; such a commodity of warm slaves, as had as lief hear the devil as a drum; such as fear the report of a caliver<sup>9</sup> worse than a struck fowl, or a hurt wild duck. I pressed me none but such toasts and butter, with hearts no bigger than pins' heads, and they have bought out their services; and now my whole charge consists of ancients, corporals, lieutenants, gentlemen of companies, slaves as ragged as Lazarus in the painted cloth, and such as, indeed, were never soldiers, but discarded, unjust serving-men, younger sons to younger brothers, revolted tapsters, and ostlers trade-fallen; the cankers of a calm world, and a long peace; ten times more dishonourably ragged than an old faced ancient<sup>1</sup>: and such have I to fill up the rooms of them that have bought out their services. A mad fellow met me on the way, and told me I had unloaded all the gibbets, and pressed the dead bodies. No eye hath seen such scare-crows. I'll not march through Coventry with them, that's flat:—Nay, and the villains march wide betwixt the legs, as if they had gyves<sup>2</sup> on; for, indeed, I had the most of them out of prison. There's but a shirt and a half in all my company: and the half-shirt is two napkins tacked together, and thrown over the shoulders like a herald's coat without sleeves; and the shirt, to say the truth, stolen from my host at Saint Alban's, or the red-nose inn-keeper of Daintry.<sup>3</sup> But that's all one; they'll find linen enough on every hedge.

<sup>9</sup> A musket.<sup>1</sup> Standard.<sup>2</sup> Fetters.<sup>3</sup> Daventry, pronounced Daintry.

*Enter Prince HENRY and WESTMORELAND.*

*P. Hen.* How now, blown Jack? how now, quilt?

*Fal.* What, Hal? How now, mad wag? what a devil dost thou in Warwickshire? — My good lord of Westmoreland, I cry you mercy; I thought your honour had already been at Shrewsbury.

*West.* 'Faith, sir John, 'tis more than time that I were there, and you to; but my powers are there already: The king, I can tell you, looks for us all; we must away all night.

*Fal.* Tut, never fear me; I am as vigilant as a cat to steal cream.

*P. Hen.* I think, to steal cream, indeed; for thy theft hath already made thee butter. But, tell me, Jack; whose fellows are these that come after?

*Fal.* Mine, Hal, mine.

*P. Hen.* I did never see such pitiful rascals.

*Fal.* Tut, tut; good enough to toss; food for powder, food for powder; they'll fill a pit, as well as better: tush, man, mortal men, mortal men.

*West.* Ay, but sir John, methinks they are exceeding poor and bare; too beggarly.

*Fal.* 'Faith, for their poverty, — I know not where they had that: and for their bareness, — I am sure they never learned that of me.

*P. Hen.* No, I'll be sworn; unless you call three fingers on the ribs bare. But, sirrah, make haste; Percy is already in the field.

*Fal.* What, is the king encamped?

*West.* He is, sir John; I fear we shall stay too long.

*Fal.* Well,

So the latter end of a fray, and the beginning of a feast,

Makes a dull fighter, and a keen guest. [Exit.

## SCENE III.

*The Rebel Camp near Shrewsbury.*

*Enter* HOTSPUR. WORCESTER, DOUGLAS, and  
VERNON.

*Hot.* We'll fight with him to-night.

*Wor.* It may not be.

*Doug.* You give him then advantage.

*Ver.* Not a whit.

*Hot.* Why say you so? looks he not for supply?

*Ver.* So do we.

*Hot.* His is certain, ours is doubtful.

*Wor.* Good cousin, be advis'd; stir not to-night.

*Ver.* Do not, my lord.

*Doug.* You do not counsel well;  
You speak it out of fear, and cold heart.

*Ver.* Do me no slander, Douglas: by my life,  
(And I dare well maintain it with my life,)

If well respected honour bid me on,

I hold as little counsel with weak fear,

As you, my lord, or any Scot that lives: —

Let it be seen to-morrow in the battle,

Which of us fears.

*Doug.* Yea, or to-night.

*Ver.* Content.

*Hot.* To-night, say I.

*Ver.* Come, come, it may not be  
I wonder much, being men of such great leading  
That you foresee not what impediments  
Drag back our expedition: Certain horse  
Of my cousin Vernon's are not yet come up:  
Your uncle Worcester's horse came but to-day;  
And now their pride and mettle is asleep,

Their courage with hard labour tame and dull,  
That not a horse is half the half himself.

*Hot.* So are the horses of the enemy,  
In general, journey-bated, and brought low ;  
The better part of ours is full of rest.

*Wor.* The number of the king exceedeth ours :  
For Heaven sake, cousin, stay till all come in.

[*The Trumpet sounds a parley.*]

*Enter Sir WALTER BLUNT.*

*Blunt.* I come with gracious offers from the king,  
If you vouchsafe me hearing, and respect.

*Hot.* Welcome, sir Walter Blunt ; And 'would  
to heaven,

You were of our determination !

Some of us love you well : and even those some

Envy your great deserving, and good name ;

Because you are not of our quality,<sup>5</sup>

But stand against us like an enemy.

*Blunt.* And God defend, but still I should stand so,

So long as, out of limit, and true rule,

You stand against anointed majesty !

But to my charge. — The king hath sent to know

The nature of your griefs<sup>6</sup> ; and whereupon

You conjure from the breast of civil peace

Such bold hostility, teaching this duteous land

Audacious cruelty : If that the king

Have any way your good deserts forgot, —

Which he confesseth to be manifold, —

He bids you name your griefs ; and, with all speed,

You shall have your desires, with interest ;

And pardon absolute for yourself, and these,

Herein misled by your suggestion.

*Hot.* The king is kind ; and well we know the  
king

Knows at what time to promise, when to pay.

<sup>5</sup> Fellowship.

<sup>6</sup> Grievances.

My father, and my uncle, and myself,  
Did give him that same royalty he wears;  
And when he was not six and twenty strong,  
Sick in the world's regard, wretched and low,  
A poor unminded outlaw sneaking home,—  
My father gave him welcome to the shore:  
And,—when he heard him swear, and vow to God,  
He came but to be duke of Lancaster,  
To sue his livery<sup>7</sup>, and beg his peace;  
With tears of innocency, and terms of zeal,—  
My father, in kind heart and pity mov'd,  
Swore him assistance, and perform'd it too.  
Now, when the lords and barons of the realm  
Perceiv'd Northumberland did lean to him,  
The more and less<sup>8</sup> came in with cap and knee;  
Met him in boroughs, cities, villages;  
Attended him on bridges, stood in lanes,  
Laid gifts before him, proffer'd him their oaths,  
Gave him their heirs; as pages follow'd him,  
Even at the heels, in golden multitudes.  
He presently, — as greatness knows itself, —  
Steps me a little higher than his vow  
Made to my father, while his blood was poor,  
Upon the naked shore at Ravenspurg;  
And now, forsooth, takes on him to reform  
Some certain edicts, and some strait decrees,  
That lie too heavy on the commonwealth:  
Cries out upon abuses, seems to weep  
Over his country's wrongs; and, by this face,  
This seeming brow of justice, did he win  
The hearts of all that he did angle for.  
Proceeded further; cut me off the heads  
Of all the favourites, that the absent king  
In deputation left behind him here,  
When he was personal in the Irish war.

*Blunt.* I came not to hear this.

*Hot.*

Then to the point.—

<sup>7</sup> The delivery of his lands.    <sup>8</sup> The greater and the less.

In short time after he deposed the king,  
Soon after that, depriv'd him of his life;  
And, in the neck of that, task'd the whole state :  
To make that worse, suffer'd his kinsman March  
(Who is, if every owner were well plac'd,  
Indeed his king,) to be incag'd in Wales,  
There without ransome to lie forfeited :  
Disgrac'd me in my happy victories ;  
Sought to entrap me by intelligence ;  
Rated my uncle from the council-board ;  
In rage dismiss'd my father from the court ;  
Broke oath on oath, committed wrong on wrong :  
And, in conclusion, drove us to seek out  
This head of safety ; and, withal, to pry  
Into his title, the which we find  
Too indirect for long continuance.

*Blunt.* Shall I return this answer to the king ?

*Hot.* Not so, sir Walter ; we'll withdraw awhile.  
Go to the king ; and let there be impawn'd  
Some surety for a safe return again,  
And in the morning early shall mine uncle  
Bring him our purposes : and so farewell.

*Blunt.* I would, you would accept of grace and  
love.

*Hot.* And, may be, so we shall.

*Blunt.* 'Pray heaven, you do !  
[*Exeunt.*

## SCENE IV.

*York.* *A Room in the Archbishop's House.*

*Enter the Archbishop of YORK, and a Gentleman.*

*Arch.* Hie, good sir Michael ? bear this sealed  
brief,<sup>9</sup>  
With winged haste to the lord marshal ;

<sup>9</sup> Letter.

This to my cousin Scroop ; and all the rest  
To whom they are directed : if you knew  
How much they do import, you would make haste.

*Gent.* My good lord,  
I guess their tenor.

*Arch.* Like enough you do.  
To-morrow, good sir Michael, is a day,  
Wherein the fortune of ten thousand men  
Must 'bide the touch : For, sir, at Shrewsbury,  
As I am truly given to understand,  
The king, with mighty and quick-raised power,  
Meets with lord Harry : and I fear, sir Michael,—  
What with the sickness of Northumberland,  
(Whose power was in the first proportion,)  
And what with Owen Glendower's absence thence,  
(Who with them was a rated sinew too,<sup>1</sup>  
And comes not in, o'er-rul'd by prophecies,)  
I fear the power of Percy is too weak  
To wage an instant trial with the king.

*Gent.* Why, good my lord, you need not fear ;  
there's Douglas,  
And Mortimer.

*Arch.* No, Mortimer's not there.

*Gent.* But there is Mordake, Vernon, lord Harry  
Percy,  
And there's my lord of Worcester ; and a head  
Of gallant warriors, noble gentlemen.

*Arch.* And so there is : but yet the king hath  
drawn  
The special head of all the land together ; —  
The prince of Wales, lord John of Lancaster,  
The noble Westmoreland, and warlike Blunt ;  
And many more corrivals, and dear men  
Of estimation and command in arms.

*Gent.* Doubt not, my lord, they shall be well  
oppos'd.

*Arch.* I hope no less, yet needful 'tis to fear ;

<sup>1</sup> A strength on which they reckoned.

And to prevent the worst, sir Michael, speed :  
For if lord Percy thrive not, ere the king  
Dismiss his power, he means to visit us, —  
For he hath heard of our confederacy. —  
And 'tis but wisdom to make strong against him ;  
Therefore make haste : I must go write again  
To other friends : and so farewell, sir Michael.  
[*Exeunt severally.*]

---

## ACT THE FIFTH.

## SCENE I.

*The King's Camp near Shrewsbury.*

*Enter King HENRY, Prince HENRY, Prince JOHN  
of LANCASTER, Sir WALTER BLUNT, and Sir  
JOHN FALSTAFF.*

*K. Hen.* How bloodily the sun begins to peer  
Above yon busky<sup>2</sup> hill ! the day looks pale  
At his distemperature.

*P. Hen.* The southern wind  
Doth play the trumpet to his purposes ;  
And, by his hollow whistling in the leaves,  
Foretells a tempest, and a blustering day.

*K. Hen.* Then with the losers let it sympathize ;  
For nothing can seem foul to those that win. —

*Trumpet. Enter WORCESTER and VERNON.*

How now, my lord of Worcester ? 'tis not well,  
That you and I should meet upon such terms

<sup>2</sup> Woody.



As now we meet : You have deceiv'd our trust ;  
 And made us doff<sup>3</sup> our easy robes of peace,  
 To crush our old limbs in ungentle steel :  
 This is not well, my lord, this is not well.  
 What say you to't ? will you again unknit  
 This churlish knot of all-abhorred war ?  
 And move in that obedient orb again,  
 Where you did give a fair and natural light ;  
 And be no more an exhal'd meteor,  
 A prodigy of fear, and a portent  
 Of broached mischief to the unborn times ?

*Wor.* Hear me, my liege :  
 For mine own part, I could be well content  
 To entertain the lag-end of my life  
 With quiet hours ; for, I do protest,  
 I have not sought the day of this dislike.

*K. Hen.* You have not sought for it ! How com  
 it then ?

*Fal.* Rebellion lay in his way, and he found i

*P. Hen.* Peace, chewet<sup>4</sup>, peace.

*Wor.* It pleas'd your majesty, to turn your lo  
 Of favour, from myself, and all our house ;  
 And yet I must remember you, my lord,  
 We were the first and dearest of your friends.  
 For you my staff of office did I break  
 In Richard's time ; and posted day and night  
 To meet you on the way, and kiss your hand.  
 When yet you were in place and in account  
 Nothing so strong and fortunate as I.  
 It was myself, my brother, and his son,  
 That brought you home, and boldly did outdare  
 The dangers of the time : You swore to us, —  
 And you did swear that oath at Doncaster, —  
 That you did nothing purpose 'gainst the state ;  
 Nor claim no further than your new-fall'n right,  
 The seat of Gaunt, dukedom of Lancaster :  
 To this we swore our aid. But, in short space,

<sup>3</sup> Putt off.

<sup>4</sup> A chattering bird, a pie

It rain'd down fortune showering on your head ;  
And such a flood of greatness fell on you,—  
What with our help ; what with the absent king ;  
What with the injuries of a wanton time ;  
The seeming sufferances that you had borne ;  
And the contrarious winds, that held the king  
So long in his unlucky Irish wars,  
That all in England did repute him dead,—  
And, from this swarm of fair advantages  
You took occasion to be quickly woo'd  
To gripe the general sway into your hand ;  
Forgot your oath to us at Doncaster ;  
And, being fed by us, you us'd us so  
As that ungentle gull, the cuckoo's bird,  
Useth the sparrow ; did oppress our nest ;  
Grew by our feeding to so great a bulk,  
That even our love durst not come near your sight,  
For fear of swallowing ; but with nimble wing  
We were enforc'd, for safety sake, to fly  
Out of your sight, and raise this present head :  
Whereby we stand opposed by such means  
As you yourself have forg'd against yourself ;  
By unkind usage, dangerous countenance,  
And violation of all faith and troth  
Sworn to us in your younger enterprize.

*K. Hen.* These things, indeed, you have articulated,<sup>s</sup>

Proclaim'd at market-crosses, read in churches ;  
To face the garment of rebellion  
With some fine colour, that may please the eye  
Of fickle changelings, and poor discontents,  
Which gape, and rub the elbow, at the news  
Of hurly-burly innovation :  
And never yet did insurrection want  
Such water-colours to impaint his cause ;  
Nor moody beggars, starving for a time  
Of pellmell havock and confusion.

<sup>s</sup> Exhibited in articles.

*P. Hen.* In both our armies, there is many a soul  
Shall pay full dearly for this encounter,  
If once they join in trial. Tell your nephew,  
The prince of Wales doth join with all the world  
In praise of Henry Percy ; By my hopes,—  
This present enterprize set off his head,—  
I do not think, a braver gentleman,  
More active-valiant, or more valiant-young,  
More daring, or more bold, is now alive,  
To grace his latter age with noble deeds.  
For my part, I may speak it to my shame,  
I have a truant been to chivalry ;  
And so, I hear, he doth account me too :  
Yet this before my father's majesty,—  
I am content, that he shall take the odds  
Of his great name and estimation ;  
And will, to save the blood on either side,  
Try fortune with him in a single fight.

*K. Hen.* And, prince of Wales, so dare we venture thee,  
Albeit, considerations infinite  
Do make against it :—No, good Worcester, no,  
We love our people well ; even those we love,  
That are misled upon your cousin's part :  
And, will they take the offer of our grace,  
Both he, and they, and you, yea, every man  
Shall be my friend again, and I'll be his :  
So tell your cousin, and bring me word  
What he will do :—But if he will not yield,  
Rebuke and dread correction wait on us,  
And they shall do their office. So, be gone ;  
We will not now be troubled with reply :  
We offer fair, take it advisedly.

[*Exeunt WORCESTER and VERNON.*]

*P. Hen.* It will not be accepted, on my life :  
The Douglas and the Hotspur both together  
Are confident against the world in arms.

*K. Hen.* Hence, therefore, every leader to his charge ;

or on their answer, will we set on them :  
and God befriend us, as our cause is just !

[*Exeunt King, BLUNT, and Prince JOHN.*]

*Fal.* Hal, if thou see me down in the battle, and  
estride me, so ; 'tis a point of friendship.

*P. Hen.* Nothing but a colossus can do thee that  
friendship. Say thy prayers, and farewell.

*Fal.* I would it were bed-time, Hal, and all well.

*P. Hen.* Why, thou owest heaven a death.

[*Exit.*]

*Fal.* 'Tis not due yet ; I would be loath to pay  
before the day. What need I be so forward with  
him that calls not on me ? Well, 'tis no matter ;  
Honour pricks me on. Yea, but how if honour  
prick me off when I come on ? how then ? Can  
honour set to a leg ? No. Or an arm ? No. Or  
take away the grief of a wound ? No. Honour hath  
no skill in surgery then ? No. What is honour ?  
A word. What is in that word, honour ? What is  
that honour ? Air. A trim reckoning !—Who hath  
? He that died o' Wednesday. Doth he feel it ?  
No. Doth he hear it ? No. Is it insensible then ?  
Yea, to the dead. But will it not live with the  
living ? No. Why ? Detraction will not suffer it :  
therefore I'll none of it : Honour is a mere scut-  
cheon, and so ends my catechism.

[*Exit.*]

## SCENE II.

### *The Rebel Camp.*

*Enter WORCESTER and VERNON.*

*r.* O, no, my nephew must not know, sir  
Richard,  
liberal kind offer of the king.  
'Twere best he did.

*Wor.*

Then are we all undone.

It is not possible, it cannot be,  
The king should keep his word in loving us;  
He will suspect us still, and find a time  
To punish this offence in other faults:  
Suspicion shall be all stuck full of eyes:  
For treason is but trusted like the fox;  
Who, ne'er so tame, so cherish'd, and lock'd up,  
Will have a wild trick of his ancestors.  
Look how we can, or sad, or merrily,  
Interpretation will misquote our looks;  
And we shall feed like oxen at a stall,  
The better cherish'd, still the nearer death.  
My nephew's trespass may be well forgot,  
It hath the excuse of youth, and heat of blood;  
And an adopted name of privilege,—  
A hare-brain'd Hotspur, govern'd by a spleen:  
All his offences live upon my head,  
And on his father's;—we did train him on;  
And, his corruption being ta'en from us,  
We, as the spring of all, shall pay for all.  
Therefore, good cousin, let not Harry know,  
In any case, the offer of the king.

*Ver.* Deliver what you will, I'll say, 'tis so.  
Here comes your cousin.

*Enter HOTSPUR and DOUGLAS; and Officers and  
Soldiers, behind.*

*Hot.* My uncle is return'd:—Deliver up  
My lord of Westmoreland.—Uncle, what news?

*Wor.* The king will bid you battle presently.

*Doug.* Defy him by the lord of Westmoreland.

*Hot.* Lord Douglas, go you and tell him so.

*Doug.* Marry, and shall, and very willingly.

[*Exit.*]

*Wor.* There is no seeming mercy in the king.

*Hot.* Did you beg any? God forbid!

*Wor.* I told him gently of our grievances,  
Of his oath-breaking ; which he mended thus, —  
By now forswearing that he is forsworn :  
He calls us rebels, traitors ; and will scourge  
With haughty arms this hateful name in us.

*Re-enter DOUGLAS.*

*Doug.* Arm, gentlemen ; to arms ! for I have  
thrown

A brave defiance in King Henry's teeth,  
And Westmoreland, that was engag'd, did bear it ;  
Which cannot choose but bring him quickly on.

*Wor.* The prince of Wales stepp'd forth before  
the king,  
And, nephew, challeng'd you to single fight.

*Hot.* O, 'would the quarrel lay upon our heads ;  
And that no man might draw short breath to-day,  
But I, and Harry Monmouth ! Tell me, tell me,  
How show'd his talking ? seem'd it in contempt ?

*Ver.* No, by my soul ; I never in my life  
Did hear a challenge urg'd more modestly,  
Unless a brother should a brother dare  
To gentle exercise and proof of arms.  
He gave you all the duties of a man ;  
Trimm'd up your praises with a princely tongue ;  
Spoke your deservings like a chronicle ;  
Making you ever better than his praise,  
By still dispraising praise, valued with you :  
And, which became him like a prince indeed,  
He made a blushing cit<sup>6</sup> of himself ;  
And chid his truant youth with such a grace,  
As if he master'd there a double spirit,  
Of teaching, and of learning, instantly.  
There did he pause : But let me tell the world, —  
If he outlive the envy of this day,  
England did never owe<sup>7</sup> so sweet a hope,  
So much misconstrued in his wantonness.

<sup>6</sup> Recital.

<sup>7</sup> Own.

*Hot.* Cousin, I think, thou art enamoured  
Upon his follies ; never did I hear  
Of any prince, so wild, at liberty :—  
But, be he as he will, yet once ere night  
I will embrace him with a soldier's arm,  
That he shall shrink under my courtesy.—  
Arm, arm, with speed : — And, fellows, soldiers  
                    friends,  
Better consider what you have to do,  
Than I, that have not well the gift of tongue,  
Can lift your blood up with persuasion.

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* My lord, here are letters for you.

*Hot.* I cannot read them now.—

O gentlemen, the time of life is short ;  
To spend that shortness basely, were too long,  
If life did ride upon a dial's point,  
Still ending at the arrival of an hour.  
An if we live, we live to tread on kings ;  
If die, brave death, when princes die with us !  
Now for our conscience,—the arms are fair,  
When the intent of bearing them is just.

*Enter another Messenger.*

*Mess.* My lord, prepare ; the king comes a  
                    pace.

*Hot.* I thank him, that he cuts me from my tale  
For I profess not talking ; Only this —  
Let each man do his best : and here draw I  
A sword, whose temper I intend to stain  
With the best blood that I can meet withal  
In the adventure of this perilous day.  
Now,—*Esperance!*<sup>9</sup>—Percy — and set on.—  
Sound all the lofty instruments of war,  
And by that musick let us all embrace :

• The motto of the Percy family.

For, heaven to earth, some of us never shall  
A second time do such a courtesy.

[*The trumpets sound. They embrace, and exeunt.*]

## SCENE III.

*Plain near Shrewsbury.*

*Excursions, and Parties fighting. Alarum to the Battle. Then enter DOUGLAS and BLUNT, meeting.*

*Blunt.* What is thy name, that in the battle thus  
Thou crossest me? what honour dost thou seek  
Upon my head?

*Doug.* Know then, my name is Douglas;  
And I do haunt thee in the battle thus,  
Because some tell me that thou art a king.

*Blunt.* They tell thee true.

*Doug.* The lord of Stafford dear to-day hath  
bought  
Thy likeness; for, instead of thee, king Harry,  
This sword hath ended him: so shall it thee,  
Unless thou yield thee as my prisoner.

*Blunt.* I was not born a yielder, thou proud Scot;  
And thou shalt find a king that will revenge  
Lord Stafford's death.

[*They fight, and BLUNT is slain.*]

*Enter HOTSPUR.*

*Hot.* O Douglas, hadst thou fought at Holmedon  
thus,  
I never had triumph'd upon a Scot.

*Doug.* All's done, all's won; here breathless lies  
the king.

*Hot.* Where?

*Doug.* Here.



*Hot.* This, Douglas? no, I know this face full well :

A gallant knight he was, his name was Blunt ;  
Semblably furnish'd like the king himself.

*Doug.* A fool go with thy soul, whither it goes,  
A borrow'd title hast thou bought too dear.  
Why didst thou tell me that thou wert a king ?

*Hot.* The king hath many marching in his coats.

*Doug.* Now, by my sword, I will kill all his coats ;  
I'll murder all his wardrobe, piece by piece,  
Until I meet the king.

*Hot.* Up, and away ;  
Our soldiers stand full fairly for the day. [*Exeunt.*]

*Other Alarums. Enter FALSTAFF.*

*Fal.* Though I could 'scape shot-free at London,  
I fear the shot here ; here's no scoring, but upon  
the pate. — Soft ! who art thou ? Sir Walter Blunt ;  
— there's honour for you ; Here's no vanity ! — I  
am as hot as molten lead, and as heavy too : heaven  
keep lead out of me ! I need no more weight than  
mine own bowels. — I have led my raggamuffins  
where they are peppered : there's but three of my  
hundred and fifty left alive ; and they are for the  
town's end, to beg during life. But who comes  
here !

*Enter Prince HENRY.*

*P. Hen.* What, stand'st thou idle here ? lend me  
thy sword :  
Many a nobleman lies stark and stiff  
Under the hoofs of vaunting enemies,  
Whose deaths are unreveng'd : Pr'ythee, lend thy  
sword.

*Fal.* O Hal, I pr'ythee, give me leave to breathe  
a while. — Turk Gregory never did such deeds in

arms, as I have done this day. I have paid Percy, I have made him sure.

*P. Hen.* He is, indeed; and living to kill thee. Lend me thy sword, I pr'ythee.

*Fal.* Nay, Hal, if Percy be alive, thou get'st not my sword; but take my pistol, if thou wilt.

*P. Hen.* Give it me: What, is it in the case?

*Fal.* Ay, Hal; 'tis hot, 'tis hot! there's that will sack a city. [*The Prince draws out a bottle of sack.*]

*P. Hen.* What, is't a time to jest and dally now?  
[*Throws it at him, and exit.*]

*Fal.* Well, if Percy be alive, I'll pierce him. If he do come in my way, so; if he do not, if I come in his, willingly, let him make a carbonado<sup>9</sup> of me. I like not such grinning honour, as Sir Walter hath: Give me life: which if I can save, so; if not, honour comes unlooked for, and there's an end. [*Exit.*]

## SCENE IV.

*Another Part of the Field.*

*Alarums. Excursions. Enter the King, Prince HENRY, Prince JOHN, and WESTMORELAND.*

*K. Hen.* I pr'ythee, Harry, withdraw thyself: thou bleed'st too much:— Lord John of Lancaster, go you with him.

*P. John.* Not I, my lord, unless I did bleed too.

*P. Hen.* I do beseech your majesty, make up, Lest your retirement do amaze your friends.

*K. Hen.* I will do so:—

My lord of Westmoreland, lead him to his tent.

*West.* Come, my lord, I will lead you to your tent.

<sup>9</sup> A piece of meat cut crosswise for the gridiron.

*P. Hen.* Lead me, my lord ? I do not need your help :

And heaven forbid, a shallow scratch should drive  
The prince of Wales from such a field as this ?  
Where stain'd nobility lies trodden on,  
And rebels' arms triumph in massacres !

*P. John.* We breathe too long : — Come, cousin  
Westmoreland,  
Our duty this way lies ; for heaven's sake, come.

[*Exeunt Prince JOHN and WESTMORELAND.*]

*P. Hen.* By heaven, thou hast deceiv'd me, Lancaster,  
I did not think thee lord of such a spirit :  
Before, I lov'd thee as a brother, John ;  
But now, I do respect thee as my soul.

*K. Hen.* I saw him hold lord Percy at the point,  
With lustier maintenance than I did look for  
Of such an ungrown warrior.

*P. Hen.* O, this boy  
Lends mettle to us all ! [*Exit.*]

*Alarums. Enter DOUGLAS.*

*Doug.* Another king ! they grow like Hydra's heads :  
I am the Douglas, fatal to all those  
That wear those colours on them. — What art thou,  
That counterfeit'st the person of a king ?

*K. Hen.* The king himself ; who, Douglas, grieves  
at heart,  
So many of his shadows thou hast met,  
And not the very king. I have two boys  
Seek Percy and thyself about the field :  
But, seeing thou fall'st on me so luckily,  
I will assay thee ; so defend thyself.

*Doug.* I fear, thou art another counterfeit ;  
And yet, in faith, thou bear'st thee like a king :

But mine, I am sure, thou art, whoe'er thou be,  
And thus I win thee.

[*They fight; the King being in danger, enter Prince HENRY.*

*P. Hen.* Hold up thy head, vile Scot, or thou  
art like

Never to hold it up again! the spirits  
Of Shirley, Stafford, Blunt, are in my arms;  
It is the prince of Wales, that threatens thee;  
Who never promiseth, but he means to pay. —

[*They fight; DOUGLAS flies.*

Cheerly, my lord; How fares your grace? —  
Sir Nicholas Gawsey hath for succour sent,  
And so hath Clifton; I'll to Clifton straight.

*K. Hen.* Stay, and breathe a while: —  
Thou hast redeem'd thy lost opinion;  
And show'd, thou mak'st some tender of my life,  
In this fair rescue thou hast brought to me.

*P. Hen.* O heaven! they did me too much injury,  
That ever said, I hearken'd for your death.  
If it were so, I might have let alone  
The insulting hand of Douglas over you;  
Which would have been as speedy in your end,  
As all the poisonous potions in the world,  
And sav'd the treacherous labour of your son.

*K. Hen.* Make up to Clifton, I'll to sir Nicholas  
Gawsey. [Exit King HENRY.

*Enter HOTSPUR.*

*Hot.* If I mistake not, thou art Harry Monmouth.

*P. Hen.* Thou speak'st as if I would deny my  
name.

*Hot.* My name is Harry Percy.

*P. Hen.* Why, then I see

A very valiant rebel of the name.

I am the prince of Wales; and think not, Percy,  
To share with me in glory any more:

*Two stars keep not their motion in one sphere,*

Nor can one England brook a double reign,  
Of Harry Percy, and the prince of Wales.

*Hot.* Nor shall it, Harry, for the hour is come  
To end the one of us ; And 'would to God,  
Thy name in arms were now as great as mine !

*P. Hen.* I'll make it greater, ere I part from thee ;  
And all the budding honours on thy crest  
I'll crop, to make a garland for my head.

*Hot.* I can no longer brook thy vanities.

[*They fight.*]

*Enter FALSTAFF.*

*Fal.* Well said, Hal ! to it, Hal ! — Nay, you shall  
find no boy's play here, I can tell you.

*Enter DOUGLAS ; he fights with FALSTAFF, who  
falls down as if he were dead, and exit DOUGLAS.  
HOTSPUR is wounded, and falls.*

*Hot.* O, Harry, thou hast robb'd me of my youth ;  
I better brook the loss of brittle life,  
Than those proud titles thou hast won of me ;  
They wound my thoughts, worse than thy sword  
my flesh : —

But thought's the slave of life, and life time's fool ;  
And time, that takes survey of all the world,  
Must have a stop. O, I could prophesy,  
But that the earthy and cold hand of death  
Lies on my tongue : — No, Percy, thou art dust,  
And food for — [Dies.]

*P. Hen.* For worms, brave Percy ; Fare thee well.  
great heart ! —

Ill-weav'd ambition, how much art thou shrunk !  
When that this body did contain a spirit,  
A kingdom for it was too small a bound ;  
But now, two paces of the vilest earth  
Is room enough. — This earth, that bears thee dead,  
Bears not alive so stout a gentleman.

If thou wert sensible of courtesy,  
I should not make so dear a show of zeal :—  
But let my favours<sup>1</sup> hide thy mangled face ;  
And, even in thy behalf, I'll thank myself  
For doing these fair rites of tenderness.  
Adieu, and take thy praise with thee to heaven !  
Thy ignominy sleep with thee in the grave,  
But not remember'd in thy epitaph !—

[*He sees FALSTAFF on the ground.*

What ! old acquaintance ! could not all this flesh  
Keep in a little life ? Poor Jack, farewell !  
I could have better spar'd a better man.  
O, I should have a heavy miss of thee,  
If I were much in love with vanity.  
Death hath not struck so fat a deer to-day,  
Though many dearer, in this bloody fray :—  
Embowell'd will I see thee by and by ;  
Till then, in blood by noble Percy lie. [Exit.]

*Fal.* [*Rising slowly.*] Embowelled ! if thou embowel me to-day, I'll give you leave to powder<sup>2</sup> me, and eat me too, to-morrow. 'Twas time to counterfeit, or that hot termagant Scot had paid me scot and lot too. Counterfeit ? I lie, I am no counterfeit : To die, is to be a counterfeit ; for he is but the counterfeit of a man, who hath not the life of a man : but to counterfeit dying, when a man thereby liveth, is to be no counterfeit, but the true and perfect image of life indeed. The better part of valour is — discretion ; in the which better part, I have saved my life. I am afraid of this gunpowder Percy, though he be dead : How, if he should counterfeit too, and rise ? I am afraid, he would prove the better counterfeit. Therefore I'll make him sure : yea, and I'll swear I killed him. Why may not he rise, as well as I ? Nothing confutes me but eyes, and nobody sees me. Therefore, sirrah,

<sup>1</sup> Scarf, with which he covers Percy's face.

<sup>2</sup> Salt.

[*Stabbing him.*] with a new wound in your thigh,  
come you along with me.

[*Takes HOTSPUR on his back.*]

*Re-enter Prince HENRY and Prince JOHN.*

*P. Hen.* Come, brother John, full bravely hast  
thou flesh'd

Thy maiden sword.

*P. John.* But, soft! whom have we here?  
Did you not tell me, this fat man was dead?

*P. Hen.* I did; I saw him dead, breathless and  
bleeding  
Upon the ground.—

Art thou alive? or is it phantasy  
That plays upon our eyesight? I pr'ythee, speak;  
We will not trust our eyes, without our ears:—  
Thou art not what thou seem'st.

*Fal.* No, that's certain; I am not a double man:  
but if I be not Jack Falstaff, then am I a Jack.  
There is Percy: [*Throwing the body down.*] if your  
father will do me any honour, so; if not, let him kill  
the next Percy himself. I look to be either earl  
or duke, I can assure you.

*P. Hen.* Why, Percy I killed myself, and saw  
thee dead.

*Fal.* Did'st thou?—Lord, lord, how this world  
is given to lying!—I grant you, I was down, and  
out of breath; and so was he: but we rose both at  
an instant, and fought a long hour by Shrewsbury  
clock. If I may be believed, so; if not, let them,  
that should reward valour, bear the sin upon their  
own heads. I'll take it upon my death, I gave him  
this wound in the thigh: if the man were alive, and  
would deny it, I would make him eat a piece of my  
sword.

*P. John.* This is the strangest tale that e'er I  
heard.

*P. Hen.* This is the strangest fellow, brother  
John.—

Come, bring your luggage nobly on your back :  
For my part, if a lie may do thee grace,  
I'll gild it with the happiest terms I have.

[*A Retreat is sounded.*

The trumpet sounds retreat, the day is ours.  
Come, brother, let's to the highest of the field,  
To see what friends are living, who are dead.

[*Exeunt Prince HENRY and Prince JOHN.*

*Fal.* I'll follow, as they say, for reward. He that  
rewards me, heaven reward him ! If I do grow  
great, I'll grow less ; for I'll purge, and leave sack,  
and live as a nobleman should do.

[*Exit, bearing off the Body.*

SCENE V.

*Another Part of the Field.*

*The Trumpets sound. Enter King HENRY, Prince  
HENRY, Prince JOHN, WESTMORELAND, and  
others ; with WORCESTER and VERNON, pri-  
soners.*

*K. Hen.* Thus ever did rebellion find rebuke.—  
Ill-spirited Worcester ! did we not send grace,  
Pardon, and terms of love to all of you ?  
And would'st thou turn our offers contrary ?  
Misuse the tenor of thy kinsman's trust ?  
Three knights upon our party slain to-day,  
A noble earl, and many a creature else,  
Had been alive this hour,  
If, like a Christian, thou hadst truly borne  
Betwixt our armies true intelligence.

*Wor.* What I have done, my safety urg'd me to ;  
And I embrace this fortune patiently,  
Since not to be avoided it falls on me.

*K. Hen.* Bear Worcester to the death, and Ver-  
non too ;



Other offenders we will pause upon.—

[*Exeunt WORCESTER and VERNON, guarded.*]

How goes the field?

*P. Hen.* The noble Scot, lord Douglas, when he  
saw

The fortune of the day quite turn'd from him,  
The noble Percy slain, and all his men  
Upon the foot of fear,— fled with the rest;  
And, falling from a hill, he was so bruise'd,  
That the pursuers took him. At my tent  
The Douglas is; and I beseech your grace,  
I may dispose of him.

*K. Hen.* With all my heart.

*P. Hen.* Then, brother John of Lancaster, to you  
This honourable bounty shall belong:  
Go to the Douglas, and deliver him  
Up to his pleasure, ransomeless and free:  
His valour, shown upon our crests to-day,  
Hath taught us how to cherish such high deeds,  
Even in the bosom of our adversaries.

*K. Hen.* Then this remains,— that we divide our  
power.—

You, son John, and my cousin Westmoreland,  
Towards York shall bend you, with your dearest  
speed,

To meet Northumberland, and the prelate Scroop,  
Who, as we hear, are busily in arms:  
Myself,— and you, son Harry,— will towards Wales,  
To fight with Glendower, and the earl of March.  
Rebellion in this land shall lose his sway,  
Meeting the check of such another day:  
And since this business so fair is done,  
Let us not leave till all our own be won. [*Exeunt.*]

---

**KING HENRY IV.**

**PART II.**

---

## PERSONS REPRESENTED.

---

KING HENRY THE FOURTH.

HENRY, <i>Prince of Wales, afterwards</i> <i>King Henry V.;</i> THOMAS, <i>Duke of Clarence;</i> PRINCE JOHN of <i>Lancaster, afterwards</i> (2 Henry V.) <i>Duke of Bedford;</i> PRINCE HUMPHREY of <i>Gloster, after-</i> <i>wards (2 Henry V.) Duke of</i> <i>Gloster;</i>	}	his sons.
--	---	-----------

EARL OF WARWICK;

EARL OF WESTMORELAND; GOWER; HARCOURT;	}	of the King's party.
---	---	----------------------

*Lord Chief Justice of the King's Bench.*

*A Gentleman attending on the Chief Justice.*

EARL OF NORTHUMBERLAND;

SCROOP, <i>Archbishop of York;</i> LORD MOWBRAY; LORD HASTINGS; LORD BARDOLPH; SIR JOHN COLEVILE; TRAVERS and MORTON, <i>domestics of Northum-</i> <i>land.</i>	}	connected to King.
---	---	--------------------

FALSTAFF, BARDOLPH, PISTOL, and Page.

POINS and PETO, *attendants on Prince Henry.*

SHALLOW and SILENCE, *country Justices.*

DAVY, *servant to Shallow.*

MOULDY, SHADOW, WART, FEEBLE, and BULLCASS, *recruits.*

FANG and SNARE, *sheriff's officers.*

RUMOUR. *A Porter.*

*A Dancer, speaker of the Epilogue.*

LADY NORTHUMBERLAND. LADY PERCY.

HOSTESS QUICKLY.

*Lords and other Attendants; Officers, Soldiers,  
 Messengers, Drawers, Grooms, &c.*

SCENE, England.

## INDUCTION.

---

Warkworth. *Before Northumberland's Castle.*

*Enter RUMOUR, painted full of Tongues.*

*Rum.* Open your ears ; for which of you will stop  
The vent of hearing, when loud Rumour speaks ?  
I, from the orient to the drooping west,  
Making the wind my post-horse, still unfold  
The acts commenced on this ball of earth :  
Upon my tongues continual slanders ride ;  
The which in every language I pronounce,  
Stuffing the ears of men with false reports.  
I speak of peace, while covert enmity,  
Under the smile of safety, wounds the world :  
And who but Rumour, who but only I,  
Make fearful musters, and prepar'd defence ;  
Whilst the big year, swoll'n with some other grief,  
Is thought with child by the stern tyrant war,  
And no such matter ? Rumour is a pipe  
Blown by surmises, jealousies, conjectures ;  
And of so easy and so plain a stop,  
That the blunt monster with uncounted heads,  
The still-discordant wavering multitude,  
Can play upon it. But what need I thus  
My well-known body to anatomize  
Among my household ? Why is rumour here ?  
I run before king Harry's victory ;  
Who, in a bloody field by Shrewsbury,  
Hath beaten down young Hotspur and his troops,  
Quenching the flame of bold rebellion  
Even with the rebel's blood. But what mean I  
To speak so true at first ? my office is  
To noise abroad, — that Harry Monmouth fell

Under the wrath of noble Hotspur's sword ;  
And that the king before the Douglas' rage  
Stoop'd his anointed head as low as death.  
This have I rumour'd through the peasant towns  
Between that royal field of Shrewsbury  
And this worm-eaten hold of ragged stone,  
Where Hotspur's father, old Northumberland,  
Lies crafty sick : the posts come tiring on,  
And not a man of them brings other news  
Than they have learn'd of me ; from Rumour's  
tongues  
They bring smooth comforts false, worse than true  
wrongs. [Exit.]

SECOND PART  
OF  
KING HENRY IV.

---

ACT THE FIRST.

SCENE I.

Warkworth. *Before Northumberland's Castle.*

*The Porter before the Gate ; enter Lord  
BARDOLPH.*

*L. Bard.* Who keeps the gate here, ho? —  
Where is the earl?

*Port.* What shall I say you are?

*L. Bard.* Tell thou the earl,  
That the lord Bardolph doth attend him here.

*Port.* His lordship is walk'd forth into the orchard;  
Please it your honour, knock but at the gate,  
And he himself will answer.

*Enter NORTHUMBERLAND.*

*L. Bard.* Here comes the earl.

*North.* What news, lord Bardolph? every minute  
now

Should be the father of some stratagem:<sup>1</sup>  
The times are wild; contention, like a horse  
Full of high feeding, madly hath broke loose,  
And bears down all before him.

<sup>1</sup> Important, or dreadful event.

*L. Bard.* Noble earl,  
bring you certain news from Shrewsbury.

*North.* Good, an heaven will.

*L. Bard.* As good as heart can wish :—  
The king is almost wounded to the death ;  
And, in the fortune of my lord your son,  
Prince Harry slain outright ; and both the Blunts  
Kill'd by the hand of Douglas : young Prince John,  
And Westmoreland, and Stafford, fled the field ;  
And Harry Monmouth's brawn, the hulk Sir John,  
Is prisoner to your son : O, such a day,  
So fought, so follow'd, and so fairly won,  
Came not till now, to dignify the times,  
Since Cæsar's fortunes !

*North.* How is this deriv'd ?  
Saw you the field ? came you from Shrewsbury ?

*L. Bard.* I spake with one, my lord, that came  
from thence ;

A gentleman well bred, and of good name,  
That freely render'd me these news for true.

*North.* Here comes my servant, Travers, whom  
I sent

On Tuesday last to listen after news.

*L. Bard.* My lord, I over-rode him on the way  
And he is furnish'd with no certainties,  
More than he haply may retail from me.

*Enter TRAVERS.*

*North.* Now, Travers, what good tidings come  
with you ?

*Tra.* My lord, sir John Umfrevile turn'd me  
With joyful tidings ; and, being better hors'd,  
Out-rode me. After him, came, spurring hard  
A gentleman almost foreshotten with speed,  
That stopp'd by me to breathe his bloodied horse  
He ask'd the way to Chester ; and of him  
I did demand, what news from Shrewsbury.  
He told me, that rebellion had bad luck,

And that young Harry Percy's spur was cold :  
With that he gave his able horse the head,  
And, bending forward, struck his armed heels  
Against the panting sides of his poor jade  
Up to the rowel-head ; and, starting so,  
He seem'd in running to devour the way,  
Staying no longer question.

*North.* Ha ! ——— Again.  
Said he, young Harry Percy's spur was cold ?  
Of Hotspur, coldspur ? that rebellion  
Had met ill-luck !

*L. Bard.* My lord, I'll tell you what ; —  
If my young lord your son have not the day,  
Upon mine honour, for a silken point<sup>2</sup>  
I'll give my barony : never talk of it.

*North.* Why should the gentleman, that rode by  
Travers,  
Give then such instances of loss ?

*L. Bard.* Who, he ?  
He was some hilding<sup>3</sup> fellow, that had stol'n  
The horse he rode on ; and, upon my life,  
Spoke at a venture. Look, here comes more news.

*Enter MORTON.*

*North.* Yea, this man's brow, like to a tittle-leaf,  
Foretells the nature of a tragic volume :  
So looks the strond, whereon the imperious flood  
Hath left a witness'd usurpation. ———  
Say, Morton, didst thou come from Shrewsbury.

*Mor.* I ran from Shrewsbury, my noble lord ;  
Where hateful death put on his ugliest mask,  
To fright our party.

*North.* How doth my son, and brother ?  
Thou tremblest ; and the whiteness in thy cheek  
Is apter than thy tongue to tell thy errand.  
Even such a man, so faint, so spiritless,

<sup>2</sup> *Lace tagged.*

<sup>3</sup> *Hilderling, base, cowardly.*



So dull, so dead in look, so woe-begone,  
 Drew Priam's curtain in the dead of night,  
 And would have told him, half his Troy was burn'd:  
 But Priam found the fire, ere he his tongue,  
 And I my Percy's death, ere thou report'st it.  
 This thou would'st say, — Your son did thus, and  
 thus;

Your brother thus; so fought the noble Douglas;  
 Stopping my greedy ear with their bold deeds:  
 But in the end, to stop mine ear indeed,  
 Thou hast a sigh to blow away this praise,  
 Ending with — brother, son, and all are dead.

*Mort.* Douglas is living, and your brother, yet:  
 But, for my lord your son, —

*North.* Why, he is dead  
 See, what a ready tongue suspicion hath!  
 He, that but fears the thing he would not know,  
 Hath, by instinct, knowledge from others' eyes,  
 That what he fear'd is chanced. Yet speak, *Mortor*  
 Tell thou thy earl, his divination lies;  
 And I will take it as a sweet disgrace,  
 And make thee rich for doing me such wrong.

*Mor.* You are too great to be by me gainsaid  
 Your spirit is too true, your fears too certain.

*North.* Yet, for all this, say not that Percy's d  
 I see a strange confession in thine eye:  
 Thou shak'st thy head, and hold'st it fear, or s  
 To speak a truth. If he be slain, say so:  
 The tongue offends not, that reports his death  
 And he doth sin, that doth belie the dead:  
 Not he, which says the dead is not alive.  
 Yet the first bringer of unwelcome news  
 Hath but a losing office; and his tongue  
 Sounds ever after as a sullen bell.  
 Remember'd knolling a departing friend.

*L. Bard.* I cannot think, my lord, your son

*Mor.* I am sorry, I should force you to t  
 That which I would to heaven I had not s  
 But these mine eyes saw him in bloody s

Rend'ring faint quittance<sup>4</sup>, wearied and out-breath'd,  
To Harry Monmouth: whose swift wrath beat down  
The never-daunted Percy to the earth,  
From whence with life he never more sprung up.  
In few, his death (whose spirit lent a fire  
Even to the dullest peasant in his camp,)  
Being bruited<sup>5</sup> once, took fire and heat away  
From the best-temper'd courage in his troops:  
For from his mettle was his party steel'd;  
Which once in him abated, all the rest  
Turn'd on themselves, like dull and heavy lead.  
And as the thing that's heavy in itself,  
Upon enforcement, flies with greatest speed;  
So did our men, heavy in Hotspur's loss,  
Lend to this weight such lightness with their fear,  
That arrows fled not swifter toward their aim,  
Than did our soldiers, aiming at their safety,  
Fly from the field: Then was that noble Worcester  
Too soon ta'en prisoner: and that furious Scot,  
The bloody Douglas, whose well-labouring sword  
Had three times slain the appearance of the king,  
'Gan vail<sup>6</sup> his stomach, and did grace the shame,  
Of those that turn'd their backs; and in his flight,  
Stumbling in fear, was took. The sum of all  
Is, — that the king hath won; and hath sent out  
A speedy power, to encounter you, my lord,  
Under the conduct of young Lancaster,  
And Westmoreland: this is the news at full.

*North.* For this I shall have time enough to mourn.  
In poison there is physick; and these news,  
Having been well, that would have made me sick,  
Being sick, have in some measure made me well:  
And as the wretch, whose fever-weaken'd joints,  
Like strengthless hinges, buckle under life,  
Impatient of his fit, breaks like a fire  
Out of his keepers' arms; even so my limbs,  
Weaken'd with grief, being now enrag'd with grief,

<sup>4</sup> *Return of blows.*<sup>5</sup> *Reported.*<sup>6</sup> *Let fall.*

Are thrice themselves: hence therefore, thou nice<sup>7</sup>  
crutch;

A scaly gauntlet now, with joints of steel,  
Must glove this hand: and hence, thou sickly quail<sup>8</sup>,  
Thou art a guard too wanton for the head,  
Which princes, flesh'd with conquest, aim to hit.  
Now bind my brows with iron; And approach  
The ragged'st hour that time and spite dare bring,  
To frown upon the enrag'd Northumberland!  
Let heaven kiss earth! Now let not nature's hand  
Keep the wild flood confined! let order die!  
And let this world no longer be a stage,  
To feed contention in a lingering act;  
But let one spirit of the first-born Cain  
Reign in all bosoms, that, each heart being set  
On bloody courses, the rude scene may end,  
And darkness be the burier of the dead!

*Tra.* This strained passion doth you wrong, my  
lord.

*L. Bard.* Sweet earl, divorce not wisdom from  
your honour.

*Mor.* The lives of all your loving complices  
Lean on your health; the which if you give o'er  
To stormy passion, must perforce decay.  
You cast the event of war, my noble lord,  
And summ'd the account of chance, before you  
said, —

Let us make head. It was your presumise,  
That in the dole<sup>9</sup> of blows your son might drop:  
You knew, he walk'd o'er perils, on an edge,  
More likely to fall in, than to get o'er:  
You were advis'd, his flesh was capable  
Of wounds, and scars; and that his forward spirits  
Would lift him where most trade of danger rang'd;  
Yet did you say, — Go forth; and none of this,  
Though strongly apprehended, could restrain  
The stiff borne action: What hath then befallen,

<sup>7</sup> Trifling.

<sup>8</sup> Cap.

<sup>9</sup> Distribution.

Or what hath this bold enterprise brought forth,  
More than that being which was like to be?

*L. Bard.* We all, that are engaged to this loss,  
Knew that we ventur'd on such dangerous seas,  
That, if we wrought out life, 'twas ten to one :  
And yet we ventur'd, for the gain propos'd  
Chok'd the respect of likely peril fear'd ;  
And, since we are o'erset, venture again.  
Come, we will all put forth ; body, and goods.

*Mor.* 'Tis more than time : And, my most noble  
lord,

I hear for certain and do speak the truth, —  
The gentle archbishop of York is up,  
With well-appointed powers ; he is a man,  
Who with a double surety binds his followers.  
My lord, your son had only but the corps,  
But shadows, and the shows of men, to fight ;  
For that same word, rebellion, did divide  
The action of their bodies from their souls :  
And they did fight with queasiness <sup>1</sup>, constrain'd,  
As men drink potions ; that their weapons only  
Seem'd on our side, but, for their spirits and souls,  
This word, rebellion, it hath froze them up,  
As fish are in a pond ; But now the bishop  
Turns insurrection to religion :  
Suppos'd sincere and holy in his thoughts,  
He's follow'd both with body and with mind ;  
And doth enlarge his rising with the blood  
Of fair king Richard, scrap'd from Pomfret stones.  
Derives from heaven his quarrel, and his cause ;  
Tells them, he doth bestride a bleeding land,  
Gasping for life under great Bolingbroke ;  
And more <sup>2</sup>, and less, do flock to follow him.

*North.* I knew of this before ; but, to speak truth,  
This present grief had wip'd it from my mind.  
Go in with me ; and counsel every man  
The aptest way for safety, and revenge :

<sup>1</sup> *Against their stomachs.*

<sup>2</sup> *Greater.*

Get posts, and letters, and make friends with  
speed;  
Never so few, and never yet more need. [Exeunt.]

## SCENE II.

London. *A Street.*

*Enter Sir JOHN FALSTAFF, with his Page bearing his Sword and Buckler.*

*Fal.* The brain of this foolish-compounded clay, man, is not able to invent any thing that tends to laughter, more than I invent, or is invented on me; I am not only witty in myself, but the cause that wit is in other men. I do here walk before thee, like a sow, that hath overwhelmed all her litter but one. If the prince put thee into my service for any other reason than to set me off, why then I have no judgment. I was never manned with an agate<sup>3</sup> till now: but I will set you neither in gold nor silver, but in vile apparel, and send you back again to your master for a jewel; the juvenal, the prince your master, whose chin is not yet fledged. I will sooner have a beard grow in the palm of my hand, than he shall get one on his cheek; and yet he will not stick to say his face is a face-royal: nature may finish it when she will, it is not a hair amiss yet: he may keep it still as a face-royal, for a barber shall never earn sixpence out of it; and yet he will be crowing, as if he had writ man ever since his father was a bachelor. He may keep his own grace, but he is almost out of mine, I can assure him. — What said master Dumbleton about the satin for my short cloak, and slops?

<sup>3</sup> Alluding to little figures cut in agate.

*Page.* He said, sir, you should procure him better assurance than Bardolph: he would not take his bond and yours; he liked not the security.

*Fal.* A rascally yea-forsooth knave! to bear a gentleman in hand, and then stand upon security! — The smooth-pates do now wear nothing but high shoes, and bunches of keys at their girdles; and if a man is thorough<sup>4</sup> with them in honest taking up, then they must stand upon — security. I had as lief they would put ratsbane in my mouth, as offer to stop it with security. I looked he should have sent me two-and-twenty yards of satin, as I am a true knight, and he sends me security. Well, — Where's Bardolph?

*Page.* He's gone into Smithfield, to buy your worship a horse.

*Fal.* I bought him in Paul's, and he'll buy me a horse in Smithfield: an I could get me but a wife in the stews, I were manned, horsed, and wived.<sup>5</sup>

*Enter the Lord Chief Justice, and an Attendant.*

*Page.* Sir, here comes the nobleman that committed the prince for striking him about Bardolph.

*Fal.* Wait close, I will not see him.

*Ch. Just.* What's he that goes there?

*Atten.* Falstaff, an't please your lordship.

*Ch. Just.* He that was in question for the robbery?

*Atten.* He, my lord: but he hath since done good service at Shrewsbury; and, as I hear, is now going with some charge to the lord John of Lancaster.

*Ch. Just.* What, to York? Call him back again.

*Atten.* Sir John Falstaff!

*Fal.* Boy, tell him, I am deaf.

*Page.* You must speak louder, my master is deaf.

<sup>4</sup> In their debt.

<sup>5</sup> Alluding to an old proverb.

*Ch. Just.* I am sure, he is, to the hearing of any thing good. — Go, pluck him by the elbow; I must speak with him.

*Atten.* Sir John, —

*Fal.* What! a young knave, and beg! Is there not wars? is there not employment? Doth not the king lack subjects? do not the rebels need soldiers? Though it be a shame to be on any side but one, it is worse shame to beg than to be on the worse side, were it worse than the name of rebellion can tell how to make it.

*Atten.* You mistake me, sir.

*Fal.* Why, sir, did I say you were an honest man? setting my knighthood and my soldiership aside, I had lied in my throat if I had said so.

*Atten.* I pray you, sir, then set your knighthood and your soldiership aside; and give me leave to tell you, you lie in your throat, if you say I am any other than an honest man.

*Fal.* I give thee leave to tell me so! I lay aside that which grows to me! If thou get'st any leave of me, hang me; if thou takest leave, thou wert better be hanged: You hunt-counter<sup>6</sup>, hence! avaunt!

*Atten.* Sir, my lord would speak with you.

*Ch. Just.* Sir John Falstaff, a word with you.

*Fal.* My good lord! give your lordship good time of day. I am glad to see your lordship abroad: I heard say, your lordship was sick: I hope, your lordship goes abroad by advice. Your lordship, though not clean past your youth, hath yet some smack of age in you, some relish of the saltiness of time; and I most humbly beseech your lordship, to have a reverend care of your health.

*Ch. Just.* Sir John, I sent for you before your expedition to Shrewsbury.

<sup>6</sup> A catch-pole or bailiff.

*Fal.* An't please your lordship, I hear, his majesty is returned with some discomfort from Wales.

*Ch. Just.* I talk not of his majesty: — You would not come when I sent for you.

*Fal.* And I hear moreover, his highness is fallen into this same apoplexy.

*Ch. Just.* Well, heaven mend him ! I pray, let me speak with you.

*Fal.* This apoplexy is, as I take it, a kind of lethargy, an't please your lordship; a kind of sleeping in the blood, a tingling.

*Ch. Just.* What tell you me of it? be it as it is.

*Fal.* It has its original from much grief; from study, and perturbation of the brain: I have read the cause of his effects in Galen; it is a kind of deafness.

*Ch. Just.* I think, you are fallen into the disease; for you hear not what I say to you.

*Fal.* Very well, my lord, very well: rather, an't please you, it is the disease of not listening, the malady of not marking, that I am troubled withal.

*Ch. Just.* To punish you by the heels, would amend the attention of your ears; and I care not, if I do become your physician.

*Fal.* I am as poor as Job, my lord; but not so patient; your lordship may minister the potion of imprisonment to me, in respect of poverty; but how I should be your patient to follow your prescriptions, the wise may make some dram of a scruple, or, indeed, a scruple itself.

*Ch. Just.* I sent for you, when there were matters against you for your life, to come speak with me.

*Fal.* As I was then advised by my learned counsel in the laws of this land-service, I did not come.

*Ch. Just.* Well, the truth is, sir John, you live in great infamy.

*Fal.* He that buckles him in my belt, cannot live in less.



*Ch. Just.* Your means are very slender, and your waste is great.

*Fal.* I would it were otherwise; I would my means were greater, and my waist slenderer.

*Ch. Just.* You have misled the youthful prince.

*Fal.* The young prince hath misled me: I am the fellow with the great belly, and he my dog.

*Ch. Just.* Well, I am loath to gall a new-healed wound: your day's service at Shrewsbury hath a little gilded over your night's exploit on Gad's-hill: you may thank the unquiet time for your quiet o'erposting that action.

*Fal.* My lord?

*Ch. Just.* But since all is well, keep it so: wake not a sleeping wolf.

*Fal.* To wake a wolf, is as bad as to smell a fox.

*Ch. Just.* What! you are as a candle, the better part burnt out.

*Fal.* A wassel candle<sup>7</sup>, my lord: all tallow: if I did say of wax, my growth would approve the truth.

*Ch. Just.* There is not a white hair on your face, but should have his effect of gravity.

*Fal.* His effect of gravy, gravy, gravy.

*Ch. Just.* You follow the young prince up and down, like his ill angel.

*Fal.* Not so, my lord; your ill angel<sup>8</sup> is light: but, I hope, he that looks upon me, will take me without weighing: and yet, in some respects, I grant, I cannot go, I cannot tell<sup>9</sup>: Virtue is of so little regard in these coster-monger times, that true valour is turned bear-herd: Pregnancy<sup>1</sup> is made a tapster, and hath his quick wit wasted in giving reckonings: all the other gifts appertinent to man, as the malice of this age shapes them, are not worth a gooseberry. You, that are old, consider not the capacities of us that are young: you measure the

<sup>7</sup> A large candle for a feast.

<sup>9</sup> Pass current.

<sup>8</sup> The coin called an angel.

<sup>1</sup> Readiness.

heat of our livers with the bitterness of your galls; and we that are in the vaward<sup>2</sup> of our youth, I must confess, are wags too.

*Ch. Just.* Do you set down your name in the scroll of youth, that are written down old with all the characters of age? Have you not a moist eye? a dry hand? a yellow cheek? a white beard? a decreasing leg? an increasing body? Is not your voice broken? your wind short? your chin double? your wit single? and every part about you blasted with antiquity? and will you yet call yourself young? Fye, fye, fye, sir John!

*Fal.* My lord, I was born about three of the clock in the afternoon, with a white head, and something a round belly. For my voice,—I have lost it with hollaing, and singing of anthems. To approve my youth further, I will not: the truth is, I am only old in judgment and understanding; and he that will caper with me for a thousand marks, let him lend me the money, and have at him. For the box o'the ear that the prince gave you,—he gave it like a rude prince, and you took it like a sensible lord. I have checked him for it; and the young lion repents: marry, not in ashes, and sack-cloth; but in new silk, and old sack.

*Ch. Just.* Well, heaven send the prince a better companion!

*Fal.* Heaven send the companion a better prince! I cannot rid my hands of him.

*Ch. Just.* Well, the king hath severed you and prince Harry: I hear, you are going with lord John of Lancaster, against the archbishop, and the earl of Northumberland.

*Fal.* Yea; I thank your pretty sweet wit for it. But look you pray, all you that kiss my lady peace at home, that our armies join not in a hot day! for, I take but two shirts out with me, and I mean not

<sup>2</sup> Forepart.

to sweat extraordinarily: if it be a hot day, an I brandish any thing but my bottle, I would I might never spit white again. There is not a dangerous action can peep out his head, but I am thrust upon it: Well, I cannot last ever: But it was always yet the trick of our English nation, if they have a good thing, to make it too common. If you will needs say, I am an old man, you should give me rest. I would to heaven, my name were not so terrible to the enemy as it is. I were better to be eaten to death with rust, than to be scoured to nothing with perpetual motion.

*Ch. Just.* Well, be honest, be honest; And heaven bless your expedition!

*Fal.* Will your lordship lend me a thousand pound, to furnish me forth?

*Ch. Just.* Not a penny, not a penny; you are too impatient to bear crosses. Fare you well: Commend me to my cousin Westmoreland.

[*Exeunt Chief Justice and Attendant.*]

*Fal.* If I do, fillip me with a three man beetle.<sup>3</sup>—  
Boy! —

*Page.* Sir?

*Fal.* What money is in my purse?

*Page.* Seven groats and two-pence.

*Fal.* I can get no remedy against this consumption of the purse: borrowing only lingers and lingers it out, but the disease is incurable.—Go bear this letter to my lord of Lancaster; this to the prince; this to the earl of Westmoreland; and this to old mistress Ursula, whom I have weekly sworn to marry since I perceived the first white hair on my chin: About it; you know where to find me. [*Exit Page.*]  
This gout plays the rogue with my great toe. It is no matter if I do halt; I have the wars for my colour, and my pension shall seem the more reasonable:

<sup>3</sup> A large wooden hammer, so heavy as to require three men to wield it.

A good wit will make use of any thing; I will turn diseases to commodity.<sup>4</sup> [Exit.

## SCENE III.

York. *A Room in the Archbishop's Palace.*

*Enter the Archbishop of York, the Lords HASTINGS, MOWBRAY, and BARDOLPH.*

*Arch.* Thus have you heard our cause, and known our means;

And, my most noble friends, I pray you all,  
Speak plainly your opinions of our hopes: —  
And first, lord marshal, what say you to it?

*Mowb.* I well allow the occasion of our arms;  
But gladly would be better satisfied,  
How, in our means, we should advance ourselves  
To look with forehead bold and big enough  
Upon the power and puissance of the king.

*Hast.* Our present musters grow upon the file  
To five and twenty thousand men of choice;  
And our supplies live largely in the hope  
Of great Northumberland, whose bosom burns  
With an incensed fire of injuries.

*L. Bard.* The question then, lord Hastings, standeth thus; —

Whether our present five and twenty thousand  
May hold up head without Northumberland.

*Hast.* With him, we may.

*L. Bard.* Ay, marry, there's the point:  
But if without him we be thought too feeble,  
My judgment is, we should not step too far  
Till we had his assistance by the hand:  
For, in a theme so bloody-fac'd as this,  
Conjecture, expectation, and surmise  
Of aids uncertain, should not be admitted.

<sup>4</sup> Profit.

*Arch.* 'Tis very true, lord Bardolph ; for, indeed,  
It was young Hotspur's case at Shrewsbury.

*L. Bard.* It was, my lord ; who lined himself with  
hope,  
Eating the air on promise of supply,  
Flattering himself with project of a power  
Much smaller than the smallest of his thoughts :  
And so with great imagination,  
Proper to madmen, led his powers to death,  
And, winking, leap'd into destruction.

*Hast.* But, by your leave, it never yet did hurt,  
'To lay down likelihoods, and forms of hope.

*L. Bard.* Yes, in this present quality of war ;—  
Indeed the instant action, (a cause on foot,)  
Lives so in hope, as in an early spring  
We see the appearing buds ; which, to prove fruit,  
Hope gives not so much warrant, as despair,  
That frosts will bite them. When we mean to build,  
We first survey the plot, then draw the model,  
And when we see the figure of the house,  
Then must we rate the cost of the erection ;  
Which if we find outweighs ability,  
What do we then, but draw anew the model  
In fewer offices ; or, at least, desist  
'To build at all ? Much more, in this great work,  
(Which is, almost, to pluck a kingdom down,  
And set another up,) should we survey  
The plot of situation, and the model ;  
Consent<sup>d</sup> upon a sure foundation ;  
Question surveyors ; know our own estate,  
How able such a work to undergo,  
To weigh against his opposite ; or else,  
We fortify in paper, and in figures,  
Using the names of men, instead of men :  
Like one, that draws the model of a house  
Beyond his power to build it ; who, half through,  
Gives o'er, and leaves his part-created cost

A naked subject to the weeping clouds,  
And waste for churlish winter's tyranny.

*Hast.* Grant, that our hopes (yet likely of fair birth)

Should be still-born, and that we now possess'd  
The utmost man of expectation ;

I think, we are a body strong enough,  
Even as we are, to equal with the king.

*L. Bard.* What ! is the king but five and twenty thousand ?

*Hast.* To us, no more ; nay, not so much, lord Bardolph.

For his divisions, as the times do brawl,  
Are in three heads : one power against the French,  
And one against Glendower ; perforce, a third  
Must take up us : So is the unfirm king  
In three divided ; and his coffers sound  
With hollow poverty and emptiness.

*Arch.* That he should draw his several strengths together,  
And come against us in full puissance,  
Need not be dreaded.

*Hast.* If he should do so,  
He leaves his back unarm'd, the French and Welsh  
Baying him at the heels : never fear that.

*L. Bard.* Who, is it like, should lead his forces hither ?

*Hast.* The duke of Lancaster, and Westmoreland :  
Against the Welsh, himself, and Harry Monmouth ;  
But who is substituted 'gainst the French,  
I have no certain notice.

*Arch.* Let us on ;  
And publish the occasion of our arms.  
The commonwealth is sick of their own choice,  
Their over-greedy love hath surfeited : —  
An habitation giddy and unsure  
Hath he, that buildeth on the vulgar heart.  
O thou fond many<sup>6</sup> ! with what loud applause

<sup>6</sup> Foolish multitude.

Didst thou beat heaven with blessing Bolingbroke,  
 Before he was what thou would'st have him be?  
 And being now trimm'd<sup>7</sup> in thine own desires,  
 They that, when Richard liv'd, would have him die,  
 Are now become enamour'd on his grave:  
 Thou, that threw'st dust upon his goodly head,  
 When through proud London he came sighing on  
 After the admired heels of Bolingbroke,  
 Cry'st now, *O, earth, yield us that king again,*  
*And take thou this!* O thoughts of men accurst!  
 Past, and to come, seem best; things present, worst.

*Mowb.* Shall we go draw our numbers, and set  
 on?

*Hast.* We are time's subjects, and time bids be  
 gone. [Exeunt.]

## ACT THE SECOND.

### SCENE I.

London. *A Street.*

*Enter Hostess; FANG, and his Boy, with her; &  
 SNARE following.*

*Host.* Master Fang, have you entered the act?  
*Fang.* It is entered.

*Host.* Where is your yeoman?<sup>8</sup> Is it a lusty  
 man? will a' stand to't?

*Fang.* Sirrah, where's Snare?

*Host.* O, good master Snare.

*Snare.* Here, here.

*Fang.* Snare, we must arrest sir John Falst

<sup>7</sup> Dress'd.

<sup>8</sup> Follower.

*Host.* Yea, good master Snare ; I have entered him and all.

*Snare.* It may chance cost some of us our lives, for he will stab.

*Host.* Alas the day ! take heed of him ; in good faith, a' cares not what mischief he doth, if his weapon be out : he will foin<sup>9</sup> like any devil ; he will spare neither man, woman, nor child.

*Fang.* If I can close with him, I care not for his thrust.

*Host.* I'll be at your elbow.

*Fang.* An I but fist him once ; an a' come but within my vice.<sup>1</sup>

*Host.* I am undone by his going ; I warrant you, he's an infinitive thing upon my score : — Good master Fang, hold him sure ; — good master Snare, let him not escape. He comes continually to Pie-corner, and he's indited to dinner to the Lubbar's Head in Lumbert-street, to master Smooth's the silkman : I pray ye, since my exion is entered, and my case so openly known to the world, let him be brought in to his answer. A hundred mark is a long loan for a poor lone woman to bear : and I have borne, and borne, and borne ; and have been fubbed off, and fubbed off, and fubbed off, from this day to that day, that it is a shame to be thought on. There is no honesty in such dealing ; unless a woman should be made an ass, and a beast to bear every knave's wrong. —

*Enter Sir JOHN FALSTAFF, Page, and BARDOLPH.*

Yonder he comes ; and that arrant malmsey-nose knave, Bardolph, with him. Do your offices, do your offices, master Fang, and master Snare : do me, do me, do me your offices.

<sup>9</sup> Thrust.

<sup>1</sup> Grasp.



*Fal.* How now? whose mare's dead? what's the matter?

*Fang.* Sir John, I arrest you at the suit of mistress Quickly.

*Fal.* Away, varlets! — Draw, Bardolph; cut me off the villain's head; throw the quean in the channel.

*Host.* Throw me in the channel? I'll throw thee in the channel. Wilt thou? wilt thou? thou rogue! — Murder, murder! O thou honey-suckle<sup>2</sup> villain! wilt thou kill the king's officers? O thou honey-seed<sup>3</sup> rogue! thou art a honey-seed; a man-queller, and a woman-queller.

*Fal.* Keep them off, Bardolph.

*Fang.* A rescue! a rescue!

*Host.* Good people, bring a rescue or two.— Thou wo't, wo't thou? thou wo't, wo't thou? do, do, thou rogue! do, thou hemp-seed!

*Fal.* Away, you scullion! you rampallian! you fustilarian!

*Enter the Lord Chief Justice, attended.*

*Ch. Just.* What's the matter? keep the peace here, ho!

*Host.* Good my lord, be good to me! I beseech you!

*Ch. Just.* How now, sir John? what, are you brawling here?  
Doth this become your place, your time, and business?

You should have been well on your way to York.— Stand from him, fellow; Wherefore hang'st thou on him?

*Host.* O my most worshipful lord, an't please your grace, I am a poor widow of Eastcheap. and he is arrested at my suit.

<sup>2</sup> Homicidal.

<sup>3</sup> Homicide.

*Ch. Just.* For what sum?

*Host.* It is more than for some, my lord; it is for all, all I have: he hath eaten me out of house and home; he hath put all my substance into that fat belly of his.

*Ch. Just.* How comes this, sir John? Fye! what man of good temper would endure this tempest of exclamation? Are you not ashamed, to enforce a poor widow to so rough a course to come by her own?

*Fal.* What is the gross sum that I owe thee?

*Host.* Marry, if thou wert an honest man, thyself, and the money too. Thou didst swear to me upon a parcel-gilt<sup>4</sup> goblet, sitting in my Dolphin-chamber, at the round table, by a sea-coal fire, upon Wednesday in Whitsun-week, when the prince broke thy head for liking his father to a singing-man of Windsor; thou didst swear to me then, as I was washing thy wound, to marry me, and make me my lady thy wife. Canst thou deny it? Did not goodwife Keech, the butcher's wife, come in then, and call me gossip Quickly? coming in to borrow a mess of vinegar; telling us, she had a good dish of prawns; whereby thou didst desire to eat some; whereby I told thee, they were ill for a green wound? And didst thou not, when she was gone down stairs, desire me to be no more so familiarity with such poor people: saying, that ere long they should call me madam? And didst thou not kiss me, and bid me fetch thee thirty shillings? I put thee now to thy book-oath; deny it, if thou canst.

*Fal.* My lord, this is a poor mad soul; and she says, up and down the town, that her eldest son is like you; she hath been in good case, and, the truth is, poverty hath distracted her. But for these

<sup>4</sup> Party gilt.

foolish officers, I beseech you, I may have redress against them.

*Ch. Just.* Sir John, sir John, I am well acquainted with your manner of wrenching the true cause the false way. It is not a confident brow, nor the throng of words that come with such more than impudent sauciness from you, can thrust me from a level consideration; you have, as it appears to me, practised upon the easy-yielding spirit of this woman, and made her serve your uses both in purse and person.

*Host.* Yea, in troth, my lord.

*Ch. Just.* Pr'ythee, peace: — Pay her the debt you owe her, and unpay the villainy you have done with her; the one you may do with sterling money, and the other with current repentance.

*Fal.* My lord, I will not undergo this <sup>sneap</sup> without reply. You call honourable boldness, impudent sauciness: if a man will make court'sy, and say nothing, he is virtuous: No, my lord, my humble duty remembered, I will not be your suitor; I say to you, I do desire deliverance from these officers, being upon hasty employment in the king's affairs.

*Ch. Just.* You speak as having power to do wrong: but answer in the effect of your reputation<sup>6</sup>, and satisfy the poor woman.

*Fal.* Come hither, hostess. [*Taking her aside.*]

*Enter GOWER.*

*Ch. Just.* Now, master Gower; What news?

*Gow.* The king, my lord, and Harry prince of Wales.

Are near at hand! the rest the paper tells.

*Fal.* As I am a gentleman; —

*Host.* Nay, you said so before.

<sup>5</sup> Snub, check.

<sup>6</sup> Suitably to your character.

*Fal.* As I am a gentleman ; — Come, no more words of it.

*Host.* By this heavenly ground I tread on, I must be fain to pawn both my plate, and the tapestry of my dining-chambers.

*Fal.* Glasses, glasses, is the only drinking : and for thy walls, — a pretty slight drollery, or the story of the prodigal, or the German hunting in water-work, is worth a thousand of these bed-hangings, and these fly-bitten tapestries. Let it be ten pound, if thou canst. Come, an it were not for thy humours, there is not a better wench in England. Go, wash thy face, and draw<sup>6</sup> thy action : Come, thou must not be in this humour with me ; dost not know me ? Come, come, I know thou wast set on to this.

*Host.* Pray thee, sir John, let it be but twenty nobles ; i'faith I am loath to pawn my plate, in good earnest, la.

*Fal.* Let it alone ; I'll make other shift ; you'll be a fool still.

*Host.* Well, you shall have it, though I pawn my gown. I hope you'll come to supper : you'll pay me all together ?

*Fal.* Will I live ? — Go, with her, with her ; [To BARDOLPH.] hook on, hook on.

[*Exeunt* Hostess, BARDOLPH, Officers, and Page.

*Ch. Just.* I have heard better news.

*Fal.* What's the news, my good lord ?

*Ch. Just.* Where lay the king last night ?

*Gow.* At Basingstoke, my lord.

*Fal.* I hope, my lord, all's well : What's the news, my lord ?

*Ch. Just.* Come all his forces back ?

*Gow.* No ; fifteen hundred foot, five hundred horse,

<sup>6</sup> Withdraw.

Are march'd up to my lord of Lancaster,  
Against Northumberland, and the archbishop.

*Fal.* Comes the king back from Wales, my noble lord?

*Ch. Just.* You shall have letters of me presently:  
Come, go along with me, good master Gower.

*Fal.* My lord!

*Ch. Just.* What's the matter?

*Fal.* Master Gower, shall I entreat you with me to dinner?

*Gow.* I must wait upon my good lord here: I thank you, good sir John.

*Ch. Just.* Sir John, you loiter here too long, being you are to take soldiers up in counties as you go.

*Fal.* Will you sup with me, master Gower?

*Ch. Just.* What foolish master taught you these manners, sir John.

*Fal.* Master Gower, if they become me not, he was a fool that taught them me.—This is the right fencing grace, my lord; tap for tap, and so part fair.

*Ch. Just.* Now heaven lighten thee! thou art a great fool. [Exeunt.]

#### SCENE II.

#### *Another Street.*

*Enter Prince HENRY and POINS.*

*P. Hen.* Trust me, I am exceeding weary.

*Poins.* Is it come to that? I had thought, weariness durst not have attached one of so high blood.

*P. Hen.* 'Faith, it does me; though it discolours the complexion of my greatness to acknowledge it. Doth it not show vilely in me to desire small beer?

*Poins.* Why, a prince should not be so loosely studied, as to remember so weak a composition.

*P. Hen.* Belike then, my appetite was not princely got; for, by my troth, I do now remember the poor creature, small beer. But, indeed, these humble considerations make me out of love with my greatness. What a disgrace is it to me, to remember thy name? or to know thy face to-morrow? or to take note how many pair of silk stockings thou hast; viz. these, and those that were the peach-coloured ones?

*Poins.* How ill it follows, after you have laboured so hard, you should talk so idly? Tell me, how many good young princes would do so, their fathers being so sick as yours at this time is?

*P. Hen.* Shall I tell thee one thing, Poins?

*Poins.* Yes; and let it be an excellent good thing.

*P. Hen.* It shall serve among wits of no higher breeding than thine.

*Poins.* Go to; I stand the push of your one thing that you will tell.

*P. Hen.* Why, I tell thee, — it is not meet that I should be sad, now my father is sick: albeit I could tell to thee, (as to one it pleases me, for fault of a better, to call my friend,) I could be sad, and sad indeed too.

*Poins.* Very hardly upon such a subject.

*P. Hen.* By this hand, thou think'st me as far in the devil's books as thou and Falstaff, for obduracy and persistency: Let the end try the man. But I tell thee, — my heart bleeds inwardly, that my father is so sick: and keeping such vile company as thou art, hath in reason taken from me all ostentation of sorrow.

*Poins.* The reason?

*P. Hen.* What wouldst thou think of me, if I should weep?

*Poins.* I would think thee a most princely hypocrite.

*P. Hen.* It would be every man's thought: and thou art a blessed fellow, to think as every man thinks; never a man's thought in the world keeps the road-way better than thine: every man would think me a hypocrite indeed. And what accites your most worshipful thought, to think so?

*Poins.* Why, because you have been so much engrafted to Falstaff.

*P. Hen.* And to thee.

*Poins.* By this light, I am well spoken of, I can hear it with my own ears: the worst that they can say of me is, that I am a second brother, and that I am a proper fellow of my hands; and those two things, I confess, I cannot help. By the mass, here comes Bardolph.

*P. Hen.* And the boy that I gave Falstaff: he had him from me Christian; and look, if the fat villain have not transformed him ape.

*Enter BARDOLPH and Page.*

*Bard.* 'Save your grace.

*P. Hen.* And yours, most noble Bardolph.

*Bard.* Come, you virtuous ass, [*To the Page.*] you bashful fool, must you be blushing? wherefore blush you now?

*Page.* He called me even now, my lord, through a red lattice, and I could discern no part of his face from the window: at last, I spied his eyes.

*P. Hen.* Hath not the boy profited?

*Bard.* Away, you upright rabbit, away!

*Page.* Away, you rascally Althea's dream, away!

*P. Hen.* Instruct us boy: What dream, boy?

*Page.* Marry, my lord, Althea dreamed she was delivered of a fire-brand, and therefore I call him her dream.

*P. Hen.* A crown's worth of good interpretation.  
—There it is, boy. [Gives him money.]

*Poins.* O, that this good blossom could be kept  
from cankers!—Well, there is sixpence to preserve  
thee.

*Bard.* An you do not make him be hanged among  
you, the gallows shall have wrong:

*P. Hen.* And how doth thy master, Bardolph?

*Bard.* Well, my lord. He heard of your grace's  
coming to town; there's a letter for you.

*Poins.* Delivered with good respect.—And how  
doth the martlemas<sup>7</sup>, your master?

*Bard.* In bodily health, sir.

*Poins.* Marry, the immortal part needs a phy-  
sician; but that moves not him; though that be  
sick, it dies not.

*P. Hen.* I do allow this wen to be as familiar  
with me as my dog: and he holds his place; for,  
look you, how he writes.

*Poins.* [Reads.] John Falstaff, *knight*.—Every  
man must know that, as often as he has occasion to  
name himself. Even like those that are kin to the  
king; for they never prick their finger, but they  
say, *There is some of the king's blood spilt: How  
comes that?* says he, that takes upon him not to  
conceive: the answer is as ready as a borrower's  
cap; *I am the king's poor cousin, sir.*

*P. Hen.* Nay, they will be kin to us, or they will  
fetch it from Japhet. But the letter:—

*Poins.* Sir John Falstaff, *knight, to the son of the  
king, nearest his father, Harry Prince of Wales,  
greeting.*—Why, this is a certificate.

*P. Hen.* Peace!

*Poins.* *I will imitate the honourable Roman in  
brevity:—he sure means brevity in breath; short-  
winded.—I commend me to thee, I commend thee,  
and I leave thee.\* Be not too familiar with Poins;*

<sup>7</sup> Martinmass; St. Martin's day is Nov. 11.



*for he misuses thy favours so much, that he swears, thou art to marry his sister Nell. Repent at idle times as thou mayst, and so farewell.*

*Thine, by yea and no, (which is as much as to say, as thou usest him,) Jack Falstaff, with my familiars; John, with my brothers and sisters; and sir John with all Europe.*

My lord, I will steep this letter in sack, and make him eat it.

*P. Hen.* That's to make him eat twenty of his words. But do you use me thus, Ned? must I marry your sister?

*Poins.* May the girl have no worse fortune! but I never said so.

*P. Hen.* Well, thus we play the fools with the times; and the spirits of the wise sit in the clouds, and mock us.—Is your master here in London?

*Bard.* Yes, my lord.

*P. Hen.* Where sups he? doth the old boar feed in the old frank?\*

*Bard.* At the old place, my lord; in Eastcheap.

*P. Hen.* Shall we steal upon him, Ned, at supper?

*Poins.* I am your shadow, my lord; I'll follow you.

*P. Hen.* Sirrah, you boy,—and Bardolph;—no word to your master that I am yet come to town: There's for your silence.

*Bard.* I have no tongue, sir.

*Page.* And for mine, sir;—I will govern it.

*P. Hen.* Fare ye well; go. [*Exeunt BARDOLPH and Page.*] How might we see Falstaff bestow himself to-night in his true colours, and not ourselves be seen?

*Poins.* Put on two leather jerkins, and aprons, and wait upon him at his table as drawers.

*P. Hen.* From a god to a bull? a heavy descension! it was Jove's case. From a prince to a apprentice? a low transformation! that shall be mine: for, in every thing, the purpose must weigh with the folly.

*Enter PETO.*

Peto, how now? what news?

*Peto.* The king, your father is at Westminster;  
And there are twenty weak and wearied posts,  
Come from the north: and, as I came along,  
I met, and overtook, a dozen captains,  
Bare-headed, sweating, knocking at the taverns,  
And asking every one for sir John Falstaff.

*P. Hen.* By heavens, Poins, I feel me much to blame,  
So idly to profane the precious time:  
When tempest of commotion, like the south,  
Borne with black vapour, doth begin to melt,  
And drop upon our bare unarmed heads.  
Give me my sword and cloak: — and, Poins, good night.  
[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III.

Warkworth. *Before the Castle.*

*Enter NORTHUMBERLAND, Lady NORTHUMBERLAND, and Lady PERCY.*

*North.* I pray thee, loving wife, and gentle daughter,  
Give even way unto my rough affairs:  
Put not you on the visage of the times,  
And be, like them, to Percy troublesome.

*Lady N.* I have given over, I will speak no more:  
Do what you will; your wisdom be your guide.

*North.* Alas, sweet wife, my honour is at pawn;  
And, but my going, nothing can redeem it.

*Lady P.* O, yet, for heaven's sake, go not to  
these wars!

The time was, father, that you broke your word,  
When you were more endear'd to it than now;  
When your own Percy, when my heart's dear Harry,  
Threw many a northward look to see his father  
Bring up his powers; but he did long in vain.  
Who then persuaded you to stay at home?

There were two honours lost; yours, and your son's.  
For yours,—may heavenly glory brighten it!

For his—it stuck upon him, as the sun  
In the grey vault of heaven: and by his light,  
Did all the chivalry of England move  
To do brave acts; he was, indeed, the glass  
Wherein the noble youth did dress themselves.  
He had no legs, that practis'd not his gait:  
And speaking thick, which nature made his blemish,  
Became the accents of the valiant:

For those that could speak low, and tardily,  
Would turn their own perfection to abuse,  
To seem like him: So, that, in speech, in gait,  
In diet, in affections of delight,  
In military rules, humours of blood,  
He was the mark and glass, copy and book,  
That fashioned others. And him,—O wondrous  
him!

O miracle of men!—him did you leave,  
(Second to none, unseconded by you.)  
To look upon the hideous god of war  
In disadvantage; to abide a field,  
Where nothing but the sound of Hotspur's name  
Did seem defensible, so you left him:  
Never, O never, do his ghost the wrong,  
To hold your honour more precise and nice  
With others, than with him; let them alone;  
The marshal, and the archbishop, are strong:  
Had my sweet Harry had but half their numbers.

To-day might I, hanging on Hotspur's neck,  
Have talk'd of Monmouth's grave.

*North.* Beshrew your heart,  
Fair daughter ! you do draw my spirits from me,  
With new lamenting ancient oversights.  
But I must go, and meet with danger there ;  
Or it will seek me in another place,  
And find me worse provided.

*Lady N.* O, fly to Scotland,  
Till that the nobles, and the armed commons,  
Have of their puissance made a little taste.

*Lady P.* If they get ground and vantage of the  
king,  
Then join you with them, like a rib of steel,  
To make strength stronger : but, for all our loves,  
First let them try themselves : So did your son ;  
He was so suffer'd ; So came I a widow ;  
And never shall have length of life enough,  
To rain upon remembrance with mine eyes,  
That it may grow and sprout as high as heaven,  
For recordation to my noble husband.

*North.* Come, come, go in with me : 'tis with my  
mind,  
As with the tide swell'd up unto its height,  
That makes a still-stand, running either way.  
Fain would I go to meet the archbishop,  
But many thousand reasons hold me back : —  
I will resolve for Scotland ; there am I,  
Till time and vantage crave my company.

[*Exeunt.*

## ACT THE THIRD.

## SCENE I.

*A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter King HENRY in his Night-gown, with a Page.*

*K. Hen.* Go, call the earls of Surrey and of Warwick;

But, ere they come, bid them o'er-read these letters,

And well consider of them: Make good speed.—  
[*Exit Page.*]

How many thousand of my poorest subjects  
Are at this hour asleep!—Sleep, gentle sleep,  
Nature's soft nurse, how have I frighted thee,  
That thou no more wilt weigh my eyelids down,  
And steep my senses in forgetfulness?  
Why rather, sleep, liest thou in smoky cribs,  
Upon uneasy pallets stretching thee,  
And hush'd with buzzing night-flies to thy slumber;  
Than in the perfum'd chambers of the great,  
Under the canopies of costly state,  
And lull'd with sounds of sweetest melody.  
O thou dull god, why liest thou with the vile,  
In loathsome beds; and leav'st the kingly couch,  
A watch-case, or a common 'larum bell?  
Wilt thou upon the high and giddy mast  
Seal up the ship-boy's eyes, and rock his brains  
In cradle of the rude imperious surge;  
And in the visitation of the winds  
Who take the ruffian billows by the top,  
Curling their monstrous heads, and hanging them  
With deaf'ning clamours in the slippery clouds,

That, with the hurly<sup>9</sup>, death itself awakes?  
Canst thou, O partial sleep! give thy repose  
To the wet sea-boy in an hour so rude;  
And, in the calmest and most stillest night,  
With all appliances and means to boot,  
Deny it to a king? Then, happy low<sup>1</sup>, lie down!  
Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.

*Enter WARWICK and SURREY.*

*War.* Many good morrows to your majesty!

*K. Hen.* Is it good morrow, lords?

*War.* 'Tis one o'clock, and past.

*K. Hen.* Why then, good morrow to you all, my lords.

Have you read o'er the letters that I sent you?

*War.* We have, my liege.

*K. Hen.* Then you perceive, the body of our kingdom.

How foul it is; what rank diseases grow,  
And with what danger, near the heart of it.

*War.* It is but as a body, yet distemper'd;  
Which to his former strength may be restor'd,  
With good advice, and little medicine: —  
My lord Northumberland will soon be cool'd.

*K. Hen.* O heaven! that one might read the book  
of fate;

And see the revolution of the times  
Make mountains level, and the continent  
(Weary of solid firmness,) melt itself  
Into the sea! and, other times, to see  
The beachy girdle of the ocean  
Too wide for Neptune's hips; how chances mock,  
And changes fill the cup of alteration  
With divers liquors! O, if this were seen,  
The happiest youth, —viewing his progress through,  
What perils past, what crosses to ensue, —

<sup>9</sup> Noise.

<sup>1</sup> Those in lowly situations.

Would shut the book, and sit him down and die.  
 'Tis not ten years gone,  
 Since Richard, and Northumberland, great friends,  
 Did feast together, and, in two years after,  
 Were they at wars : It is but eight years, since  
 This Percy was the man nearest my soul ;  
 Who like a brother toil'd in my affairs,  
 And laid his love and life under my foot :  
 Yea, for my sake, even to the eyes of Richard,  
 Gave him defiance. But which of you was by,  
 (You, cousin Nevil, as I may remember.)

[To WARWICK.]

When Richard, — with his eye brimfull of tears,  
 Then check'd and rated by Northumberland, —  
 Did speak these words, now prov'd a prophecy ?  
*Northumberland, thou ladder, by the which*  
*My cousin Bolingbroke ascends my throne ; —*  
 Though then, heaven knows, I had no such intent :

But that necessity so bow'd the state,  
 That I and greatness were compell'd to kiss : —  
*The time shall come, thus did he follow it,*  
*The time will come, that foul sin, gathering head,*  
*Shall break into corruption : — so went on,*  
 Foretelling this same time's condition,  
 And the division of our amity.

*War.* There is a history in all men's lives,  
 Figuring the nature of the times deceas'd :  
 The which observ'd, a man may prophesy,  
 With a near aim, of the main chance of things  
 As yet not come to life ; which in their seeds,  
 And weak beginnings, lie intresured.  
 Such things become the hatch and brood of time ;  
 And, by the necessary form of this,  
 King Richard might create a perfect guess,  
 That great Northumberland, then false to him,  
 Would, of that seed, grow to a greater falseness ;  
 Which should not find a ground to root upon,  
 Unless on you.

*K. Hen.* Are these things then necessities ?  
Then let us meet them like necessities : —  
And that same word even now cries out on us :  
They say, the bishop and Northumberland  
Are fifty thousand strong.

*War.* It cannot be, my lord ;  
Rumour doth double, like the voice and echo,  
The numbers of the fear'd : — Please it your grace,  
To go to bed ; upon my life, my lord,  
The powers that you already have sent forth,  
Shall bring this prize in very easily.  
To comfort you the more, I have receiv'd  
A certain instance, that Glendower is dead.  
Your majesty hath been this fortnight ill ;  
And these unseason'd hours, perforce, must add  
Unto your sickness.

*K. Hen.* I will take your counsel :  
And, were these inward wars once out of hand,  
We would, dear lords, unto the Holy Land.  
[*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE II.

*Court before Justice Shallow's House in Gloucestershire.*

*Enter SHALLOW and SILENCE, meeting ; MOULDY, SHADOW, WART, FEEBLE, BULL-CALF, and Servants behind.*

*Shal.* Come on, come on, come on ; give me your hand, sir, give me your hand, sir ; an early stirrer, by the rood.<sup>2</sup> And how doth my good cousin Silence ?

*Sil.* Good morrow, good cousin Shallow.

*Shal.* And how doth my cousin, your bedfellow ? and your fairest daughter, and mine, my god-daughter Ellen ?

<sup>2</sup> Cross.



*Sil.* Alas, a black ouzel, cousin Shallow.

*Shal.* By yea and nay, sir, I dare say, my cousin William is become a good scholar: He is at Oxford, still, is he not?

*Sil.* Indeed, sir; to my cost.

*Shal.* He must then to the inns of court shortly: I was once of Clement's-inn; where, I think, they will talk of mad Shallow yet.

*Sil.* You were called — lusty Shallow, then, cousin.

*Shal.* By the mass, I was called any thing; and I would have done any thing, indeed, and roundly too. There was I, and little John Doit of Staffordshire, and black George Bare, and Francis Pickbone, and Will Squele a Cotswold man, — you had not four such swinge-bucklers in all the inns of court again: and I may say to you, we knew where the bona-robas were. Then was Jack Falstaff, now sir John, a boy; and page to Thomas Mowbray, duke of Norfolk.

*Sil.* This sir John, cousin, that comes hither anon, about soldiers?

*Shal.* The same sir John, the very same; I saw him break Skogan's head at the court gate, when he was a crack<sup>3</sup>, not thus high: and the very same day did I fight with one Sampson Stockfish, a fruiterer; behind Gray's-inn. O, the mad days that I have spent! and to see how many of mine old acquaintance are dead!

*Sil.* We shall all follow, cousin.

*Shal.* Certain, 'tis certain; very sure, very sure: death is certain to all; all shall die. — How, a good yoke of bullocks at Stamford fair?

*Sil.* Truly, cousin, I was not there.

*Shal.* Death is certain. — Is old Double of your town living yet?

*Sil.* Dead, sir.

*Shal.* Dead!—See, see!—he drew a good bow;  
—And dead!—He shot a fine shoot:—John of  
Gaunt loved him well, and betted much money on  
his head. Dead!—he would have clapp'd i' the  
clout at twelve score<sup>4</sup>; and carried you a forehand  
shaft at fourteen and fourteen and a half, that it  
would have done a man's heart good to see.——  
How a score of ewes now?

*Sil.* Thereafter as they be; a score of good ewes  
may be worth ten pounds.

*Shal.* And is old Double dead!

*Enter BARDOLPH, and one with him.*

*Sil.* Here come two of sir John Falstaff's men,  
as I think.

*Bard.* Good morrow, honest gentlemen: I be-  
seech you, which is justice Shallow?

*Shal.* I am Robert Shallow, sir; a poor esquire  
of this county, and one of the king's justices of the  
peace: What is your good pleasure with me?

*Bard.* My captain, sir, commends him to you:  
my captain, sir John Falstaff: a tall<sup>5</sup> gentleman, by  
heaven, and a most gallant leader.

*Shal.* He greets me well, sir; I knew him a good  
backsword man: How doth the good knight? may  
I ask, how my lady his wife doth?

*Bard.* Sir, pardon; a soldier is better accommo-  
dated, than with a wife.

*Shal.* It is well said, in faith, sir; and it is well  
said indeed too. Better accommodated!—it is good;  
yea, indeed, it is: good phrases are surely, and ever  
were, very commendable. Accommodated!—it  
comes from *accommodo*: very good; a good phrase.

*Bard.* Pardon me, sir! I have heard the word.  
Phrase, call you it? By this good day, I know not  
the phrase: but I will maintain the word with my

<sup>4</sup> Hit the white mark at twelve score yards.

<sup>5</sup> Brave.

sword, to be a soldier-like word, and a word of exceeding good command. Accommodated ; that is, when a man is, as they say, accommodated : or, when a man is, — being, — whereby, — he may be thought to be accommodated ; which is an excellent thing.

*Enter FALSTAFF.*

*Shal.* It is very just : — Look, here comes good sir John. — Give me your good hand, give me your worship's good hand : By my troth, you look well, and bear your years very well : welcome, good sir John.

*Fal.* I am glad to see you well, good master Robert Shallow : — Master Sure-card, as I think.

*Shal.* No, sir John ; it is my cousin Silence, a commission with me.

*Fal.* Good master Silence, it well befits you should be of the peace.

*Sil.* Your good worship is welcome.

*Fal.* Fye ! this is hot weather. — Gentlemen, have you provided me here half a dozen sufficient men ?

*Shal.* Marry, have we sir. Will you sit ?

*Fal.* Let me see them, I beseech you.

*Shal.* Where's the roll ? where's the roll ? where's the roll ? — Let me see, let me see. So, so, so, so : Yea, marry, sir : — Ralph Mouldy : — let them appear as I call ; let them do so, let them do so. — Let me see ; where is Mouldy ?

*Moul.* Here, an't please you.

*Shal.* What think you, sir John ? a good limbed fellow : young, strong, and of good friends.

*Fal.* Is thy name Mouldy ?

*Moul.* Yea, an't please you.

*Fal.* 'Tis the more time thou wert used.

*Shal.* Ha, ha, ha ! most excellent, things that are mouldy, lack use : Very singular good ! — well said, sir John ; very well said.

*Fal.* Prick him.

[*To SHALLOW.*

*Moul.* My old dame will be undone now, for one to do her husbandry, and her drudgery: you need not to have pricked me; there are other men fitter to go out than I.

*Fal.* Go to; peace, Mouldy, you shall go, Mouldy.

*Shal.* Peace, fellow, peace; stand aside; Know you where you are? — For the other, sir John: — let me see; — Simon Shadow!

*Fal.* Ay marry, let me have him to sit under: he's like to be a cold soldier.

*Shal.* Where's Shadow?

*Shad.* Here, sir,

*Fal.* Shadow, whose son art thou?

*Shad.* My mother's son, sir.

*Fal.* Thy mother's son! like enough; and thy father's shadow.

*Shal.* Do you like him, sir John?

*Fal.* Shadow will serve for summer, — prick him; — for we have a number of shadows to fill up the muster-book.

*Shal.* Thomas Wart!

*Fal.* Where's he?

*Wart.* Here, sir.

*Fal.* Is thy name Wart?

*Wart.* Yea, sir.

*Fal.* Thou art a very ragged wart.

*Shal.* Shall I prick him, sir John.

*Fal.* It were superfluous; for his apparel is built upon his back, and the whole frame stands upon pins: prick him no more.

*Shal.* Ha, ha, ha! — you can do it, sir; you can do it: I commend you well. — Francis Feeble!

*Fee.* Here, sir.

*Fal.* What trade art thou, Feeble?

*Fee.* A woman's tailor, sir.

*Shal.* Shall I prick him, sir?

*Fal.* You may:—Wilt thou make as many holes in an enemy's battle, as thou hast made with thy needle?

*Fee.* I will do my good will, sir; you can have no more.

*Fal.* Well said, good woman's tailor! well said, courageous Feeble! Thou wilt be as valiant as the wrathful dove, or most magnanimous mouse.—Prick the woman's tailor well, master Shallow; deep, master Shallow.

*Fee.* I would, Wart might have gone, sir.

*Fal.* I would, thou wert a man's tailor; that thou might'st mend him, and make him fit to go. I cannot put him to a private soldier, that is the leader of so many thousands: Let that suffice, most forcible Feeble.

*Fee.* It shall suffice, sir.

*Fal.* I am bound to thee, reverend Feeble.—Who is next?

*Shal.* Peter Bull-calf of the green!

*Fal.* Yea, marry, let us see Bull-calf.

*Bull.* Here, sir.

*Fal.* Trust me, a likely fellow!—Come, prick me Bull-calf till he roar again.

*Bull.* O lord! good my lord captain, —

*Fal.* What, dost thou roar before thou art pricked?

*Bull.* O lord, sir! I am a diseased man.

*Fal.* What disease hast thou?

*Bull.* A cold, sir; a cough, sir; which I caught with ringing in the king's affairs, upon his coronation-day, sir.

*Fal.* Come, thou shalt go to the wars in a gown: we will have away thy cold; and I will take such order, that thy friends shall ring for thee.—Is here all?

*Shal.* Here is two more called than your number; you must have but four here, sir;—and so, I pray you, go in with me to dinner.

*Fal.* Come, I will go drink with you, but I cannot tarry dinner. I am glad to see you, in good troth, master Shallow.

*Shal.* O, sir John, do you remember since we lay all night in the windmill in Saint George's fields.

*Fal.* No more of that, good master Shallow, no more of that.

*Shal.* Ha, it was a merry night. And is Jane Night alive?

*Fal.* She lives, master Shallow.

*Shal.* She never could away with me.

*Fal.* Never, never: she would always say, she could not abide master Shallow.

*Shal.* By the mass, I could anger her to the heart. She was then a bona-roba. Doth she hold her own well?

*Fal.* Old, old, master Shallow.

*Shal.* Nay, she must be old; she cannot choose but be old; certain she's old; and had Robin before I came to Clement's-inn.

*Sil.* That's fifty-five year ago.

*Shal.* Ha, cousin Silence, that thou hadst seen that that this knight and I have seen!—Ha, sir John, said I well?

*Fal.* We have heard the chimes at midnight, master Shallow.

*Shal.* That we have, that we have, that we have: in faith, sir John, we have; our watch-word was, *Hem boys!*—Come, let's to dinner; come, let's to dinner:—O, the days that we have seen!—Come, come.

[*Exeunt FALSTAFF, SHALLOW, and SILENCE.*]

*Bull.* Good master corporate Bardolph, stand my friend; and here is four Harry ten shillings in French crowns for you. In very truth, sir, I had as lief be hanged, sir, as go: and yet, for mine own part, sir, I do not care; but, rather, because I am unwilling, and, for mine own part, have a desire to

stay with my friends ; else, sir, I did not care, for mine own part, so much.

*Bard.* Go to ; stand aside.

*Moul.* And good master corporal captain, for my old dame's sake, stand my friend : she has nobody to do any thing about her, when I am gone : and she is old, and cannot help herself : you shall have forty, sir.

*Bard.* Go to ; stand aside.

*Fee.* By my troth I care not ; — a man can die but once ; — we owe God a death ; — I'll ne'er bear a base mind ; — an't be my destiny, so ; an't be not, so : No man's too good to serve his prince ; and, let it go which way it will, he that dies this year, is quit for the next.

*Bard.* Well said ; thou'rt a good fellow.

*Fee.* Nay, I'll bear no base mind.

*Re-enter FALSTAFF, and Justices.*

*Fal.* Come, sir, which men shall I have ?

*Shal.* Four, of which you please.

*Bard.* Sir, a word with you : — I have three pound to free Mouldy and Bull-calf.

*Fal.* Go to ; well.

*Shal.* Come, sir John, which four will you have ?

*Fal.* Do you choose for me.

*Shal.* Marry then, — Mouldy, Bull-calf, Feeble, and Shadow.

*Fal.* Mouldy, and Bull-calf : — For you, Mouldy, stay at home, still ; you are past service : — and, for your part, Bull-calf, — grow till you come unto it ; I will none of you.

*Shal.* Sir John, sir John, do not yourself wrong ; they are your likeliest men, and I would have you served with the best.

*Fal.* Will you tell me, master Shallow, how to choose a man ? Care I for the limb, the thewes, the stature, bulk, and big assemblance of a man ! Give

me the spirit, master Shallow. — Here's Wart ; — you see what a ragged appearance it is : he shall charge you, and discharge you, with the motion of a pewterer's hammer ; come off, and on, swifter than he that gibbets on the brewer's bucket. And this same half-faced fellow, Shadow, — give me this man ; he presents no mark to the enemy ; the foe-man may with as great aim level at the edge of a penknife : And, for a retreat, — how swiftly will this Feeble, the woman's tailor, run off ? O, give me the spare men, and spare me the great ones. — Put me a caliver<sup>8</sup> into Wart's hand, Bardolph.

*Bard.* Hold, Wart, traverse<sup>9</sup> ; thus, thus, thus.

*Fal.* Come, manage me your caliver. So : — very well : go to : — very good : — exceeding good. — O, give me always a little, lean, old, chapped, bald shot. — Well said, Wart ; hold, there's a tester for thee.

*Shal.* He is not his craft's master, he doth not do it right. I remember at Mile-end green, (when I lay at Clement's inn. — I was then sir Dagonet in Arthur's show<sup>1</sup>,) there was a little quiver fellow, and 'a would manage you his piece thus : and 'a would about, and about, and come you in, and come you in : *rah, tah, tah*, would 'a say ; *bounce*, would 'a say ; and away again would 'a go, and again would 'a come : — I shall never see such a fellow.

*Fal.* These fellows will do well, master Shallow. — Heaven keep you, master Silence ; I will not use many words with you : — Fare you well, gentlemen both : I thank you : I must a dozen mile to-night. — Bardolph, give the soldiers coats.

*Shal.* Sir John, heaven bless you, and prosper your affairs, and send us peace ! As you return, visit my house ; let our old acquaintance be renewed : peradventure, I will with you to the court.

*Fal.* I would you would, master Shallow.

<sup>8</sup> *Musket.*

<sup>9</sup> *March.*

<sup>1</sup> An exhibition of archers.



*Shal.* Go to; I have spoke, at a word. Fare you well. [*Exeunt SHALLOW and SILENCE.*]

*Fal.* Fare you well, gentle gentlemen. On, Bardolph; lead the men away. [*Exeunt BARDOLPH, Recruits, &c.*] As I return, I will fetch off these justices: I do see the bottom of justice Shallow. How subject we old men are to this vice of lying! This same starved justice hath done nothing but prate to me of the wildness of his youth, and the feats he hath done about Turnbull-street<sup>2</sup>; and every third word a lie, duer paid to the hearer than the Turk's tribute. I do remember him at Clement's-inn, like a man made after supper of a cheese-paring: he was so forlorn, that his dimensions to any thick sight were invisible: he was the very Genius of famine; he came ever in the rearward of the fashion; and sung those tunes to the huswives that he heard the carmen whistle, and sware — they were his fancies, or his good-nights.<sup>3</sup> And now is this Vice's dagger<sup>4</sup> become a squire; and talks as familiarly of John of Gaunt, as if he had been sworn brother to him: and I'll be sworn he never saw him but once in the Tilt yard; and then he burst his head, for crowding among the marshal's men. I saw it; and told John of Gaunt, he beat his own name<sup>5</sup>: for you might have truss'd him, and all his apparel, into an eel-skin; the case of a treble haut-boy was a mansion for him, a court; and now has he land and beeves. Well; I will be acquainted with him, if I return: and it shall go hard, but I will make him a philosopher's stone to me: If the young dace be a bait for the old pike, I see no reason, in the law of nature, but I may snap at him. Let time shape, and there an end.

[*Exit.*]

<sup>2</sup> In Clerkenwell.

<sup>3</sup> Titles of little poems.

<sup>4</sup> A wooden dagger like that used by the modern Harlequin.

<sup>5</sup> Gaunt is thin, slender.

## ACT THE FOURTH.

## SCENE I.

*A Forest in Yorkshire.*

*Enter the Archbishop of York, Mowbray,  
Hastings, and others.*

*Arch.* What is this forest call'd?

*Hast.* 'Tis Gualtree forest, an't shall please your  
grace.

*Arch.* Here stand, my lords; and send discoverers  
forth,

To know the numbers of our enemies.

*Hast.* We have sent forth already.

*Arch.* 'Tis well done.

My friends and brethren in these great affairs,  
I must acquaint you that I have receiv'd  
New-dated letters from Northumberland;  
Their cold intent, tenour, and substance, thus —  
Here doth he wish his person, with such powers  
As might hold sortance<sup>6</sup> with his quality.  
The which he could not levy; whereupon  
He is retir'd, to ripe his growing fortunes,  
To Scotland: and concludes in hearty prayers,  
That your attempts may overlive the hazard,  
And fearful meeting of their opposite.

*Mowb.* Thus do the hopes we have in him touch  
ground,  
And dash themselves to pieces.

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Hast.* Now, what news?

*Mess.* West of this forest, scarcely off a mile,  
In goodly form comes on the enemy:

<sup>6</sup> Be suitable.

And, by the ground they hide, I judge their number  
Upon, or near, the rate of thirty thousand.

*Mowb.* The just proportion that we gave them  
out.

Let us sway on, and face them in the field.

*Enter WESTMORELAND.*

*Arch.* What well-appointed leader fronts us here?

*Mowb.* I think, it is my lord of Westmoreland.

*West.* Health and fair greeting from our general.  
The prince, lord John, and duke of Lancaster.

*Arch.* Say on, my lord of Westmoreland in peace:  
What doth concern your coming?

*West.* Then, my lord,

Unto your grace do I in chief address  
The substance of my speech. If that rebellion  
Came like itself, in base and abject routs,  
Led on by bloody youth, guarded with rage,  
And countenanc'd by boys and beggary;  
I say, if vile commotion so appear'd,  
In his true, native, and most proper shape,  
You, reverend father, and these noble lords,  
Had not been here, to dress the ugly form  
Of base and bloody insurrection  
With your fair honours. You, lord archbishop, —  
Whose see is by a civil peace maintain'd;  
Whose beard the silver hand of peace hath touch'd;  
Whose learning and good letters peace hath tutor'd;  
Whose white investments figure innocence.  
The dove and very blessed spirit of peace. —  
Wherefore do you so ill translate yourself  
Out of the speech of peace, that bears such grace  
Into the harsh and boist'rous tongue of war?  
Turning your books to graves, your ink to blood,  
Your pens to lances; and your tongue divine  
To a loud trumpet, and a point of war?

*Arch.* Wherefore do I this? — so the question  
stands.

Briefly to this end: — We are all diseas'd;

And with our surfeiting, and wanton hours,  
Have brought ourselves into a burning fever,  
And we must bleed for it : of which disease  
Our late king, Richard, being infected, died.  
But, my most noble lord of Westmoreland,  
I take not on me here as a physician ;  
Nor do I, as an enemy to peace,  
Troop in the throngs of military men ;  
But, rather, show a while like fearful war,  
To diet rank minds, sick of happiness ;  
And purge the obstructions, which begin to stop  
Our very veins of life. Hear me more plainly.  
I have in equal balance justly weigh'd  
What wrongs our arms may do, what wrongs we  
suffer,

And find our griefs<sup>7</sup> heavier than our offences.  
We see which way the stream of time doth run,  
And are enforc'd from most our quiet sphere  
By the rough torrent of occasion :  
And have the summary of all our griefs,  
When time shall serve, to show in articles ;  
Which, long ere this, we offer'd to the king,  
And might by no suit gain our audience :  
When we are wrong'd, and would unfold our griefs,  
We are denied access unto his person  
Even by those men that most have done us wrong.  
The dangers of the days but newly gone,  
(Whose memory is written on the earth  
With yet-appearing blood,) and the examples  
Of every minute's instance, (present now,)  
Have put us in these ill-beseeming arms :  
Not to break peace, or any branch of it ;  
But to establish here a peace indeed,  
Concurring both in name and quality.

*West.* When ever yet was your appeal denied ?  
Wherein have you been galled by the king ?  
What peer hath been suborn'd to grate on you ?

<sup>7</sup> Grievances.

That you should seal this lawless bloody book  
Of forg'd rebellion with a seal divine.

And consecrate commotion's bitter edge.

*Arch.* My brother general, the commonwealth.  
I make my quarrel in particular.

*West.* There is no need of any such redress;  
Or, if there were, it not belongs to you.

*Mowb.* Why not to him, in part : and to us all,  
That feel the bruises of the days before :  
And suffer the condition of these times  
To lay a heavy and unequal hand  
Upon our honours :

*West.* O my good lord Mowbray,  
Construe the times to their necessities,  
And you shall say indeed, — it is the time,  
And not the king, that doth you injuries.  
Yet, for your part, it not appears to me,  
Either from the king, or in the present time,  
That you should have an inch of any ground  
To build a grief on : Were you not restor'd  
To all the duke of Norfolk's signiories,  
Your noble and right well-remember'd father's ?

*Mowb.* What thing, in honour, had my father lost,  
That need to be reviv'd, and breath'd in me ?  
The king, that lov'd him, as the state stood then,  
Was, force perforce, compell'd to banish him :  
And then, when Harry Bolingbroke, and he, —  
Being mounted, and both roused in their seats,  
Their neighing coursers daring of the spur,  
Their armed staves in charge, their beavers down,  
Their eyes of fire sparkling through sights of steel,  
And the loud trumpet blowing them together :  
Then, then, when there was nothing could have  
staid

My father from the breast of Bolingbroke,  
, when the king did throw his warder<sup>s</sup> down,  
is own life hung upon the staff he threw :

Then threw he down himself; and all their lives,  
That by indictment, and by dint of sword  
Have since miscarried under Bolingbroke.

*West.* You speak, lord Mowbray, now you know  
not what :

The earl of Hereford was reputed then  
In England the most valiant gentleman ;  
Who knows, on whom fortune would then have  
smil'd ?

But if your father had been victor there,  
He ne'er had borne it out of Coventry :  
For all the country, in a general voice,  
Cried hate upon him ; and all their prayers, and  
love,

Were set on Hereford, whom they doated on,  
And bless'd and grac'd indeed, more than the king.  
But this is mere digression from my purpose. —  
Here come I from our princely general,  
To know your griefs ; to tell you from his grace,  
That he will give you audience : and wherein  
It shall appear that your demands are just,  
You shall enjoy them ; every thing set off,  
That might so much as think you enemies.

*Mowb.* But he hath forc'd us to compel this offer ;  
And it proceeds from policy, not love.

*West.* Mowbray, you overween<sup>9</sup>, to take it so ;  
This offer comes from mercy, not from fear :  
For, lo ! within a ken<sup>1</sup>, our army lies :  
Upon mine honour, all too confident  
To give admittance to a thought of fear.  
Our battle is more full of names than yours,  
Our men more perfect in the use of arms,  
Our armour all as strong, our cause the best ;  
Then reason wills, our hearts should be as good : —  
Say you not then, our offer is compell'd.

*Mowb.* Well, by my will, we shall admit no parley.

<sup>9</sup> Think too highly.

<sup>1</sup> Sight.

*West.* That argues but the shame of your offence:  
A rotten case abides no handling.

*Hast.* Hath the prince John a full commission,  
In very ample virtue of his father,  
To hear, and absolutely to determine  
Of what conditions we shall stand upon?

*West.* That is intended<sup>2</sup> in the general's name:  
I muse<sup>3</sup>, you make so slight a question.

*Arch.* Then take, my lord of Westmoreland, this  
schedule;

For this contains our general grievances: —  
Each several article herein redress'd;  
All members of our cause, both here and hence,  
That are insinew'd to this action,  
Acquitted by a true substantial form;  
And present execution of our wills  
To us, and to our purposes, consign'd;  
We come within our awful banks again,  
And knit our powers to the arm of peace.

*West.* This will I show the general. Please you  
lords,  
In sight of both our battles we may meet:  
And either end in peace, which heaven so frame!  
Or to the place of difference call the swords  
Which must decide it.

*Arch.* My lord, we will do so.

[*Exit WEST.*]

*Mowb.* There is a thing within my bosom, tells me,  
That no conditions of our peace can stand.

*Hast.* Fear you not that: if we can make our  
peace

Upon such large terms, and so absolute,  
As our conditions shall consist upon,  
Our peace shall stand as firm as rocky mountains.

*Mowb.* Ay, but our valuation shall be such.  
That every slight and false-derived cause,  
Yea, every idle, nice<sup>4</sup>, and wanton reason,

<sup>2</sup> Understood.

<sup>3</sup> Wonder.

<sup>4</sup> Trivial.

Shall, to the king, taste of this action :  
That, were our royal faiths martyrs in love,  
We shall be winnow'd with so rough a wind,  
That even our corn shall seem as light as chaff,  
And good from bad find no partition.

*Arch.* No, no, my lord ; Note this, — the king is  
weary

Of dainty and such picking<sup>5</sup> grievances :  
For he hath found, — to end one doubt by death,  
◀ Revives two greater in the heirs of life.  
And therefore will he wipe his tables<sup>6</sup> clean ;  
And keep no tell-tale to his memory,  
That may repeat and history his loss  
To new remembrance : For full well he knows,  
He cannot so precisely weed this land,  
As his misdoubts present occasion :  
His foes are so enrooted with his friends,  
That, plucking to unfix an enemy,  
He doth unfasten so, and shake a friend.  
So that this land, like an offensive wife,  
That hath enrag'd him on to offer strokes ;  
As he is striking, holds his infant up,  
And hangs resolv'd correction in the arm  
That was uprear'd to execution.

*Hast.* Besides, the king hath wasted all his rods  
On late offenders, that he now doth lack  
The very instruments of chastisement :  
So that his power, like to a fangless lion,  
May offer, but not hold.

*Arch.* 'Tis very true ; —  
And therefore be assur'd, my good lord marshal,  
If we do now make our atonement well,  
Our peace will, like a broken limb united,  
Grow stronger for the breaking.

*Mowb.* Be it so.  
Here is return'd my lord of Westmoreland.

<sup>5</sup> *Insignificant.*

<sup>6</sup> Book for memorandums.



*Re-enter WESTMORELAND.*

*West.* The prince is here at hand: Pleaseth your lordship,

To meet his grace just distance 'tween our armies?

*Mowb.* Your grace of York, in God's name then set forward.

*Arch.* Before, and greet his grace: — my lord,  
we come. [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE II.

*Another Part of the Forest.*

*Enter from one side, MOWBRAY, the Archbishop, HASTINGS, and others: from the other side, Prince JOHN of LANCASTER, WESTMORELAND, Officers, and Attendants.*

*P. John.* You are well encountered here, my cousin Mowbray: —

Good day to you, gentle lord archbishop; —  
And so to you, lord Hastings, — and to all. —  
My lord of York, it better show'd with you,  
When that your flock, assembled by the bell,  
Encircled you, to hear with reverence  
Your exposition on the holy text;  
Than now to see you here an iron man,  
Cheering a rout of rebels with your drum,  
Turning the word to sword, and life to death.  
That man that sits within a monarch's heart,  
And ripens in the sunshine of his favour,  
Would he abuse the countenance of the king.  
Alack, what mischiefs might be set abroad,  
In shadow of such greatness! With you, lord  
bishop,

It is even so: — Who hath not heard it spoken,  
How deep you were within the books of heaven:

To us, the speaker in his parliament ;  
To us, the imagin'd voice of heaven itself ;  
The very opener, and intelligencer,  
Between the grace, the sanctities of heaven,  
And our dull workings : O, who shall believe,  
But you misuse the reverence of your place ;  
Employ the countenance and grace of heaven,  
As a false favourite doth his prince's name,  
In deeds dishonourable ? You have taken up,  
Under the counterfeited zeal of heaven,  
The subjects of heaven's substitute, my father ;  
And, both against the peace of heaven,  
Have here up-swarm'd them.

*Arch.* Good my lord of Lancaster,  
I am not here against your father's peace :  
But, as I told my lord of Westmoreland,  
The time misorder'd doth, in common sense,  
Crowd us, and crush us, to this monstrous form,  
To hold our safety up. I sent your grace  
The parcels and particulars of our grief ;  
The which hath been with scorn shov'd from the  
court,

Whereon this Hydra son of war is born :  
Whose dangerous eyes may well be charm'd asleep,  
With grant of our most just and right desires ;  
And true obedience of this madness cur'd,  
Stoop tamely to the foot of majesty.

*Mowb.* If not, we ready are to try our fortunes  
To the last man.

*Hast.* And though we here fall down,  
We have supplies to second our attempt ;  
If they miscarry, theirs shall second them :  
And so, success<sup>7</sup> of mischief shall be born ;  
And heir from heir shall hold this quarrel up,  
Whiles England shall have generation.

*P. John.* You are too shallow, Hastings, much  
too shallow,  
To sound the bottom of the after-times.

<sup>7</sup> Succession.

*West.* Pleaseth your grace, to answer them directly,  
How far-forth you do like their articles?

*P. John.* I like them all, and do allow<sup>s</sup> them well:  
And swear here by the honour of my blood,  
My father's purposes have been mistook;  
And some about him have too lavishly  
Wrested his meaning and authority.—  
My lord, these griefs shall be with speed redress'd;  
Upon my soul they shall. If this may please you,  
Discharge your powers unto their several counties,  
As we will ours: and here, between the armies  
Let's drink together friendly, and embrace;  
That all their eyes may bear those tokens home,  
Of our restored love, and amity.

*Arch.* I take your princely word for these redresses.

*P. Hen.* I give it you, and will maintain my word;  
And thereupon I drink unto your grace.

*Hast.* Go, captain, [*To an Officer,*] and deliver  
to the army  
This news of peace; let them have pay, and part:  
I know it will well please them: Hie, thee, captain.  
[*Exit Officer.*]

*Arch.* To you, my noble lord of Westmoreland.

*West.* I pledge your grace: And, if you knew  
what pains  
I have bestow'd, to breed this present peace,  
You would drink freely: but my love to you  
Shall show itself more openly hereafter.

*Arch.* I do not doubt you.

*West.* I am glad of it—

Health to my lord, and gentle cousin, Mowbray.

*Mowb.* You wish me health in very happy season:  
For I am, on the sudden, something ill.

*Arch.* Against ill chances, men are ever merry ;  
But heaviness foreruns the good event,

*West.* Therefore be merry, coz ; since sudden  
sorrow

Serves to say thus,—Some good thing comes to-morrow.

*Arch.* Believe me, I am passing light in spirit.

*Mowb.* So much the worse, if your own rule be true.

[*Shouts within.*

*P. John.* The word of peace is render'd ; Hark,  
how they shout !

*Mowb.* This had been cheerful, after victory.

*Arch.* A peace is of the nature of a conquest ;  
For then both parties nobly are subdued,  
And neither party loser.

*P. John.* Go, my lord,  
And let our army be discharged too.—

[*Exit WESTMORELAND.*

And, good my lord, so please you, let our trains  
March by us ; that we may peruse the men  
We should have cop'd withal.

*Arch.* Go, good lord Hastings,  
And, ere they be dismiss'd, let them march by.

[*Exit HASTINGS.*

*P. John.* I trust, my lords, we shall lie to-night  
together.—

*Re-enter WESTMORELAND.*

Now, cousin, wherefore stands our army still ?

*West.* The leaders, having charge from you to  
stand,

Will not go off until they hear you speak.

*P. John.* They know their duties.

*Re-enter HASTINGS.*

*Hast.* My lord, our army is dispers'd already :  
Like youthful steers unyok'd, they take their courses

East, west, north, south ; or, like a school broke up,  
Each hurries toward his home, and sporting-place.

*West.* Good tidings, my lord Hastings ; for the  
which

I do arrest thee, traitor, of high treason : —  
And you, lord archbishop, — and you, lord Mow-  
bray,

Of capital treason I attach you both.

*Mowb.* Is this proceeding just and honourable?

*West.* Is your assembly so ?

*Arch.* Will you thus break your faith ?

*P. John.* I pawn'd thee none :

I promis'd you redress of these same grievances,  
Whereof you did complain ; which, by mine honour,  
I will perform with a most Christian care.

But, for you, rebels, — look to taste the due

Meet for rebellion, and such acts as yours.

Most shallowly did you these arms commence,  
Fondly<sup>9</sup> brought here, and foolishly sent hence —  
Strike up our drums, pursue the scatter'd stray ;  
Heaven, and not we, have safely fought to-day. —  
Some guard these traitors to the block of death,  
Treason's true bed, and yielder up of breath.

[*Exeunt.*]

### SCENE III.

#### *Another Part of the Forest.*

*Alarums : Excursions. Enter FALSTAFF and  
COLEVILE, meeting.*

*Fal.* What's your name, sir ? of what condition  
are you ; and of what place, I pray ?

*Cole.* I am a knight, sir ; and my name is — Cole-  
vile of the dale.

<sup>9</sup> Foolishly

*Fal.* Well then, Colevile is your name ; a knight is your degree ; and your place, the dale : Colevile shall still be your name, — a traitor your degree ; and the dungeon your place, — a place deep enough ; so shall you still be Colevile of the dale.

*Cole.* Are not you sir John Falstaff ?

*Fal.* As good a man as he, sir, whoe'er I am. Do ye yield, sir ? or shall I sweat for you ? If I do sweat, they are drops of thy lovers, and they weep for thy death : therefore rouse up fear and trembling, and do observance to my mercy.

*Cole.* I think, you are sir John Falstaff ; and, in that thought, yield me.

*Fal.* I have a whole school of tongues in this belly of mine ; and not a tongue of them all speaks any other word but my name. An I had but a belly of any indifferency, I were simply the most active fellow in Europe : — Here comes our general.

*Enter Prince JOHN of LANCASTER, WESTMORELAND, and others.*

*P. John.* The heat is past, follow no further now ; —

Call in the powers, good cousin Westmoreland. —

[*Exit WEST.*

Now, Falstaff, where have you been all this while ? When every thing is ended, then you come : These tardy tricks of yours will, on my life, One time or other break some gallows' back.

*Fal.* I would be sorry, my lord, but it should be thus ; I never knew yet, but rebuke and check was the reward of valour. Do you think me a swallow, an arrow, or a bullet ? have I, in my poor and old motion, the expedition of thought ? I have speeded hither with the very extremest inch of possibility : I have foundered nine-score and odd posts ; and here, travel-tainted as I am, have, in my pure and immaculate valour, taken sir John Colevile of the

dale, a most furious knight, and valorous enemy: But what of that? he saw me, and yielded; that I may justly say with the hooked-nose fellow of Rome<sup>1</sup>, — I came, saw, and overcame.

*P. John.* It was more of his courtesy than your deserving.

*Fal.* I know not: here he is, and here I yield him: and I beseech your grace let it be booked with the rest of this day's deeds; or I will have it in a particular ballad else, with mine own picture on the top of it, Coleville kissing my foot: To the which course, if I be enforced, if you do not all show like gilt two-pences to me; and I, in the clear sky of fame, o'er shining you as much as the full moon doth the cinders of the element, which show like pins' heads to her; believe not the word of the noble: Therefore let me have right, and let desert mount.

*P. John.* Thine's too heavy to mount.

*Fal.* Let it shine then.

*P. John.* Thine's too thick to shine.

*Fal.* Let it do something, my good lord, that may do me good, and call it what you will.

*P. John.* Is thy name Coleville?

*Cole.*

It is, my lord.

*P. John.* A famous rebel art thou, Coleville.

*Fal.* And a famous true subject took him.

*Cole.* I am, my lord, but as my betters are, That led me hither: had they been ruled by me. You should have won them dearer than you have.

*Fal.* I know not how they sold themselves: but thou, like a kind fellow, gavest thyself away: and I thank thee for thee.

*Re-enter WESTMORELAND.*

*P. John.* Now, have you left pursuit?

*West.* Retreat is made, and execution stay'd.

<sup>1</sup> Julius Cæsar.

*P. John.* Send Colevile, with his confederates  
To York, to present execution :  
Blunt, lead him hence ; and see you guard him sure.

[*Exeunt some with COLEVILE.*]

And now despatch we toward the court, my lords ;  
I hear, the king my father is sore sick :  
Our news shall go before us to his majesty, —  
Which, cousin, you shall bear, — to comfort him ;  
And we with sober speed will follow you.

*Fal.* My lord, I beseech you, give me leave to  
go through Glostershire ; and when you come to  
court, stand my good lord, 'pray, in your good  
report.

*P. John.* Fare you well, Falstaff : I, in my con-  
dition,<sup>2</sup>

Shall better speak of you than you deserve. [*Exit.*]

*Fal.* I would, you had but the wit : 'twere better  
than your dukedom. — Good faith, this same young  
sober-blooded boy doth not love me ; nor a man  
cannot make him laugh ; — but that's no marvel, he  
drinks no wine. There's never any of these de-  
mure boys come to any proof : for thin drink doth  
so overcool their blood, they are generally fools  
and cowards ; — which some of us should be too,  
but for inflammation. A good sherris-sack hath a  
two-fold operation in it. It ascends me into the  
brain ; dries me there all the foolish, and dull,  
and crudy vapours which environ it ; makes it ap-  
prehensive, quick, forgetive<sup>3</sup>, full of nimble, fiery,  
and delectable shapes ; which delivered o'er to the  
voice, (the tongue,) which is the birth, becomes  
excellent wit. The second property of your ex-  
cellent sherris is, — the warming of the blood ;  
which, before cold and settled, left the liver white  
and pale, which is the badge of pusillanimity and  
cowardice : but the sherris warms it, and makes it  
course from the inwards to the parts extreme. It

<sup>2</sup> *In my present temper.*

<sup>3</sup> *Inventive.*



illumineth the face ; which, as a beacon, gives warning to all the rest of this little kingdom, man, to arm ; and then the vital commoners, and inland petty spirits, muster me all to their captain, the heart ; who, great, and puffed up with this retinue, doth any deed of courage : and this valour comes of sherris : So that skill in the weapon is nothing, without sack ; for that sets it a-work : and learning, a mere hoard of gold, kept by a devil ; till sack commences it<sup>4</sup>, and sets it in act and use. Hereof comes it, that prince Harry is valiant : for the cold blood he did naturally inherit of his father, he bath, like lean, steril, and bare land, manured, husbanded, and tilled, with excellent endeavour of drinking good, and good store of fertile sherris ; that he is become very hot and valiant. If I had a thousand sons, the first human principle I would teach them should be,—to forswear thin potations, and addict themselves to sack.

*Enter BARDOLPH.*

How now, Bardolph ?

*Bard.* The army is discharged all, and gone.

*Fal.* Let them go. I'll through Glostershire ; and there will I visit master Robert Shallow, esquire : I have him already tempering between my finger and my thumb, and shortly will I seal with him.<sup>5</sup> Come away. [*Exeunt.*]

<sup>4</sup> Brings it into action.

<sup>5</sup> An allusion to the old use of sealing with soft wax.

## SCENE IV.

Westminster. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter King HENRY, CLARENCE, Prince HUMPHREY, WARWICK, and others.*

*K. Hen.* Now, lords, if heaven doth give successful end

To this debate that bleedeth at our doors,  
We will our youth lead on to higher fields,  
And draw no swords but what are sanctified.  
Our navy is addressed <sup>6</sup>, our power collected,  
Our substitutes in absence well invested,  
And every thing lies level to our wish :  
Only, we want a little personal strength ;  
And pause us, till these rebels now afoot,  
Come underneath the yoke of government.

*War.* Both which, we doubt not but your majesty,

Shall soon enjoy.

*K. Hen.* Humphrey, my son, of Gloster,  
Where is the prince your brother ?

*P. Humph.* I think he's gone to hunt, my lord,  
at Windsor.

*K. Hen.* And how accompanied ?

*P. Humph.* I do not know, my lord.

*K. Hen.* Is not his brother, Thomas of Clarence,  
with him ?

*P. Humph.* No, my good lord, he is in presence  
here.

*Cla.* What would my lord and father ?

*K. Hen.* Nothing but well to thee, Thomas of  
Clarence.

How chance, thou art not with the prince thy  
brother ?

<sup>6</sup> Ready, prepared.

He loves thee, and thou dost neglect him, Thomas;  
Thou hast a better place in his affection,  
Than all thy brothers ; cherish it, my boy ;  
And noble offices thou may'st effect  
Of mediation, after I am dead,  
Between his greatness and thy other brethren :—  
Therefore omit him not : blunt not his love :  
Nor lose the good advantage of his grace,  
By seeming cold, or careless of his will.  
For he is gracious, if he be observ'd ;<sup>7</sup>  
He hath a tear for pity, and a hand  
Open as day for melting charity :  
Yet notwithstanding, being incens'd, he's flint ;  
As humorous as winter, and as sudden  
As flaws congealed in the spring of day.  
His temper, therefore, must be well observ'd :  
Chide him for faults, and do it reverently,  
When you perceive his blood inclin'd to mirth :  
But, being moody, give him line and scope ;  
Till that his passions, like a whale on ground,  
Confound themselves with working. Learn this,

Thomas,

And thou shalt prove a shelter to thy friends ;  
A hoop of gold, to bind thy brothers in ;  
That the united vessel of their blood,  
Mingled with venom of suggestion,  
(As, force perforce, the age will pour it in,)  
Shall never leak, though it do work as strong  
As aconitum<sup>8</sup>, or rash gunpowder.

*Cla.* I shall observe him with all care and love.

*K. Hen.* Why art thou not at Windsor with him,  
Thomas ?

*Cla.* He is not there to-day ; he dines in London.

*K. Hen.* And how accompanied ? canst thou tell  
that ?

*Cla.* With Poins, and other his continual followers

<sup>7</sup> Has attention shown him.

<sup>8</sup> Wolfsbane, a poisonous herb.

*K. Hen.* Most subject is the fattest soil to weeds;  
And he, the noble image of my youth,  
Is overspread with them : Therefore my grief  
Stretches itself beyond the hour of death ;  
The blood weeps from my heart, when I do shape,  
In forms imaginary, the unguided days,  
And rotten times, that you shall look upon  
When I am sleeping with my ancestors.  
For when his headstrong riot hath no curb,  
When rage and hot blood are his counsellors,  
When means and lavish manners meet together,  
O, with what wings shall his affections fly  
Towards fronting peril and oppos'd decay !

*War.* My gracious lord, you look beyond him  
quite :

The prince but studies his companions,  
Like a strange tongue : wherein, to gain the lan-  
guage,  
'Tis needful, that the most immodest word  
Be look'd upon, and learn'd : which once attain'd,  
Your highness knows, comes to no further use,  
But to be known, and hated. So, like gross terms,  
The prince will, in the perfectness of time,  
Cast off his followers : and their memory  
Shall as a pattern or a measure live,  
By which his grace must meet the lives of others ;  
Turning past evils to advantages.

*K. Hen.* 'Tis seldom, when the bee doth leave  
her comb  
In the dead carrion. — Who's here? Westmoreland?

*Enter WESTMORELAND.*

*West.* Health to my sovereign ! and new happi-  
ness  
Added to that that I am to deliver !  
Prince John, your son, doth kiss your grace's hand :  
Mowbray, the bishop Scroop, Hastings, and all,  
Are brought to the correction of your law :

'There is not now a rebel's sword unsheath'd,  
But peace puts forth her olive every where.  
The manner how this action hath been borne,  
Here at more leisure may your highness read;  
With every course, in this particular.<sup>9</sup>

*K. Hen.* O Westmoreland, thou art a summer-bird,  
Which ever in the haunch of winter sings  
The lifting up of day. Look! here's more news.

*Enter HARCOURT.*

*Har.* From enemies heaven keep your majesty;  
And when they stand against you, may they fall  
As those that I am come to tell you of!  
The earl Northumberland, and the lord Bardolph,  
With a great power of English, and of Scots,  
Are by the sheriff of Yorkshire overthrown:  
The manner and true order of the fight,  
This packet, please it you, contains at large.

*K. Hen.* And wherefore should these good news  
make me sick?  
Will fortune never come with both hands full,  
But write her fair words still in foulest letters?  
She either gives a stomach, and no food, —  
Such are the poor, in health; or else a feast,  
And takes away the stomach, — such are the rich.  
That have abundance, and enjoy it not.  
I should rejoice now at this happy news;  
And now my sight fails, and my brain is giddy:—  
O me! come near me, now I am much ill. [*Swoons.*]

*P. Humph.* Comfort, your majesty!

*Cla.* O, my royal father!

*West.* My sovereign lord, cheer up yourself, look  
up!

*War.* Be patient, princes; you do know, these  
fits

<sup>9</sup> The detail contained in Prince John's letter.

Are with his highness very ordinary.  
Stand from him, give him air, he'll straight be well.

*Cla.* No, no; he cannot long hold out these pangs;  
The incessant care and labour of his mind  
Hath wrought the mure<sup>1</sup>, that should confine it in,  
So thin, that life looks through, and will break out.

*P. Humph.* The people fear me<sup>2</sup>; for they do observe

Unfather'd heirs, and loathly birds of nature;  
The seasons change their manners, as the year  
Had found some months asleep, and leap'd them over.

*Cla.* The river hath thrice flow'd, no ebb between: <sup>3</sup>

And the old folk, time's doting chronicles,  
Say, it did so, a little time before  
That our great grandsire, Edward, sick'd and died.

*War.* Speak lower, princes, for the king recovers.

*P. Humph.* This apoplex will, certain, be his end.

*K. Hen.* I pray you, take me up, and bear me hence

Into some other chamber: softly, 'pray.

[*They convey the King into an inner part of the room, and place him on a bed.*]

Let there be no noise made, my gentle friends;  
Unless some dull<sup>4</sup> and favourable hand  
Will whisper music to my weary spirit.

*War.* Call for the musick in the other room.

*K. Hen.* Set me the crown upon my pillow here.

*Cla.* His eye is hollow, and he changes much.

*War.* Less noise, less noise.

*Enter Prince HENRY.*

*P. Hen.* Who saw the duke of Clarence?

<sup>1</sup> Wall.

<sup>2</sup> Make me afraid.

<sup>3</sup> An historical fact, on Oct. 12. 1411.

<sup>4</sup> Melancholy, soothing.

*Cla.* I am here, brother, full of heaviness.

*P. Hen.* How now ! rain within doors, and none abroad !

How doth the king ?

*P. Humph.* Exceeding ill.

*P. Hen.* Heard he the good news yet?

Tell it him.

*P. Humph.* He alter'd much upon the hearing it.

*P. Hen.* If he be sick

With joy, he will recover without physick.

*War.* Not so much noise, my lords : — sweet prince, speak low ;

The king your father is dispos'd to sleep.

*Cla.* Let us withdraw into the other room.

*War.* Will't please your grace, to go along with us ?

*P. Hen.* No ; I will sit and watch here by the king. *[Exeunt all but P. HENRY.]*

Why doth the crown lie there upon his pillow,  
Being so troublesome a bedfellow ?

O polish'd perturbation ! golden care !

That keep'st the ports<sup>5</sup> of slumber open wide

To many a watchful night ! — sleep with it now !

Yet not so sound, and half so deeply sweet,

As he, whose brow, with homely biggin<sup>6</sup> bound,

Snores out the watch of night. O majesty !

When thou dost pinch thy bearer, thou dost sit

Like rich armour worn in heat of day,

That scalds with safety. By his gates of breath

There lies a downy feather, which stirs not :

Did he suspire, that light and weightless down

Perforce must move. — My gracious lord ! my father ! —

This sleep is sound indeed ; this is a sleep,

That from this golden rigol<sup>7</sup> hath divorc'd

So many English kings. Thy due, from me,

<sup>5</sup> Gates.

<sup>6</sup> Cap.

<sup>7</sup> Circle.

Is tears, and heavy sorrows of the blood ;  
Which nature, love, and filial tenderness,  
Shall, O dear father, pay thee plenteously ;  
My due, from thee, is this imperial crown,  
Which, as immediate from thy place and blood,  
Derives itself to me. Lo, here it sits, —  
[*Putting it on his head.*

Which heaven shall guard : And put the world's  
whole strength  
Into one giant arm, it shall not force  
This lineal honour from me. This from thee  
Will I to mine leave, as 'tis left to me. [*Exit.*  
*K. Hen.* Warwick ! Gloster ! Clarence !

*Re-enter WARWICK, and the rest.*

*Cla.* Doth the king call ?

*War.* What would your majesty ? How fares your  
grace ?

*K. Hen.* Why did you leave me here alone, my  
lords ?

*Cla.* We left the prince my brother here, my  
liege,

Who undertook to sit and watch by you.

*K. Hen.* The prince of Wales ? Where is he ?  
let me see him :

He is not here.

*War.* This door is open ; he is gone this way.

*P. Humph.* He came not through the chamber  
where we stay'd.

*K. Hen.* Where is the crown ? who took it from  
my pillow ?

*War.* When we withdrew, my liege, we left it  
here.

*K. Hen.* The prince hath ta'en it hence : — go,  
seek him out ;

Is he so hasty, that he doth suppose  
My sleep my death ? —



Find him, my lord of Warwick ; chide him hither.

[*Exit* WARWICK.]

This part of his conjoins with my disease,  
And helps to end me.— See, sons, what things you  
are !

How quickly nature falls into revolt,  
When gold becomes her object !  
For this the foolish over-careful fathers  
Have broke their sleep with thoughts, their brains  
with care,

Their bones with industry ;  
For this they have engrossed and piled up  
The canker'd heaps of strange-achieved gold ;  
For this they have been thoughtful to invest  
Their sons with arts, and martial exercises :  
When, like the bee, tolling<sup>8</sup> from every flower  
The virtuous sweets ;  
Our thighs pack'd with wax, our mouths with  
honey,

We bring it to the hive ; and, like the bees,  
Are murder'd for our pains. This bitter taste  
Yield his engrossments<sup>9</sup> to the ending father.—

*Re-enter* WARWICK.

Now, where is he that will not stay so long  
Till his friend sickness hath determin'd<sup>1</sup> me ?

*War.* My lord, I found the prince in the next  
room,

Washing with kindly tears his gentle cheeks ;  
With such a deep demeanour in great sorrow,  
That tyranny, which never quaff'd but blood,  
Would, by beholding him, have wash'd his knife  
With gentle eye-drops. He is coming hither.

*K. Hen.* But wherefore did he take away the  
crown ?

<sup>8</sup> Taking toll.

<sup>9</sup> Accumulations.

<sup>1</sup> Ended.

*Re-enter Prince HENRY.*

Lo, where he comes.—Come hither to me, Harry:—  
Depart the chamber, leave us here alone.

[*Exeunt CLARENCE, Prince HUMPHREY,  
Lords, &c.*

*P. Hen.* I never thought to hear you speak again.

*K. Hen.* Thy wish was father, Harry, to that  
thought :

I stay too long by thee, I weary thee.  
Dost thou so hunger for my empty chair,  
That thou wilt needs invest thee with mine honours  
Before thy hour be ripe ? O foolish youth !  
Thou seek'st the greatness that will overwhelm thee.  
Stay but a little ; for my cloud of dignity  
Is held from falling with so weak a wind,  
That it will quickly drop : my day is dim.  
Thou hast stolen that, which, after some few hours,  
Were thine without offence ; and, at my death,  
Thou hast seal'd up my expectation :<sup>9</sup>  
Thy life did manifest, thou lov'dst me not,  
And thou wilt have me die assur'd of it.  
Thou hid'st a thousand daggers in thy thoughts ;  
Which thou hast whetted on thy stony heart,  
To stab at half an hour of my life.  
What ! canst thou not forbear me half an hour ?  
Then get thee gone ; and dig my grave thyself ;  
And bid the merry bells ring to thine ear,  
That thou art crown'd, not that I am dead.  
Let all the tears that should bedew my hearse,  
Be drops of balm, to sanctify thy head :  
Only compound me with begotten dust ;  
Give that which gave thee life, unto the worms.  
Pluck down my officers, break my decrees ;  
For now a time is come to mock at form,  
Harry the Fifth is crown'd : — up, vanity !  
Down, royal state ! all you sage counsellors, hence !  
And to the English court assemble now,

\* Confirmed my opinion.

From every region, apes of idleness !  
Now, neighbour confines, purge you of your scum :  
Have you a ruffian, that will swear, drink, dance,  
Revel the night ; rob, murder, and commit  
The oldest sins the newest kind of ways ?  
Be happy, he will trouble you no more :  
England shall double gild his treble guilt ;  
England shall give him office, honour, might ;  
For the fifth Harry from curb'd licence plucks  
The muzzle of restraint, and the wild dog  
Shall flesh his tooth in every innocent.  
O my poor kingdom, sick with civil blows !  
When that my care could not withhold thy riots,  
What wilt thou do, when riot is thy care ?  
O, thou wilt be a wilderness again,  
Peopled with wolves, thy old inhabitants !

*P. Hen.* O pardon me, my liege ! but for my  
tears, [Kneeling.]

The moist impediments unto my speech,  
I had forestall'd this dear and deep rebuke,  
Ere you with grief had spoke, and I had heard  
The course of it so far. There is your crown ;  
And He that wears the crown immortally.  
Long guard it yours ! If I affect it more,  
Than as your honour, and as your renown,  
Let me no more from this obedience rise,  
(Which my most true and inward duteous spirit  
Teacheth,) this prostrate and exterior bending !  
Heaven witness with me, when I here came in,  
And found no course of breath within your majesty.  
How cold it struck my heart ! if I do feign,  
O, let me in my present wildness die ;  
And never live to show the incredulous world  
The noble change that I have purposed !  
Coming to look on you, thinking you dead,  
(And dead almost, my liege, to think you were.)  
I spake unto the crown, as having sense,  
And thus upbraided it. The care on thee depending  
Hath fed upon the body of my father ;

*Therefore, thou, best of gold, art worst of gold.  
Other, less fine in carat<sup>3</sup>, is more precious,  
Preserving life in med'cine potable:  
But thou, most fine, most honour'd, most renown'd,  
Hast eat thy bearer up. Thus, my most royal liege,  
Accusing it, I put it on my head;  
To try with it,—as with an enemy,  
That had before my face murder'd my father,—  
The quarrel of a true inheritor.  
But if it did infect my blood with joy,  
Or swell my thoughts to any strain of pride;  
If any rebel or vain spirit of mine  
Did, with the least affection of a welcome,  
Give entertainment to the might of it,  
Let God for ever keep it from my head!  
And make me as the poorest vassal is,  
That doth with awe and terror kneel to it!*

*K. Hen.* O my son!  
Heaven put it in thy mind to take it hence,  
That thou might'st win the more thy father's love,  
Leading so wisely in excuse of it.  
Come hither, Harry, sit thou by my bed,  
And hear, I think, the very latest counsel  
That ever I shall breathe. Heaven knows, my son,  
By what by-paths, and indirect crook'd ways,  
I met this crown; and I myself know well,  
How troublesome it sat upon my head:  
To thee it shall descend with better quiet,  
Better opinion, better confirmation:  
For all the soil of the achievement goes  
With me into the earth. It seem'd in me,  
But as an honour snatch'd with boisterous hand;  
And I had many living, to upbraid  
My gain of it by their assistances;  
Which daily grew to quarrel and to bloodshed,  
Wounding supposed peace: all these bold fears,  
Thou see'st, with peril I have answered:

<sup>3</sup> A term used in describing the fineness of gold.  
VOL. V.

For all my reign hath been but as a scene  
Acting that argument ; and now my death  
Changes the mode : for what in me was purchas'd,<sup>s</sup>  
Falls upon thee in a more fairer sort ;  
So thou the garland wear'st successively.  
Yet, though thou stand'st more sure than I could do,  
Thou art not firm enough, since griefs are green ;  
And all thy friends, which thou must make thy  
friends,

Have but their stings and teeth newly ta'en out ;  
By whose fell working I was first advanc'd,  
And by whose power I well might lodge a fear  
To be again displac'd : which to avoid,  
I cut them off ; and had a purpose now  
To lead out many to the Holy Land ;  
Lest rest, and lying still, might make them look  
Too near unto my state. Therefore, my Harry,  
Be it thy course, to busy giddy minds  
With foreign quarrels ; that action, hence borne  
out,

May waste the memory of the former days.  
More would I, but my lungs are wasted so,  
That strength of speech is utterly denied me.  
How I came by the crown, O God, forgive !  
And grant it may with thee in true peace live !

*P. Hen.* My gracious liege,  
You won it, wore it, kept it, gave it me ;  
Then plain, and right, must my possession be :  
Which I, with more than with a common pain,  
'Gainst all the world will rightfully maintain.

*Enter Prince JOHN of Lancaster, WARWICK, Lords  
and others.*

*K. Hen.* Look, look, here comes my John of  
Lancaster.

<sup>s</sup> Purchase, in Shakspeare, frequently means *the goods*.

*P. John.* Health, peace, and happiness, to my royal father!

*K. Hen.* Thou bring'st me happiness, and peace, son John;

But health, alack, with youthful wings is flown  
From this bare, wither'd trunk; upon thy sight,  
My worldly business makes a period.——

Where is my lord of Warwick?

*P. Hen.* My lord of Warwick!

*K. Hen.* Doth any name particular belong  
Unto the lodging where I first did swoon?

*War.* 'Tis called Jerusalem, my noble lord.

*K. Hen.* Laud be to God!—even there my life  
must end.

It hath been prophesied to me many years,  
I should not die but in Jerusalem;  
Which vainly I suppos'd the Holy Land:—  
But, bear me to that chamber; there I'll lie;  
In that Jerusalem shall Harry die. [Exit.

---

## ACT THE FIFTH.

### SCENE I.

Glostershire. *A Hall in Shallow's House.*

*Enter SHALLOW, FALSTAFF, BARDOLPH, and Page.*

*Shal.* By cock and pye, sir, you shall not away to-night.——What, Davy, I say!

*Fal.* You must excuse me, master Robert Shallow.

*Shal.* I will not excuse you; you shall not be excused; excuses shall not be admitted; there is

no excuse shall serve; you shall not be excused.  
—Why, Davy!

*Enter DAVY.*

*Davy.* Here, sir.

*Shal.* Davy, Davy, Davy,—let me see, Davy; let me see:—yea, marry, William cook, bid him come hither.—Sir John, you shall not be excused.

*Davy.* Marry, sir, thus;—those precepts<sup>6</sup> cannot be served: and, again, sir,—Shall we sow the head-land with wheat?

*Shal.* With red wheat, Davy. But for William cook;—Are there no young pigeons?

*Davy.* Yes, sir.—Here is now the smith's note, for shoeing, and plough-irons.

*Shal.* Let it be cast<sup>7</sup>, and paid:—sir John, you shall not be excused.

*Davy.* Now, sir, a new link to the bucket must needs be had:—And, sir, do you mean to stop any of William's wages, about the sack he lost the other day at Hinckley fair?

*Shal.* He shall answer it:—Some pigeons, Davy; a couple of short-legged hens; a joint of mutton; and any pretty little tiny kickshaws, tell William cook.

*Davy.* Doth the man of war stay all night, sir?

*Shal.* Yes, Davy. I will use him well; A friend i'the court is better than a penny in purse. Use his men well, Davy. About thy business, Davy.

*Davy.* I beseech you, sir, to countenance William Visor of Wincot against Clement Perkes of the hill.

*Shal.* There are many complaints, Davy, against that Visor; that Visor is an arrant knave, on my knowledge.

*Davy.* I grant your worship, that he is a knave, sir: but yet, Heaven forbid, sir, but a knave should have some countenance at his friend's request. As

honest man, sir, is able to speak for himself, when a knave is not. I have served your worship truly, sir, this eight years; and if I cannot once or twice in a quarter bear out a knave against an honest man, I have but a very little credit with your worship. The knave is mine honest friend, sir; therefore, I beseech your worship, let him be countenanced.

*Shal.* Go to; I say, he shall have no wrong. Look about, Davy. [*Exit DAVY.*] Where are you, sir John? Come, off with your boots.—Give me your hand, master Bardolph.

*Bard.* I am glad to see your worship.

*Shal.* I thank thee with all my heart, kind master Bardolph:—and welcome, my tall fellow. [*To the Page.*] Come, sir John. [*Exit SHALLOW.*]

*Fal.* I'll follow you, good master Robert Shallow. Bardolph, look to our horses. [*Exeunt BARDOLPH and Page.*] If I were sawed into quantities, I should make four dozen of such bearded hermit's staves as master Shallow. It is a wonderful thing, to see the semblable coherence of his men's spirits and his: They, by observing him, do bear themselves like foolish justices; he, by conversing with them, is turned into a justice-like serving man; their spirits are so married in conjunction with the participation of society, that they flock together in consent, like so many wild geese. If I had a suit to master Shallow, I would humour his men, with the imputation of being near their master: if to his men, I would curry with master Shallow, that no man could better command his servants. It is certain, that either wise bearing, or ignorant carriage, is caught, as men take diseases, one of another: therefore, let men take heed of their company. I will devise matter enough out of this Shallow, to keep prince Harry in continual laughter, the wearing-out of six fashions, (which is four terms, or two actions,) and he shall laugh without intervallums. O, it is



much, that a lie, with a slight oath, and a jest, with a sad brow<sup>8</sup>, will do with a fellow that never had the ache in his shoulders! O, you shall see him laugh, till his face be like a wet cloak ill laid up.

Shal. [*Within.*] Sir John!

Fal. I come, master Shallow; I come, master Shallow. [*Exit FALSTAFF.*]

SCENE II.

Westminster. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter WARWICK, and the Lord Chief Justice.*

War. How now, my lord chief justice? whither away?

Ch. Just. How doth the king?

War. Exceeding well; his cares are now all ended.

Ch. Just. I hope, not dead.

War. He's walk'd the way of nature; And, to our purposes, he lives no more.

Ch. Just. I would his majesty had call'd me with him:

The service that I truly did his life,  
Hath left me open to all injuries.

War. Indeed, I think, the young king loves you not.

Ch. Just. I know he doth not; and do arm myself,

To welcome the condition of the time;  
Which cannot look more hideously upon me  
Than I have drawn it in my fantasy.

<sup>8</sup> A serious face.

*Enter Prince JOHN, Prince HUMPHREY, CLARENCE,  
WESTMORELAND, and others.*

*War.* Here come the heavy issue of dead Harry :  
O, that the living Harry had the temper  
Of him, the worst of these three gentlemen !  
How many nobles then should hold their places,  
That must strike sail to spirits of vile sort !

*Ch. Just.* Alas ! I fear, all will be overturn'd.

*P. John.* Good morrow, cousin Warwick.

*P. Humph. Cla.* Good morrow, cousin.

*P. John.* We meet like men that had forgot to  
speak.

*War.* We do remember ; but our argument  
Is all too heavy to admit much talk.

*P. John.* Well, peace be with him that hath made  
us heavy !

*Ch. Just.* Peace be with us, lest we be heavier !

*P. Humph.* O, good my lord, you have lost a  
friend indeed :

And I dare swear, you borrow not that face  
Of seeming sorrow ; it is, sure, your own.

*P. John.* Though no man be assur'd what grace  
to find,

You stand in coldest expectation :

I am the sorrier ; 'would 'twere otherwise.

*Cla.* Well, you must now speak sir John Falstaff  
fair ;

Which swims against your stream of quality.

*Ch. Just.* Sweet princes, what I did, I did in  
honour,

Led by the impartial conduct of my soul ;  
And never shall you see, that I will beg  
A ragged and forestall'd remission. —

If truth and upright innocency fail me,  
I'll to the king my master that is dead,  
And tell him who hath sent me after him,

*War.* Here comes the prince.

*Enter King HENRY V.*

*Ch. Just.* Good morrow ; and heaven save your majesty !

*King.* This new and gorgeous garment, majesty,  
Sits not so easy on me as you think. —

Brothers, you mix your sadness with some fear ;

This is the English, not the Turkish court,

Not Amurath an Amurath<sup>9</sup> succeeds,

But Harry Harry : Yet be sad, good brothers,

For, to speak truth, it very well becomes you ;

Sorrow so royally in you appears,

That I will deeply put the fashion on,

And wear it in my heart. Why then, be sad :

But entertain no more of it, good brothers,

Than a joint burden laid upon us all.

For me, by Heaven, I bid you be assur'd,

I'll be your father and your brother too ;

Let me but bear your love, I'll bear your cares.

Yet weep, that Harry's dead ; and so will I :

But Harry lives, that shall convert those tears,

By number, into hours of happiness.

*P. John, &c.* We hope no other from your majesty.

*King.* You all look strangely on me : — and you most ;

[*To the Chief Justice.*]

You are, I think, assur'd, I love you not.

*Ch. Just.* I am assur'd, if I be measur'd rightly,

Your majesty hath no just cause to hate me.

*King.* No !

How might a prince of my great hopes forget

So great indignities you laid upon me ?

What ! rate, rebuke, and roughly send to prison

The immediate heir of England ! Was this easy ?

May this be wash'd in Lethe and forgotten ?

*Ch. Just.* I then did use the person of your father ;

<sup>9</sup> Emperor of the Turks, died in 1536 ; his son, who succeeded him, had all his brothers strangled.

The image of his power lay then in me  
And, in the administration of his law,  
Whiles I was busy for the commonwealth,  
Your highness pleased to forget my place,  
The majesty and power of law and justice,  
The image of the king whom I presented,  
And struck me in my very seat of judgment;  
Whereon, as an offender to your father,  
I gave bold way to my authority,  
And did commit you. If the deed were ill,  
Be you contented, wearing now the garland,  
To have a son set your decrees at nought;  
To pluck down justice from your awful bench;  
To trip the course of law, and blunt the sword  
That guards the peace and safety of your person:  
Nay, more: to spurn at your most royal image,  
And mock your workings in a second body.  
Question your royal thoughts, make the case yours;  
Be now the father, and propose a son:  
Hear your own dignity so much profan'd,  
See your most dreadful laws so loosely slighted,  
Behold yourself so by a son disdain'd:  
And then imagine me taking your part,  
And, in your power, soft silencing your son:  
After this cold considerance, sentence me;  
And, as you are a king, speak in your state,<sup>1</sup>  
What I have done, that misbecame my place,  
My person, or my liege's sovereignty.

*King.* You are right, justice, and you weigh this  
well;  
Therefore still bear the balance, and the sword:  
And I do wish your honours may increase,  
Till you do live to see a son of mine  
Offend you, and obey you, as I did.  
So shall I live to speak my father's words;—  
*Happy am I, that have a man so bold,  
That dares do justice on my proper son:*

<sup>1</sup> In your regal character and office.

*And not less happy, having such a son :  
 That would deliver up his greatness so  
 Into the hands of justice. — You did commit me:  
 For which I do commit into your hand  
 The unstained sword that you have us'd to bear;  
 With this remembrance, — That you use the same  
 With the like bold, just, and impartial spirit,  
 As you have done 'gainst me. There is my hand;  
 You shall be as a father to my youth :  
 My voice shall sound as you do prompt mine ear;  
 And I will stoop and humble my intents  
 To your well-practis'd, wise directions. —  
 And, princes all, believe me, I beseech you; —  
 My father is gone wild into his grave,  
 For in his tomb lie my affections ;  
 And with his spirit sadly I survive;  
 To mock the expectation of the world ;  
 To frustrate prophecies ; and to raze out  
 Rotten opinion, who hath writ me down  
 After my seeming. The tide of blood in me  
 Hath proudly flow'd in vanity till now :  
 Now doth it turn, and ebb back to the sea :  
 Where it shall mingle with the state of floods,  
 And flow henceforth in formal majesty.  
 Now call we our high court of parliament :  
 And let us choose such limbs of noble council,  
 That the great body of our state may go  
 In equal rank with the best govern'd nation ;  
 That war, or peace, or both at once, may be  
 As things acquainted and familiar to us ; —  
 In which you, father, shall have foremost hand.*

*[ To the Lord Chief Justice ]*

Our coronation done, we will accite,<sup>2</sup>  
 As I before remember'd, all our state :  
 And (Heaven consigning to my good intents)  
 No prince, nor peer, shall have just cause to say,  
 Heaven shorten Harry's happy life one day.

*(Exit)*

## SCENE III.

Glostershire. *The Garden of Shallow's House.*

*Enter FALSTAFF, SHALLOW, SILENCE, BARDOLPH, the Page, and DAVY.*

*Shal.* Nay, you shall see mine orchard : where, in an arbour, we will eat a last year's pippin of my own grafting, with a dish of carraways, and so forth ; — come, cousin Silence ; — and then to bed.

*Fal.* You have here a goodly dwelling, and a rich.

*Shal.* Barren, barren, barren ; beggars all, beggars all, sir John : — marry, good sir. — Spread, Davy ; spread, Davy ; well said, Davy.

*Fal.* This Davy serves you for good uses ; he is your serving-man, and your husbandman.

*Shal.* A good varlet, a good varlet, a very good varlet, sir John. — By the mass, I have drunk too much sack at supper : — A good varlet. Now sit down, now sit down : — come, cousin.

*Sil.* Ah, sirrah ! quoth-a, — we shall

*Do nothing but eat and make good cheer,*

[Singing.

*And praise heaven for the merry year ;*

*So merrily,*

*And ever among so merrily.*

*Fal.* There's a merry heart ! — Good master Silence, I'll give you a health for that anon.

*Shal.* Give master Bardolph some wine, Davy.

*Davy.* Sweet sir, sit ; [*Seating BARDOLPH and the Page at another table.*] I'll be with you anon ; — most sweet sir, sit. — Master page, good master page, sit : *proface* ! <sup>3</sup> What you want in meat, we'll

<sup>3</sup> *Italian*, much good may it do you.

have in drink. But you must bear; The heart's all. [Exit.]

*Shal.* Be merry, master Bardolph; — and my little soldier there, be merry.

*Sil.* *Be merry, be merry, my wife's as all;* [Singing.]

*For women are shrews, both short and tall;  
'Tis merry in hall, when beards wag all,  
And welcome merry shrove-tide.*

*Be merry, be merry, &c.*

*Fal.* I did not think master Silence had been a man of this mettle.

*Sil.* Who, I? I have been merry twice and once, ere now.

*Re-enter DAVY.*

*Davy.* There is a dish of leather-coats<sup>4</sup> for you. [Setting them before BARDOLPH.]

*Shal.* Davy, —

*Davy.* Your worship? — I'll be with you straight.

[To BARD.] — A cup of wine, sir?

*Sil.* *A cup of wine, that's brisk and fine,* [Singing.]

*And drink unto the Lady mine;  
And a merry heart lives long-a.*

*Fal.* Well said, master Silence.

*Sil.* And we shall be merry; — now comes in the sweet of the night.

*Fal.* Health and long life to you, master Silence.

*Sil.* *Fill the cup, and let it come;*

*I'll pledge you a mile to the bottom.*

*Shal.* Honest Bardolph, welcome: If thou wantest any thing, and wilt not call, beshrew thy heart. — Welcome, my little tiny thief; [To the Page.] and welcome, indeed, too. — I'll drink to master Bardolph, and to all the cavaleroes about London.

<sup>4</sup> Apples commonly called russetines.

*Davy.* I hope to see London once ere I die.

*Bard.* An I might see you there, Davy, —

*Shal.* By the mass, you'll crack a quart together.

Ha! will you not, master Bardolph?

*Bard.* Yes, sir, in a pottle pot.

*Shal.* I thank thee: — The knave will stick by thee, I can assure thee that: he will not out: he is true bred.

*Bard.* And I'll stick by him, sir.

*Shal.* Why, there spoke a king. Lack nothing: be merry. [*Knocking heard.*] Look who's at door there: Ho! who knocks? [*Exit DAVY.*]

*Fal.* Why, now you have done me right.

[*To SILENCE, who drinks a bumper.*]

*Sil.* *Do me right,* [Singing.

*And dub me knight:* <sup>5</sup>

*Samingo.* <sup>6</sup>

Is't not so?

*Fal.* 'Tis so.

*Sil.* Is't so? Why, then say, an old man can do somewhat.

*Re-enter DAVY.*

*Davy.* An it please your worship, there's one Pistol come from the court with news.

*Fal.* From the court! let him come in. —

*Enter PISTOL.*

How now, Pistol?

*Pist.* Save you, sir John!

*Fal.* What wind blew you hither, Pistol?

*Pist.* Not the ill wind which blows no man to good. — Sweet knight, thou art now one of the greatest men in the realm.

<sup>5</sup> He who drank a bumper on his knees to the health of his mistress was dubb'd a knight for the evening.

<sup>6</sup> It should be *Domingo*; it is part of a song in one of *Nashe's plays*.



*Sil.* By'r lady, I think 'a be; but goodman Puff of Barson.

*Pist.* Puff?

Puff in thy teeth, most recreant coward base! —  
Sir John, I am thy Pistol, and thy friend,  
And helter-skelter have I rode to thee;  
And tidings do I bring, and lucky joys,  
And golden times, and happy news of price.

*Fal.* I pr'ythee now, deliver them like a man of this world.

*Pist.* A fico for the world, and worldlings base!  
I speak of Africa, and golden joys.

*Fal.* O base Assyrian knight, what is thy news?  
Let king Cophetua know the truth thereof.

*Sil.* And Robin Hood, Scarlet, and John. [*Sings.*]

*Pist.* Shall dunghill curs confront the Helicons?  
And shall good news be baffled?

Then, Pistol, lay thy head in Furies' lap.

*Shal.* Honest gentleman, I know not your breeding.

*Pist.* Why then, lament therefore.

*Shal.* Give me pardon, sir; — If, sir, you come with news from the court, I take it, there is but two ways; either to utter them, or to conceal them. I am, sir, under the king, in some authority.

*Pist.* Under which king, Bezonian? speak, or die.

*Shal.* Under king Harry.

*Pist.* Harry the fourth? or fifth?

*Shal.* Harry the fourth.

*Pist.* A fico for thine office! —

Sir John, thy tender lambkin now is king;  
Harry the fifth's the man. I speak the truth:  
When Pistol lies, do this; and fig me, like  
The bragging Spaniard.

*Fal.* What! is the old king dead?

*Pist.* As nail in door: the things I speak, are just.

*Fal.* Away, Bardolph; saddle my horse. — Master Robert Shallow, choose what office thou wilt in the

land, 'tis thine. — Pistol, I will double-charge thee with dignities.

*Bard.* O joyful day !— I would not take a knight-hood for my fortune.

*Pist.* What ? I do bring good news ?

*Fal.* Carry master Silence to bed. — Master Shallow, my lord Shallow, be what thou wilt, I am fortune's steward. Get on thy boots ; we'll ride all night : — O, sweet Pistol : — Away Bardolph. [*Exit BARD.*] — Come, Pistol, utter more to me ; and withal, devise something, to do thyself good. — Boot, boot, master Shallow ; I know, the young king is sick for me. Let us take any man's horses ; the laws of England are at my commandment. Happy are they which have been my friends ; and woe to my lord chief justice !

*Pist.* Let vultures vile seize on his lungs also !

*Where is the life that late I led, say they :*

Why, here it is ; Welcome these pleasant days,

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE IV.

*A public Place near Westminster Abbey.*

*Enter Two Grooms, strewing Rushes.*

1 *Groom.* More rushes, more rushes.

2 *Groom.* The trumpets have sounded twice.

1 *Groom.* It will be two o'clock ere they come from the coronation : Despatch, despatch.

[*Exeunt Grooms.*]

*Enter FALSTAFF, SHALLOW, PISTOL, BARDOLPH, and the Page.*

*Fal.* Stand here by me, master Robert Shallow ;  
I will make the king do you grace : I will leer

upon him, as 'a comes by ; and do but mark the countenance that he will give me.

*Pist.* Bless thy lungs, good knight.

*Fal.* Come here, Pistol ; stand behind me. — O, if I had had time to have made new liveries, I would have bestowed the thousand pound I borrowed of you. [*To SHALLOW.*] But 'tis no matter ; this poor show doth better : this doth infer the zeal I had to see him.

*Shal.* It doth so.

*Fal.* It shows my earnestness of affection.

*Shal.* It doth so.

*Fal.* My devotion.

*Shal.* It doth, it doth, it doth.

*Fal.* As it were, to ride day and night ; and not to deliberate, not to remember, not to have patience to shift me.

*Shal.* It is most certain.

*Fal.* But to stand stained with travel, and sweating with desire to see him : thinking of nothing else ; putting all affairs else in oblivion ; as if there were nothing else to be done, but to see him.

*Pist.* 'Tis *semper idem*, for *absque hoc nihil est* : 'Tis all in every part.

*Shal.* 'Tis so indeed.

[*Shouts within, and the Trumpets sound.*]

*Pist.* There roar'd the sea, and trumpet-clangor sounds.

*Enter the King, and his Train, the Chief Justice among them.*

*Fal.* God save thy grace, king Hal ! my royal Hal !

*Pist.* The heavens thee guard and keep, most royal imp of fame !

*Fal.* God save thee, my sweet boy !

7 'Tis all in all, and all in every part.

ig. My lord chief justice, speak to that vain man.

Just. Have you your wits? know you what 'tis you speak?

!. My king! my Jove! I speak to thee, my heart!

ig. I know thee not, old man: Fall to thy prayers;

ill white hairs become a fool, and jester!

e long dream'd of such a kind of man,

rfeit-swell'd, so old, and so profane;

eing awake, I do despise my dream.

less thy body, hence<sup>s</sup>, and more thy grace;

e gormandizing; know, the grave doth gape

hee thrice wider than for other men:

r not to me with a fool-born jest;

me not, that I am the thing I was:

eaven doth know, so shall the world perceive,

I have turn'd away my former self;

ll I those that kept me company.

i thou dost hear I am as I have been,

oach me: and thou shalt be as thou wast,

utor and the feeder of my riots:

hen, I banish thee, on pain of death, —

have done the rest of my misleaders, —

o come near our person by ten miles.

ompetence of life, I will allow you,

lack of means enforce you not to evil:

as we hear you do reform yourselves,

ill, — according to your strength, and qualities, —

you advancement. — Be it your charge, my lord,

e perform'd the tenor of our word. —

n. [Exeunt King, and his Train.

!. Master Shallow, I owe you a thousand pound.

<sup>s</sup> Henceforward.

*Shal.* Ay, marry, sir John ; which I beseech you to let me have home with me.

*Fal.* That can hardly be, master Shallow. Do not you grieve at this ; I shall be sent for in private to him : look you, he must seem thus to the world. Fear not your advancement ; I will be the man yet, that shall make you great.

*Shal.* I cannot perceive how ; unless you give me your doublet, and stuff me out with straw. I beseech you, good sir John, let me have five hundred of my thousand.

*Fal.* Sir, I will be as good as my word : this that you heard, was but a colour.

*Shal.* A colour, I fear, that you will die in, sir John.

*Fal.* Fear no colours ; go with me to dinner. Come, lieutenant Pistol ; — come, Bardolph : — I shall be sent for soon at night. [ *Exeunt.*

*Re-enter Prince JOHN, the Chief Justice, Officers, &c.*

*P. John.* I like this fair proceeding of the king's ;  
He hath intent, his wonted followers  
Shall all be very well provided for ;  
But all are banish'd, till their conversations  
Appear more wise and modest to the world.

*Ch. Just.* And so they are.

*P. John.* The king hath call'd his parliament, my lord.

*Ch. Just.* He hath.

*P. John.* I will lay odds, — that ere this year  
expire,

We bear our civil swords, and native fire,  
As far as France : I heard a bird so sing,  
Whose musick, to my thinking, pleas'd the king.  
Come, will you hence ? [ *Exeunt.*

## EPILOGUE,

SPOKEN BY A DANCER.

*FIRST, my fear; then, my court'sy: last, my speech. My fear is your displeasure; my court'sy, my duty; and my speech, to beg your pardons. If you look for a good speech now, you undo me: for what I have to say, is of mine own making; and what, indeed, I should say, will, I doubt, prove mine own marring. But to the purpose, and so to the venture. — Be it known to you, (as it is very well,) I was lately here in the end of a displeasing play, to pray your patience for it, and to promise you a better. I did mean, indeed, to pay you with this; which, if, like an ill venture, it come unluckily home, I break, and you, my gentle creditors, lose. Here, I promised you, I would be, and here I commit my body to your mercies: bate me some, and I will pay you some, and, as most debtors do, promise you infinitely.*

*If my tongue cannot entreat you to acquit me, will you command me to use my legs? and yet that were but light payment, — to dance out of your debt. But a good conscience will make any possible satisfaction, and so will I. All the gentlewomen here have forgiven me; if the gentlemen will not, then the gentlemen do not agree with the gentlewomen, which was never seen before in such an assembly.*

*One word more, I beseech you. If you be not too much cloyed with fat meat, our humble author will*

*continue the story, with Sir John in it, and make you merry with fair Katharine of France : where, for any thing I know, Falstaff shall die of a sweat, unless already he be killed with your hard opinions ; for Oldcastle died a martyr, and this is not the man. My tongue is weary ; when my legs are too, I will bid you good night : and so kneel down before you ; — but, indeed, to pray for the queen. \**

\* Most of the ancient interludes conclude with a prayer for the king or queen. Hence, perhaps, the *Vincent Rex & Regina*, at the bottom of our modern play-bills.

---

**KING HENRY V.**

---



## PERSONS REPRESENTED.

---

KING HENRY THE FIFTH.

DUKE OF GLOSTER, } *brothers to the King.*  
DUKE OF BEDFORD, }

DUKE OF EXETER, *uncle to the King.*

DUKE OF YORK, *cousin to the King.*

EARLS OF SALISBURY, WESTMORELAND, and  
WARWICK.

ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY.

BISHOP OF ELY.

EARL OF CAMBRIDGE, } *Conspirators against the*  
LORD SCROOP, } *King.*  
SIR THOMAS GREY, }

SIR THOMAS ERPINGHAM, GOWER, FLUELLEN,  
MACMORRIS, JAMY, *Officers in King Henry's*  
*army.*

BATES, COURT, WILLIAMS, *soldiers in the same.*

NYM, BARDOLPH, PISTOL, *formerly servants to*  
*Falstaff, now soldiers in the same.*

Boy, *servant to them.* A Herald. Chorus.

CHARLES THE SIXTH, *King of France.*

LEWIS, *the Dauphin.*

DUKES OF BURGUNDY, ORLEANS, and BOURBON.

*The Constable of France.*

RAMBURES, and GRANDPREE, *French Lords.*

*Governor of HARFLEUR.*

MONTJOY, *a French Herald.*

*Ambassadors to the King of England.*

ISABEL, *Queen of France.*

KATHARINE, *daughter of Charles and Isabel.*

ALICE, *a lady attending on the Princess Katharine.*

QUICKLY, *Pistol's wife, an Hostess.*

*Lords, Ladies, Officers, French and English Sol-*  
*diers, Messengers, and Attendants.*

*The SCENE, at the beginning of the Play, lies in*  
*England ; but afterwards, wholly in France.*

*Enter CHORUS.*

O, FOR a muse of fire that would ascend  
The brightest heaven of invention !  
A kingdom for a stage, princes to act,  
And monarchs to behold the swelling scene !  
Then should the warlike Harry, like himself,  
Assume the port of Mars ; and at his heels,  
Leash'd in like hounds, should famine, sword, and  
fire,  
Crouch for employment. But pardon, gentles all,  
The flat unraised spirit, that hath dar'd,  
On this unworthy scaffold, to bring forth  
So great an object : Can this cockpit hold  
The vasty fields of France, or may we cram  
Within this wooden O <sup>1</sup>, the very casques, <sup>2</sup>  
That did affright the air at Agincourt ?  
O, pardon ! since a crooked figure may  
Attest, in little place, a million ;  
And let us, ciphers to this great accompt,  
On your imaginary forces <sup>3</sup> work :  
Suppose, within the girdle of these walls,  
Are now confin'd two mighty monarchies,  
Whose high upreared and abutting fronts  
The perilous, narrow ocean parts asunder.  
Piece out our imperfections with your thoughts ;  
Into a thousand parts divide one man,  
And make imaginary puissance :  
Think, when we talk of horses, that you see them  
Printing their proud hoofs i' the receiving earth :  
For 'tis your thoughts that now must deck our kings,

<sup>1</sup> An allusion to the circular form of the theatre.

<sup>2</sup> Helmets.

<sup>3</sup> Powers of fancy.

Carry them here and there ; jumping o'er times ;  
Turning the accomplishment of many years  
Into an hour-glass ; For the which supply,  
Admit me chorus to this history ;  
Who, prologue-like, your humble patience pray,  
Gently to hear, kindly to judge, our play.

# KING HENRY V.

---

## ACT THE FIRST.

### SCENE I.

London. *An Anti-chamber in the King's Palace.*

*Enter the Archbishop of CANTERBURY, and Bishop of ELY.*

*Cant.* My lord, I'll tell you,—that self bill is urg'd,

Which, in the eleventh year o' the last king's reign,  
Was like, and had indeed against us pass'd,  
But that the scrambling and unquiet time  
Did push it out of further question.

*Ely.* But how, my lord, shall we resist it now?

*Cant.* It must be thought on. If it pass against us,

We lose the better half of our possession :  
For all the temporal lands, which men devout  
By testament have given to the church,  
Would they strip from us ; being valued thus,—  
As much as would maintain, to the king's honour,  
Full fifteen earls, and fifteen hundred knights ;  
Six thousand and two hundred good esquires ;  
And, to relief of lazars, and weak age,  
Of indigent faint souls, past corporal toil,  
A hundred alms-houses, right well supplied ;

*Vol. V.*

*D D*

And to the coffers of the king beside,  
A thousand pounds by the year : Thus runs the  
bill.

*Ely.* This would drink deep.

*Cant.* 'Twould drink the cup and all.

*Ely.* But what prevention ?

*Cant.* The king is full of grace and fair regard.

*Ely.* And a true lover of the holy church.

*Cant.* The courses of his youth promis'd it not.  
The breath no sooner left his father's body,  
But that his wildness, mortified in him,  
Seem'd to die too : yea, at that very moment,  
Consideration like an angel came,  
And whipp'd the offending Adam out of him ;  
Leaving his body as a paradise,  
To envelop and contain celestial spirits.  
Never was such a sudden scholar made :  
Never came reformation in a flood,  
With such a heady current, scouring faults ;  
Nor never Hydra-headed wilfulness.  
So soon did loose his seat, and all at once,  
As in this king.

*Ely.* We are blessed in the change.

*Cant.* Hear him but reason in divinity,  
And, all-admiring, with an inward wish  
You would desire, the king were made a prelate :  
Hear him debate of commonwealth affairs,  
You would say,—it hath been all-in-all his study :  
List<sup>1</sup> his discourse of war, and you shall hear  
A fearful battle render'd you in musick :  
Turn him to any cause of policy,  
The Gordian knot of it he will unloose,  
Familiar as his garter ; that, when he speaks,  
The air, a charter'd libertine, is still,  
And the mute wonder lurketh in men's ears,  
To steal his sweet and honeyed sentences ;  
So that the art and practick part of life

<sup>1</sup> Listen to.

Must be the mistress to this theorick :  
Which is a wonder, how his grace should glean it,  
Since his addiction was to courses vain :  
His companies unletter'd, rude, and shallow ;  
His hours fill'd up with riots, banquets, sports ;  
And never noted in him any study,  
Any retirement, any sequestration  
From open haunts and popularity.

*Ely.* The strawberry grows underneath the nettle ;

And wholesome berries thrive and ripen best,  
Neighbour'd by fruit of baser quality :  
And so the prince obscur'd his contemplation  
Under the veil of wildness ; which, no doubt,  
Grew like the summer grass, fastest by night,  
Unseen, yet crescive<sup>2</sup> in his faculty.

*Cant.* It must be so : for miracles are ceas'd ;  
And therefore we must needs admit the means,  
How things are perfected.

*Ely.* But, my good lord,  
How now for mitigation of this bill  
Urg'd by the commons ? Doth his majesty  
Incline to it, or no ?

*Cant.* He seems indifferent,  
Or, rather, swaying more upon our part,  
Than cherishing the exhibitors against us :  
For I have made an offer to his majesty,—  
Upon our spiritual convocation ;  
And in regard of causes now in hand,  
Which I have open'd to his grace at large,  
As touching France,—to give a greater sum  
Than ever at one time the clergy yet  
Did to his predecessors part withal.

*Ely.* How did this offer seem receiv'd, my lord ?

*Cant.* With good acceptance of his majesty ;  
Save, that there was not time enough to hear  
(As, I perceiv'd, his grace would fain have done,)

<sup>2</sup> Increasing.

The several, and unhidden passages,  
Of his true titles to some certain dukedoms;  
And, generally, to the crown and seat of France,  
Deriv'd from Edward, his great grandfather.

*Ely.* What was the impediment that broke this off?

*Cant.* The French ambassador, upon that instant,  
Crav'd audience: and the hour, I think, is come,  
To give him hearing: Is it four o'clock?

*Ely.* It is.

*Cant.* Then go we in, to know his embassy;  
Which I could, with a ready guess, declare,  
Before the Frenchman speak a word of it.

*Ely.* I'll wait upon you; and I long to hear it.

[*Exeunt.*]

#### SCENE II.

*A Room of State in the same.*

*Enter King HENRY, GLOSTER, BEDFORD, EXETER,  
WARWICK, WESTMORELAND, and Attendants.*

*K. Hen.* Where is my gracious lord of Canterbury?

*Exe.* Not here in presence.

*K. Hen.* Send for him, good uncle.

*West.* Shall we call in the ambassador, my liege?

*K. Hen.* Not yet, my cousin; we would be resolv'd,

Before we hear him, of some things of weight,  
That task our thoughts, concerning us in France.

*Enter the Archbishop of CANTERBURY, and Bishop  
of ELY.*

*Cant.* God, and his angels, guard your sacred  
throne,  
And make you long become it!

*K. Hen.* Sure, we thank you.  
 My learned lord, we pray you to proceed ;  
 And justly and religiously unfold,  
 Why the law Salique, that they have in France,  
 Or should, or should not, bar us in our claim.  
 And heaven forbid, my dear and faithful lord,  
 That you should fashion, wrest, or bow your read-  
                   ing,  
 Or nicely charge your understanding soul  
 With opening titles miscreate, whose right  
 Suits not in native colours with the truth ;  
 For heaven doth know, how many, now in health,  
 Shall drop their blood in approbation  
 Of what your reverence shall incite us to :  
 Therefore take heed how you impawn our person,  
 How you awake the sleeping sword of war ;  
 We charge you in the name of God, take heed :  
 For never two such kingdoms did contend,  
 Without much fall of blood ; whose guiltless drops  
 Are every one a woe, a sore complaint,  
 'Gainst him, whose wrongs give edge unto the swords  
 That make such waste in brief mortality.  
 Under this conjuration, speak, my lord :  
 And we will hear, note, and believe in heart,  
 That what you speak is in your conscience wash'd  
 As pure as sin with baptism.

*Cant.* Then hear me, gracious sovereign,—and  
                   you peers,  
 That owe your lives, your faith, and services,  
 To this imperial throne ; — There is no bar  
 To make against your highness' claim to France,  
 But this, which they produce from Pharamond, —  
*In terram Salicam mulieres nē succedant,*  
*No woman shall succeed in Salique land :*  
 Which Salique land the French unjustly gloze,<sup>3</sup>  
 To be the realm of France, and Pharamond  
 The founder of this law and female bar.

<sup>3</sup> Explain.



Yet their own authors faithfully affirm,  
 That the land Salique lies in Germany,  
 Between the floods of Sala and of Elbe :  
 Where Charles the great, having subdued the  
     Saxons,

There left behind and settled certain French ;  
 Who, holding in disdain the German women,  
 For some dishonest manners of their life,  
 Establish'd there this law, — to wit, no female  
 Should be inheritrix in Salique land ;  
 Which Salique, as I said, 'twixt Elbe and Sala,  
 Is at this day in Germany call'd — Meisen.  
 Thus doth it well appear, the Salique law  
 Was not devised for the realm of France :  
 Nor did the French possess the Salique land  
 Until four hundred one and twenty years  
 After defunction of king Pharamond,  
 Idly suppos'd the founder of this law ;  
 Who died within the year of our redemption  
 Four hundred twenty-six ; and Charles the great  
 Subdued the Saxons, and did seat the French  
 Beyond the river Sala, in the year  
 Eight hundred five. Besides, their writers say,  
 King Pepin, which deposed Childerick,  
 Did, as heir-genêral, being descended  
 Of Blithild, which was daughter to king Clothair,  
 Make claim and title to the crown of France.  
 Hugh Capet also, — that usurp'd the crown  
 Of Charles the duke of Lorain, sole heir male  
 Of the true line and stock of Charles the great, —  
 To fine <sup>4</sup> his title with some show of truth,  
 (Though, in pure truth, it was corrupt and naught,<sup>1</sup>  
 Convey'd himself <sup>5</sup> as heir to the lady Lingare,  
 Daughter to Charlemain, who was the son  
 To Lewis the emperor, and Lewis the son  
 Of Charles the great. Also king Lewis the tenth,  
 Who was sole heir to the usurper Capet,

<sup>4</sup> Make showy or specious.

<sup>5</sup> Derived his title.

Could not keep quiet in his conscience,  
Wearing the crown of France, till satisfied  
That fair queen Isabel, his grandmother,  
Was lineal of the lady Ermengare,  
Daughter to Charles the foresaid duke of Lorain :  
By the which marriage, the line of Charles the great  
Was re-united to the crown of France.  
So that, as clear as is the summer's sun,  
King Pepin's title, and Hugh Capet's claim,  
King Lewis his satisfaction, all appear  
To hold in right and title of the female :  
So do the kings of France unto this day ;  
Howbeit they would hold up this Salique law,  
To bar your highness claiming from the female ;  
And rather choose to hide them in a net,  
Than amply to imbare<sup>6</sup> their crooked titles  
Usurp'd from you and your progenitors.

*K. Hen.* May I, with right and conscience, make  
this claim ?

*Cant.* The sin upon my head, dread sovereign !  
For in the book of Numbers is it writ, —  
When the son dies, let the inheritance  
Descend unto the daughter. Gracious lord,  
Stand for your own ; unwind your bloody flag ;  
Look back unto your mighty ancestors :  
Go, my dread lord, to your great grandsire's tomb,  
From whom you claim ! invoke his warlike spirit,  
And your great uncle's, Edward the black prince ;  
Who on the French ground play'd a tragedy,  
Making defeat on the full power of France ;  
Whiles his most mighty father on a hill  
Stood smiling, to behold his lion's whelp  
Forage in blood of French nobility.<sup>7</sup>  
O noble English, that could entertain  
With half their forces the full pride of France ;  
And let another half stand laughing by,  
All out of work, and cold for action !

<sup>6</sup> *Lay open.*

<sup>7</sup> At the battle of Cressy.

*Ely.* Awake remembrance of these valiant dead,  
And with your puissant arm renew their feats;  
You are their heir, you sit upon their throne;  
The blood and courage, that renowned them,  
Runs in your veins; and my thrice-puissant liege  
Is in the very May-morn of his youth,  
Ripe for exploits and mighty enterprizes.

*Exe.* Your brother kings and monarchs of the  
earth  
Do all expect that you should rouse yourself,  
As did the former lions of your blood.

*West.* They know, your grace hath cause, and  
means, and might;  
So hath your highness; never king of England  
Had nobles richer, and more loyal subjects;  
Whose hearts have left their bodies here in England,  
And lie pavilion'd in the fields of France.

*Cant.* O, let their bodies follow, my dear liege,  
With blood, and sword, and fire, to win your right:  
In aid whereof, we of the spirituality,  
Will raise your highness such a mighty sum,  
As never did the clergy at one time  
Bring in to any of your ancestors.

*K. Hen.* We must not only arm to invade the  
French;  
But lay down our proportions to defend  
Against the Scot, who will make road upon us  
With all advantages.

*Cant.* They of those marches<sup>8</sup>, gracious sovereign,  
Shall be a wall sufficient to defend  
Our inland from the pilfering borderers.

*K. Hen.* We do not mean the coursing snatchers  
only,  
But fear the main intendment<sup>9</sup> of the Scot,  
Who hath been still a giddy neighbour to us;  
For you shall read that my great grandfather

<sup>8</sup> The borders of England and Scotland.

<sup>9</sup> General disposition.

Never went with his forces into France,  
But that the Scot on his unfurnish'd kingdom  
Came pouring, like the tide into a breach,  
With ample and brim fullness of his force ;  
Galling the gleaned land with hot essays ;  
Girding with grievous siege, castles and towns ;  
That England, being empty of defence,  
Hath shook, and trembled at the ill neighbourhood.

*Cant.* She hath been then more fear'd<sup>1</sup> than  
harm'd, my liege :

For hear her but exempl'd by herself, —  
When all her chivalry hath been in France,  
And she a mourning widow of her nobles,  
She hath herself not only well defended,  
But taken and impounded as a stray,  
The king of Scots, whom she did send to France,  
To fill king Edward's fame with prisoner kings ;  
And make your chronicle as rich with praise,  
As is the ooze and bottom of the sea  
With sunken wreck, and sumless treasures.

*West.* But there's a saying very old and true, —

*If that you will France win,  
Then with Scotland first begin :*

For once the eagle England being in prey,  
To her unguarded nest the weasel Scot  
Comes sneaking, and so sucks her princely eggs ;  
Playing the mouse, in absence of the cat,  
To spoil and havock more than she can eat.

*Exe.* It follows then, the cat must stay at home :  
Yet that is but a sad necessity ;  
Since we have locks to safeguard necessities,  
And pretty traps to catch the petty thieves.  
While that the armed hand doth fight abroad,  
The advised head defends itself at home :  
For government, though high, and low, and lower,  
Put into parts, doth keep in one concent ;

<sup>1</sup> Frightened.

Congruing<sup>2</sup> in a full and natural close,  
Like musick.

*Cant.* True: therefore doth heaven divide  
The state of man in divers functions,  
Setting endeavour in continual motion;  
To which is fixed, as an aim or butt,  
Obedience: for so work the honey bees;  
Creatures, that, by a rule in nature, teach  
The act of order to a peopled kingdom.  
They have a king and officers of sorts:<sup>3</sup>  
Where some, like magistrates, correct at home;  
Others, like merchants, venture trade abroad;  
Others, like soldiers, armed in their stings,  
Make boot upon the summer's velvet buds;  
Which pillage they with merry march bring home  
To the tent-royal of their emperor:  
Who, busied in his majesty, surveys  
The singing masons building roofs of gold;  
The civil citizens kneading up the honey;  
The poor mechanick porters crowding in  
Their heavy burdens at his narrow gate;  
The sad ey'd justice, with his surly hum,  
Delivering o'er to éxecutors<sup>4</sup> pale  
The lazy yawning drone. I this infer, —  
That many things, having full reference  
To one concent, may work contrariously;  
As many arrows, loosed several ways,  
Fly to one mark;  
As many several ways meet in one town;  
As many fresh streams run in one self sea;  
As many lines close in the dial's center;  
So may a thousand actions, once afoot,  
End in one purpose, and be all well borne  
Without defeat. Therefore to France, my liege.  
Divide your happy England into four;  
Whereof take you one quarter into France,  
And you withal shall make all Gallia shake.

<sup>2</sup> Agreeing.

<sup>3</sup> Different degrees.

<sup>4</sup> Executioners.

**If we, with thrice that power left at home,  
Cannot defend our own door from the dog,  
Let us be worried, and our nation lose  
The name of hardiness, and policy.**

**K. Hen.** Call in the messengers, sent from the Dauphin.

[*Exit an Attendant. The King ascends his throne.*]  
Now are we well resolved : and, by God's help,  
And yours, the noble sinews of our power, —  
France being ours, we'll bend it to our awe,  
Or break it all to pieces : Or there we'll sit,  
Ruling in large and ample empery,<sup>5</sup>  
O'er France, and all her almost kingly dukedoms ;  
Or lay these bones in an unworthy urn,  
Tombless, with no remembrance over them :  
Either our history shall, with full mouth,  
Speak freely of our acts ; or else our grave,  
Like Turkish mute, shall have a tongueless mouth,  
Not worshipp'd with a waxen epitaph.

*Enter Ambassadors of France.*

Now are we well prepar'd to know the pleasure  
Of our fair cousin Dauphin ; for we hear,  
Your greeting is from him, not from the king.

*Amb.* May it please your Majesty, to give us leave

Freely to render what we have in charge ;  
Or shall we sparingly show you far off  
The Dauphin's meaning, and our embassy ?

*K. Hen.* We are no tyrant, but a Christian king ;  
Unto whose grace our passion is as subject,  
As are our wretches fetter'd in our prisons :  
Therefore, with frank and with uncurbed plainness,  
Tell us the Dauphin's mind.

*Amb.* Thus, then, in few.  
Your highness, lately sending into France,

<sup>5</sup> *Dominion.*

Did some certain dukedoms, in the right  
 Of your great predecessor, king Edward the third.  
 In answer of which claim, the prince our master  
 Says,— that you savour too much of your youth:  
 And bids you be advis'd, there's nought in France,  
 That can be with a nimble galliard<sup>6</sup> won;

Not revel into dukedoms there:  
 He sends you, meeter for your spirit,  
 Of treasure; and, in lieu of this,  
 I charge you, let the dukedoms, that you claim,

As the Dauphin speaks.  
 Where's the uncle?

*Exc.* Tennis balls, my liege.  
*K. Hen.* The Dauphin is so pleas-

His present, and we thank you for:  
 When we have made rackets to these balls,  
 We will, in France, by God's grace, play a set,  
 Shall strike his father's crown into the hazard:<sup>7</sup>

Tell him, he hath made a match with such a  
 wrangler,

That all the courts of France will be disturb'd  
 With chaces.<sup>8</sup> And we understand him well,  
 How he comes o'er us with our wilder days,  
 Not measuring what use we made of them.  
 We never valued this poor seat<sup>9</sup> of England;  
 And therefore, living hence<sup>1</sup>, did give ourself  
 To barbarous licence; As 'tis ever common,  
 That men are merriest when they are from home.  
 But tell the Dauphin,— I will keep my state;  
 Be like a king, and show my sail of greatness,  
 When I do rouse me in my throne of France:  
 For that I have laid by my majesty,  
 And plodded like a man for working days;

<sup>6</sup> An apcient dance.

<sup>7</sup> A place in the tennis-court, into which the ball is  
 sometimes struck.

<sup>8</sup> A term at tennis.

<sup>9</sup> The throne.

<sup>1</sup> Withdrawing from the court.

But I will rise there with so full a glory,  
That I will dazzle all the eyes of France,  
Yea, strike the Dauphin blind to look on us.  
And tell the pleasant prince, — this mock of his  
Hath turn'd his balls to gun-stones ; and his soul  
Shall stand sore charged for the wasteful vengeance  
That shall fly with them : for many a thousand  
widows

Shall this his mock mock out of their dear husbands ;  
Mock mothers from their sons, mock castles down ;  
And some are yet ungotten, and unborn,  
That shall have cause to curse the Dauphin's scorn.  
But this lies all within the will of God,  
To whom I do appeal ; And in whose name,  
Tell you the Dauphin, I am coming on,  
To venge me as I may, and to put forth  
My rightful hand in a well-hallow'd cause.  
So, get you hence in peace ; and tell the Dauphin,  
His jest will savour but of shallow wit,  
When thousands weep, more than did laugh at it. —  
Convey them with safe conduct. — Fare you well.

[*Exeunt Ambassadors.*

*Exe.* This was a merry message.

*K. Hen.* We hope to make the sender blush at it.

[*Descends from his Throne.*

Therefore, my lords, omit no happy hour,  
That may give furtherance to our expedition :  
For we have now no thought in us but France ;  
Save those to heaven, that run before our business.  
Therefore, let our proportions for these wars  
Be soon collected : and all things thought upon,  
That may with reasonable swiftness, add  
More feathers to our wings ; for, God before,  
We'll chide this Dauphin at his father's door.  
Therefore, let every man now task his thought,  
That this fair action may on foot be brought.

[*Exeunt.*



## ACT THE SECOND.

*Enter* CHORUS.

*Chor.* Now all the youth of England are on fire,  
And silken dalliance in the wardrobe lies;  
Now thrive the armourers, and honour's thought  
Reigns solely in the breast of every man:  
They sell the pasture now, to buy the horse;  
Following the mirror of all Christian kings,  
With winged heels, as English Mercuries.  
For now sits Expectation in the air;  
And hides a sword, from hilts unto the point,  
With crowns imperial, crowns, and coronets,  
Promis'd to Harry, and his followers.  
The French, advis'd by good intelligence  
Of this most dreadful preparation,  
Shake in their fear; and with pale policy  
Seek to divert the English purposes.  
O England! — model to thy inward greatness,  
Like little body with a mighty heart, —  
What might'st thou do, that honour would thee do,  
Were all thy children kind and natural!  
But see thy fault! France hath in thee found out  
A nest of hollow bosoms, which he fills  
With treacherous crowns: and three corrupted  
men, —  
One, Richard earl of Cambridge; and the second,  
Henry lord Scroop of Masham; and the third,  
Sir Thomas Grey, knight of Northumberland, —  
Have, for the gilt<sup>2</sup> of France, (O guilt, indeed!)  
Confirm'd conspiracy with fearful France;  
And by their hands this grace of kings must die,  
(If hell and treason hold their promises,)  
Ere he take ship for France, and in Southampton.

<sup>2</sup> Gold.

Linger your patience on ; and well digest  
The abuse of distance, while we force a play.  
The sum is paid ; the traitors are agreed ;  
The king is set from London ; and the scene  
Is now transported, gentles, to Southampton :  
There is the playhouse now, there must you sit :  
And thence to France shall we convey you safe,  
And bring you back, charming the narrow seas  
To give you gentle pass ; for, if we may,  
We'll not offend one stomach with our play.  
But, till the king come forth, and not till then,  
Unto Southampton do we shift our scene. [*Exit.*]

## SCENE I.

London. *Before Quickly's House in Eastcheap.*

*Enter Nym and BARDOLPH.*

*Bard.* Well met, corporal Nym.

*Nym.* Good morrow, lieutenant Bardolph.

*Bard.* What, are ancient Pistol and you friends yet ?

*Nym.* For my part, I care not ; I say little : but when time shall serve, there shall be smiles ; — but that shall be as it may. I dare not fight ; but I will wink, and hold out mine iron : It is a simple one ; but what though ? it will toast cheese ; and it will endure cold as another man's sword will : and there's the humour of it.

*Bard.* I will bestow a breakfast, to make you friends ; and we'll be all three sworn brothers to France ; let it be so, good corporal Nym.

*Nym.* 'Faith, I will live so long as I may, that's the certain of it ; and when I cannot live any longer, I will do as I may : that is my rest<sup>3</sup>, that is the rendezvous of it.

<sup>3</sup> Determination.

*Bard.* It is certain, corporal, that he is married to Nell Quickly; and, certainly she did you wrong; for you were troth-plight to her.

*Nym.* I cannot tell; things must be as they may: men may sleep, and they may have their throats about them at that time; and, some say, knives have edges. It must be as it may: though patience be a tired mare, yet she will plod. There must be conclusions. Well, I cannot tell.

*Enter Pistol and Mrs. QUICKLY.*

*Bard.* Here comes ancient Pistol, and his wife: — good corporal, be patient here. — How now, mine host Pistol?

*Pist.* Base tike<sup>4</sup>, call'st thou me — host? Now, by this hand, I swear, I scorn the term; Nor shall my Nell keep lodgers.

*Quick.* No, by my troth, not long: [*Nym draws his sword.*] O well-a-day, Lady, if he be not drawn now! O Lord! here's corporal Nym's — now shall we have wilful murder committed. Good lieutenant Bardolph, — good corporal, offer nothing here.

*Nym.* Pish!

*Pist.* Pish for thee, Iceland dog! thou cur of Iceland!

*Quick.* Good corporal Nym, show the valour of a man, and put up thy sword.

*Nym.* Will you shog off? I would have you *solus*.  
[*Sheathing his sword.*]

*Pist.* *Solus*, egregious dog? O viper vile! The *solus* in thy most marvellous face; The *solus* in thy teeth, and in thy throat, And in thy hateful lungs, yea, in thy maw, perdy.<sup>5</sup>

*Nym.* I am not Barbason<sup>6</sup>; you cannot conjure me. I have an humour to knock you indifferently well: If you grow foul with me, Pistol, I will scar

<sup>4</sup> Dog.

<sup>5</sup> Par Dieu!

<sup>6</sup> Name of a duenna.

you with my rapier, as I may, in fair terms : and that's the humour of it.

*Pist.* O braggard vile, and desp'rate furious wight !

The grave doth gape, and doting death is near ;  
Therefore exhale.<sup>7</sup> [*PISTOL and NYM draw.*]

*Bard.* Hear me, hear me what I say : — he that strikes the first stroke, I'll run him up to the hilts, as I am a soldier. [*Draws.*]

*Pist.* An oath of mickle might ; and fury shall abate.

Give me thy fist, thy fore-foot to me give ;  
Thy spirits are most tall.

*Nym.* I will cut thy throat, one time or other, in fair terms ; that is the humour of it.

*Pist.* *Coup le gorge*, that's the word ? — I thee defy again.

O hound of Crete<sup>8</sup>, think'st thou my spouse to get ?

I have, and I will hold, the *quondam*<sup>9</sup> Quickly  
For the only she ; and — *Pauca*, there's enough.

*Enter the Boy.*

*Boy.* Mine host, Pistol, you must come to my master, — and you, hostess ; — he is very sick, and would to bed. — 'Faith he's very ill.

*Quick.* By my troth, he'll yield the crow a pudding one of these days : the king has killed his heart. — Good husband, come home presently.

[*Exeunt Mrs. QUICKLY and Boy.*]

*Bard.* Come, shall I make you two friends ? We must to France together ; Why, should we keep knives to cut one another's throats ?

*Pist.* Let floods o'erswell, and fiends for food howl on !

<sup>7</sup> Breathe your last.

<sup>8</sup> Blood-hound.

<sup>9</sup> Formerly.

*Nym.* You'll pay me the eight shillings I won of you at betting?

*Pist.* Base is the slave that pays.

*Nym.* That now I will have; that's the humour of it.

*Pist.* As manhood shall compound; Push home.

*Bard.* By this sword, he that makes the first thrust, I'll kill him; by this sword, I will.

*Pist.* Sword is an oath, and oaths must have their course.

*Bard.* Corporal Nym, an thou wilt be friends, be friends: an thou wilt not, why then be enemies with me too. Pr'ythee, put up.

*Nym.* I shall have my eight shillings, I won of you at betting?

*Pist.* A noble<sup>1</sup> shalt thou have, and present pay; And liquor likewise will I give to thee, And friendship shall combine, and brotherhood: I'll live by Nym, and Nym shall live by me; — Is not this just? — for I shall sutler be Unto the camp, and profits will accrue. Give me thy hand.

*Nym.* I shall have my noble?

*Pist.* In cash most justly paid.

*Nym.* Well then, that's the humour of it.

*Re-enter Mrs. QUICKLY.*

*Quick.* As you ever came of women, come quickly to sir John: Ah, poor heart! he is so shaken of a burning quotidian tertian, that it is most lamentable to behold. Sweet men, come to him.

*Nym.* The king hath run bad humours on the knight, that's the even of it.

*Pist.* Nym, thou hast spoke the right; His heart is fractured and corroborate.

<sup>1</sup> A coin, value six shillings and eight-pence.

*Nym.* The king is a good king : but it must be as it may ; he passes some humours, and careers.

*Pist.* Let us condole the knight ; for, lambkins, we will live. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE II.

Southampton. *A Council-Chamber.*

*Enter EXETER, BEDFORD, and WESTMORELAND.*

*Bed.* By heaven, his grace is bold, to trust these traitors.

*Exe.* They shall be apprehended by and by.

*West.* How smooth and even they do bear themselves !

As if allegiance in their bosoms sat,  
Crowned with faith, and constant loyalty.

*Bed.* The king hath note of all that they intend,  
By interception which they dream not of.

*Exe.* Nay, but the man that was his bedfellow  
Whom he hath cloy'd and grac'd with princely favours, —

That he should, for a foreign purse, so sell  
His sovereign's life to death and treachery !

*Trumpet sounds. Enter King HENRY, SCROOP, CAMBRIDGE, GREY, Lords, and Attendants.*

*K. Hen.* Now sits the wind fair, and we will aboard.

My lord of Cambridge, — and my kind lord of Masham, —

And you, my gentle knight, — give me your thoughts :

Think you not, that the powers we bear with us,  
Will cut their passage through the force of France :

Doing the execution, and the act,  
For which we have in head<sup>2</sup> assembled them?

*Scroop.* No doubt, my liege, if each man do his best.

*K. Hen.* I doubt not that: since we are well persuaded,

We carry not a heart with us from hence,  
That grows not in a fair consent with ours:  
Nor leave not one behind, that doth not wish  
Success and conquest to attend on us.

*Cam.* Never was monarch better fear'd, and lov'd,

Than is your majesty; there's not, I think, a subject,

That sits in heart-grief and uneasiness  
Under the sweet shade of your government.

*Grey.* Even those, that were your father's enemies,

Have steep'd their galls in honey; and do serve you  
With hearts create of duty and of zeal.

*K. Hen.* We therefore have great cause of thankfulness;

And shall forget the office of our hand,  
Sooner than quittance<sup>3</sup> of desert and merit,  
According to the weight and worthiness.

*Scroop.* So service shall with steeled sinews toil;  
And labour shall refresh itself with hope;  
To do your grace incessant services.

*K. Hen.* We judge no less.—Uncle of Exeter,  
Enlarge the man committed yesterday,  
That rail'd against our person: we consider,  
It was excess of wine that set him on;  
And, on his more advice, we pardon him.

*Scroop.* That's mercy, but too much security:  
Let him be punish'd, sovereign; lest example  
Breed, by his sufferance, more of such a kind.

*K. Hen.* O, let us yet be merciful.

<sup>1</sup> Force.

<sup>2</sup> Recompence.

*Cam.* So may your highness, and yet punish too.

*Grey.* You show great mercy, if you give him life,

After the taste of much correction.

*K. Hen.* Alas, your too much love and care of me

Are heavy orisons<sup>4</sup> 'gainst this poor wretch.

If little faults, proceeding on distemper,

Shall not be wink'd at, how shall we stretch our eye,

When capital crimes, chew'd, swallow'd, and digested,

Appear before us?—We'll yet enlarge that man,  
Though Cambridge, Scroop, and Grey,—in their dear care,

And tender preservation of our person,—

Would have him punish'd. And now to our French causes;

Who are the late<sup>5</sup> commissioners?

*Cam.* I one, my lord;

Your highness bade me ask for it to-day.

*Scroop.* So did you me, my liege.

*Grey.* And me, my royal sovereign.

*K. Hen.* Then, Richard, earl of Cambridge, there is yours;—

There yours, lord Scroop of Masham;—and, sir knight,

Grey of Northumberland, this same is yours:—

Read them; and know, I know your worthiness.—

My lord of Westmoreland,—and uncle Exeter,—

We will aboard to-night.—Why, how now, gentlemen?

What see you in those papers, that you lose

So much complexion?—look ye, how they change!

Their cheeks are paper.—Why, what read you there,

<sup>4</sup> Prayers.

<sup>5</sup> Lately appointed.



That hath so cowarded and chas'd your blood  
Out of appearance?

*Cam.* I do confess my fault:  
And do submit me to your highness' mercy.

*Grey. Scroop.* To which we all appeal.

*K. Hen.* The mercy, that was quick<sup>c</sup> in us but  
late,

By your own counsel is suppress'd and kill'd:  
You must not dare, for shame, to talk of mercy;  
For your own reasons turn into your baseness,  
As dogs upon their masters, worrying them.—  
See you, my princes, and my noble peers,  
These English monsters! My lord of Cambridge  
here,—

You know, how apt our love was, to accord  
To furnish him with all appertinents  
Belonging to his honour; and this man  
Hath, for a few light crowns, lightly conspir'd  
And sworn unto the practices of France,  
To kill us here in Hampton: to the which,  
This knight, no less for bounty bound to us  
Than Cambridge is,—hath likewise sworn—But O!  
What shall I say to thee, lord Scroop; thou cruel,  
Ingrateful, savage, and inhuman creature!  
Thou, that didst bear the key of all my counsels,  
That knew'st the very bottom of my soul,  
That almost might'st have coin'd me into gold,  
Would'st thou have practis'd on me for thy use?  
May it be possible, that foreign hire  
Could out of thee extract one spark of evil,  
That might annoy my finger? 'tis so strange,  
That though the truth of it stands off as gross  
As black from white, my eye will scarcely see it.  
Treason, and murder, ever kept together,  
As two yoke-devils sworn to either's purpose,  
Working so grossly in a natural cause,  
That admiration did not whoop at them:

But thou, 'gainst all proportion, didst bring in  
Wonder, to wait on treason, and on murder :  
And whatsoever cunning fiend it was,  
That wrought upon thee so preposterously,  
Gave thee no instance why thou should'st do treason,

Unless to dub thee with the name of traitor.  
If that same dæmon, that hath gull'd thee thus,  
Should with his lion gait<sup>7</sup>, walk the whole world,  
He might return to vasty Tartar<sup>8</sup> back,  
And tell the legions — I can never win  
A soul so easy as that Englishman's.  
O, how hast thou with jealousy infected  
The sweetness of affiance ! Show men dutiful ?  
Why, so didst thou : Seem they grave and learned ?  
Why, so didst thou : Come they of noble family ?  
Why, so didst thou : Seem they religious ?  
Why, so didst thou : Or are they spare in diet ;  
Free from gross passion, or of mirth, or anger ;  
Constant in spirit, not swerving with the blood ;  
Garnish'd and deck'd in modest complement ;<sup>9</sup>  
Not working with the eye, without the ear,  
And, but in purged judgment, trusting neither ?  
Such, and so finely bolted<sup>1</sup>, didst thou seem :  
And thus thy fall hath left a kind of blot,  
To mark the full-fraught man, and best indued,  
With some suspicion. I will weep for thee ;  
For this revolt of thine, methinks, is like  
Another fall of man. — Their faults are open,  
Arrest them to the answer of the law ; —  
And heaven acquit them of their practices !

*Exe.* I arrest thee of high treason, by the name  
of Richard earl of Cambridge.

I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of  
Henry lord Scroop of Masham.

I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of  
Thomas Grey, knight of Northumberland.

<sup>7</sup> *Pace, step.*    <sup>8</sup> *Tartarus.*    <sup>9</sup> *Accomplishment.*    <sup>1</sup> *Sifted.*

*Scroop.* Our purposes God justly hath discover'd;  
And I repent my fault, more than my death;  
Which I beseech your highness to forgive,  
Although my body pay the price of it.

*Cam.* For me,—the gold of France did not  
duce;

Although I did admit it as a motive,  
The sooner to effect what I intended:  
But heaven be thanked for prevention;  
Which I in sufferance heartily will rejoice,  
Beseeching God, and you, to pardon me.

*Grey.* Never did faithful subject more rejoice  
At the discovery of most dangerous treason,  
Than I do at this hour joy o'er myself,  
Prevented from a damned enterprize:  
My fault, but not my body, pardon, sovereign.

*K. Hen.* God quit you in his mercy! Hear your  
sentence.

You have conspir'd against our royal person,  
Join'd with an enemy proclaim'd, and from his of-  
fers

Receiv'd the golden earnest of our death;  
Wherein you would have sold your king to slaughter,  
His princes and his peers to servitude,  
His subjects to oppression and contempt,  
And his whole kingdom unto desolation.

Touching our person, seek we no revenge;  
But we our kingdom's safety must so tender,  
Whose ruin you three sought, that to her laws  
We do deliver you. Get you therefore hence,  
Poor miserable wretches, to your death:  
The taste whereof, God, of his mercy, give you  
Patience to endure, and true repentance  
Of all your dear offences!—Bear them hence.

[*Exeunt Conspirators, guards.*]

Now, lords, for France; the enterprize whereof  
Shall be to you, as us, like glorious.  
We doubt not of a fair and lucky war;  
Since heaven so graciously hath brought to light

This dangerous treason, lurking in our way,  
To hinder our beginnings, we doubt not now,  
But every rub is smoothed on our way.  
Then forth, dear countrymen ; let us deliver  
Our puissance into the hand of God,  
Putting it straight in expedition.  
Cheerly to sea ; the signs of war advance :  
No king of England, if not king of France.

[*Exeunt,*

## SCENE III.

London. *Mrs. Quickly's House in Eastcheap.*

*Enter* PISTOL, *Mrs. QUICKLY*, NYM, BARDOLPH,  
*and Boy.*

*Quick.* Pr'ythee, honey-sweet husband, let me  
bring thee to Staines.

*Pist.* No ; for my manly heart doth yearn.<sup>2</sup> —  
Bardolph, be blithe ; — Nym, rouse thy vaunting  
veins ;

Boy, bristle thy courage up ; for Falstaff he is dead,  
And we must yearn therefore.

*Bard.* 'Would, I were with him, wheresome'er  
he is.

*Quick.* Nay, sure, he's in Arthur's bosom, if ever  
man went to Arthur's bosom. 'A made a finer end,  
and went away, an it had been any christom<sup>3</sup> child ;  
'a parted even just between twelve and one, e'en at  
turning o'the tide : for after I saw him fumble with  
the sheets, and play with flowers, and smile upon  
his finger's ends, I knew there was but one way ; for  
his nose was as sharp as a pen, and 'a babbled of  
green fields. How now, sir John ? quoth I : what,  
man ! be of good cheer. So 'a cried out — God,  
God, God ! three or four times : now I, to comfort  
him, bid him, 'a should not think of God ; I hoped,

<sup>2</sup> *Grieve.*

<sup>3</sup> A child not more than a month old.

there was no need to trouble himself with any such thoughts yet: So, 'a bade me lay more clothes on his feet: I put my hand into the bed, and felt them, and they were as cold as any stone; then I felt to his knees, and all was as cold as any stone.

*Nym.* They say, he cried out of sack.

*Quick.* Ay, that 'a did.

*Bard.* And of women.

*Quick.* Nay, that 'a did not.

*Boy.* Yes, that 'a did; and said, they were devils incarnate.

*Quick.* 'A could never abide carnation; 'twas a colour he never liked.

*Bard.* Well, he is gone, and all the riches I get in his service.

*Nym.* Shall we shog off? the king will be gone from Southampton.

*Pist.* Come, let's away.—My love, give me thy lips.

Look to my chattels, and my moveables:

Let senses rule; the word is, *Pitch and Pay*;

Trust none;

For oaths are straws, men's faiths are wafer cakes,

And hold-fast is the only dog, my duck;

Therefore, *caveto* be thy counsellor.

Go, clear thy crystals.—Yoke-fellows in arms,

Let us to France! like horse-leeches, my boys;

To suck, to suck, the very blood to suck!

*Boy.* And that is but unwholesome food, they say.

*Pist.* Touch her soft mouth, and march.

*Bard.* Farewell, hostess. [Kissing her.]

*Nym.* I cannot kiss, that is the humour of it; but, adieu.

*Pist.* Let housewifery appear; keep close, I thus command.

*Quick.* Farewell; adieu.

[Exeunt.]

## SCENE IV.

France. *A Room in the French King's Palace.*

*Enter the French King attended; the Dauphin, the Duke of BURGUNDY, the Constable, and others.*

*Fr. King.* Thus come the English with full power  
upon us ;

And more than carefully it us concerns,  
To answer royally in our defences.  
Therefore the Dukes of Berry, and of Bretagne,  
Of Brabant, and of Orleans, shall make forth, —  
And you, prince Dauphin,—with all swift despatch,  
To line, and new repair, our towns of war,  
With men of courage, and with means defendant:  
For England his approaches makes us fierce,  
As waters to the sucking of a gulph.  
It fits us then, to be as provident  
As fear may teach us, out of late examples  
Left by the fatal and neglected English  
Upon our fields.

*Dau.* My most redoubted father,  
It is most meet we arm us 'gainst the foe:  
For peace itself should not so dull<sup>4</sup> a kingdom,  
(Though war, nor no known quarrel, were in ques-  
tion,)

But that defences, musters, preparations,  
Should be maintain'd, assembled, and collected,  
As were a war in expectation.  
Therefore, I say, 'tis meet we all go forth,  
To view the sick and feeble parts of France:  
And let us do it with no show of fear;  
No, with no more, than if we heard that England  
Were busied with a Whitsun morrice-dance:  
For, my good liege, she is so idly king'd,

<sup>4</sup> Render it callous, insensible.

Her scepter so fantastically borne  
By a vain, giddy, shallow, humorous youth,  
That fear attends her not.

*Con.*

O peace, prince Dauphin!

You are too much mistaken in this king :  
Question your grace the late ambassadors, —  
With what great state he heard their embassy,  
How well supplied with noble counsellors,  
How modest in exception<sup>5</sup>, and, withal,  
How terrible in constant resolution, —  
And you shall find, his vanities fore-spent  
Were but the outside of the Roman Brutus,  
Covering discretion with a coat of folly.

*Daup.* Well, 'tis not so, my lord high constable,  
But though we think it so, it is no matter :  
In cases of defence, 'tis best to weigh  
The enemy more mighty than he seems,  
So the proportions of defence are fill'd ;  
Which, of a weak and niggardly projection,  
Doth, like a miser, spoil his coat, with scanting  
A little cloth.

*Fr. King.* Think we king Harry strong ;  
And, princes, look, you strongly arm to meet him.  
The kindred of him hath been flesh'd upon us ;  
And he is bread out of that bloody strain,<sup>6</sup>  
That haunted us in our familiar paths :  
Witness our too much memorable shame,  
When Cressy battle fatally was struck,  
And all our princes captiv'd, by the hand  
Of that black name, Edward black prince of Wales ;  
Whiles that his mountain sire — on mountain stand-  
ing,

Up in the air, crown'd with the golden sun, —  
Saw his heroical seed, and smil'd to see him  
Mangle the work of nature.

This is a stem  
Of that victorious stock : and let us fear  
The native mightiness and fate of him.

<sup>5</sup> In making objections.

<sup>6</sup> Lineage.

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* Ambassadors from Henry king of England  
Do crave admittance to your majesty.

*Fr. King.* We'll give them present audience.  
Go, and bring them.

*[Exeunt Mess. and certain Lords.]*

You see this chase is hotly follow'd, friends.

*Dau.* Turn head, and stop pursuit ; for coward  
dogs

Most spend their mouths, when what they seem to  
threaten,

Runs far before them. Good my sovereign,  
Take up the English short ; and let them know  
Of what a monarchy you are the head :  
Self-love, my liege, is not so vile a sin  
As self-neglecting.

*Re-enter Lords, with EXETER and Train.*

*Fr. King.* From our brother England ?

*Exe.* From him ; and thus he greets your majesty.  
He wills you, in the name of the Almighty,  
That you divest yourself, and lay apart  
The borrowed glories, that, by gift of heaven,  
By law of nature, and of nations 'long  
To him, and to his heirs ; namely, the crown,  
And all wide-stretched honours that pertain,  
By custom and the ordinance of times,  
Unto the crown of France. That you may know,  
'Tis no sinister, nor no awkward claim,  
Pick'd from the worm-holes of long-vanish'd days,  
Nor from the dust of old oblivion rak'd,  
He sends you this most memorable line,

*[Gives a paper.]*

In every branch truly demonstrative ;  
Willing you overlook this pedigree :  
And, when you find himavenly deriv'd



From his most fam'd of famous ancestors,  
Edward the third, he bids you then resign  
Your crown and kingdom, indirectly held  
From him, the native and true challenger.

*Fr. King.* Or else, what follows ?

*Exc.* Bloody constraint; for if you hide the crown  
Even in your hearts, there will he rake for it:  
And therefore in fierce tempest is he coming,  
In thunder, and in earthquake, like a Jove;  
(That, if requiring fail, he will compel.)  
And bids you, in the bowels of the Lord,  
Deliver up the crown; and to take mercy  
On the poor souls, for whom this hungry war  
Opens his vasty jaws: and on your head  
Turns he the widows' tears, the orphans' cries,  
The dead men's blood, the pining maiden's groans,  
For husbands, fathers, and betrothed lovers,  
That shall be swallow'd in this controversy.  
This is his claim, his threat'ning, and my message;  
Unless the Dauphin be in presence here,  
To whom expressly I bring greeting too.

*Fr. King.* For us, we will consider of this further:  
To-morrow shall you bear our full intent  
Back to our brother England.

*Dau.* For the Dauphin,  
I stand here for him; What to him from England?

*Exc.* Scorn, and defiance; slight regard, contempt,  
And any thing that may not misbecome  
The mighty sender, doth he prize you at.  
Thus says my king; and, if your father's highness  
Do not, in grant of all demands at large,  
Sweeten the bitter mock you sent his majesty,  
He'll call you to so hot an answer for it,  
That caves and womby vaultages of France  
Shall chide your trespass, and return your mock  
In second accent of his ordnance.

*Dau.* Say, If my father render fair reply,  
It is against my will: for I desire

Nothing but odds with England ; to that end,  
As matching to his youth and vanity,  
I did present him with those Paris balls.

*Exc.* He'll make your Paris Louvre shake for it,  
Were it the mistress court of mighty Europe :  
And, be assur'd, you'll find a difference,  
(As we, his subjects, have in wonder found,)  
Between the promise of his greener days,  
And these he masters now : now he weighs time,  
Even to the utmost grain ; which you shall read  
In your own losses, if he stay in France.

*Fr. King.* To-morrow, shall you know our mind  
at full.

*Exc.* Despatch us with all speed, lest that our  
king  
Come here himself to question our delay ;  
For he is footed in this land already.

*Fr. King.* You shall be soon despatch'd, with  
fair conditions :  
A night is but small breath, and little pause,  
To answer matters of this consequence. [*Exeunt.*]

---

## ACT THE THIRD.

*Enter CHORUS.*

*Chor.* Thus with imagin'd wing our swift scene  
flies,  
In motion of no less celerity  
Than that of thought. Suppose, that you have seen  
The well-appointed king at Hampton pier  
Embark his royalty ; and his brave fleet  
With silken streamers the young Phœbus fanning.  
Play with your fancies ; and in them behold,  
Upon the hempen tackle, ship-boys climbing :

Hear the shrill whistle, which doth order give  
 To sounds confus'd: behold the threaden sails,  
 Borne with the invisible and creeping wind,  
 Draw the huge bottoms through the furrow'd sea,  
 Breasting the lofty surge: O, do but think,  
 You stand upon the rivage<sup>8</sup>, and behold  
 A city, on the inconstant billows dancing;  
 For so appears this fleet majestic,  
 Holding due course to Harfleur. Follow, follow!  
 Grapple your minds to sternage<sup>9</sup> of this navy;  
 And leave your England, as dead midnight still,  
 Guarded with grandsires, babies, and old women,  
 Or past, or not arriv'd to, pith and puissance:  
 For who is he, whose chin is but enrich'd  
 With one appearing hair, that will not follow  
 These cull'd and choice-drawn cavaliers to France?  
 Work, work your thoughts, and therein see a siege:  
 Behold the ordnance on their carriages,  
 With fatal mouths gaping on girded Harfleur.  
 Suppose, the ambassador from the French comes  
 back;

Tells Harry — that the king doth offer him  
 Katherine his daughter; and with her, to dowry,  
 Some petty and unprofitable dukedoms.  
 The offer likes not: and the nimble gunner,  
 With linstock<sup>1</sup> now the dreadful cannon touches,  
 [Alarum; and Chambers<sup>2</sup> go off.]  
 And down goes all before them. Still be kind,  
 And eke out our performance with your mind.

[Exit.]

<sup>8</sup> Bank or shore.

<sup>9</sup> Sterns of the ships.

<sup>1</sup> The staff which holds the match used in firing  
 cannon

<sup>2</sup> Small pieces of ordnance.

## SCENE I.

*Before Harfleur.*

*Alarums. Enter King HENRY, EXETER, BEDFORD, GLOSTER, and Soldiers, with Scaling Ladders.*

*K. Hen.* Once more unto the breach, dear friends,  
once more ;  
Or close the wall up with our English dead !  
In peace, there's nothing so becomes a man,  
As modest stillness and humility :  
But when the blast of war blows in our ears,  
Then imitate the action of the tiger ;  
Stiffen the sinews, summon up the blood,  
Disguise fair nature with hard-favour'd rage ;  
Then lend the eye a terrible aspect ;  
Let it pry through the portage of the head,  
Like the brass cannon ; let the brow o'erwhelm it,  
As fearfully, as doth a galled rock  
O'erhand and jutty<sup>3</sup> his confounded<sup>4</sup> base,  
Swilled with the wild and wasteful ocean.  
Now set the teeth, and stretch the nostril wide ;  
Hold hard the breath, and bend up every spirit  
'To his full height ! — On, on, you noblest English,  
Whose blood is fet<sup>5</sup> from fathers of war-proof !  
Fathers, that, like so many Alexanders,  
Have, in these parts, from morn till even fought,  
And sheath'd their swords for lack of argument.<sup>6</sup>  
Dishonour not your mothers ; now attest,  
That those, whom you call'd fathers, did beget you !  
Be copy now to men of grosser blood,  
And teach them how to war ! — And you, good  
yeomen,  
Whose limbs were made in England, show us here

<sup>3</sup> A mole to withstand the encroachment of the tide.

<sup>4</sup> Worn, wasted.

<sup>5</sup> Fetched.

<sup>6</sup> Matter, subject.

The mettle of your pasture ; let us swear  
That you are worth your breeding ; which I doubt  
not ;

For there is none of you so mean and base,  
That hath not noble lustre in your eyes.  
I see you stand like grey-hounds in the slips,  
Straining upon the start. The game's afoot ;  
Follow your spirit : and, upon this charge,  
Cry—God for Harry ! England ! and Saint George !  
[*Escort. Alarum, and Chambers go off.*]

## SCENE II.

*The same.*

*Forces pass over ; then enter NYM, RANDOLPH,  
PISTOL, and Boy.*

*Bard.* On, on, on, on, on ! to the breach, to the  
breach !

*Nym.* 'Pray thee, corporal, stay ; the knocks are  
too hot ; and, for mine own part, I have not a care  
of lives : the humour of it is too hot, that is the  
very plain-song of it.

*Pist.* The plain-song is most just ; for humours  
do abound ;  
Knocks go and come ; God's vassals drop and die ;  
And sword and shield,  
In bloody field,  
Doth win immortal fame.

*Boy.* 'Would I were in an alehouse in London !  
I would give all my fame for a pot of ale, and  
safety.

*Pist.* And I :

If wishes would prevail with me,  
My purpose should not fail with me,  
But thither would I hie.

*Boy.* As dully, but not as truly, as bird doth sing on bough.

*Enter FLUELLEN.*

*Flu.* Up to the preaches, you rascals ! will you not up to the preaches ? [*Driving them forward.*]

*Pist.* Be merciful great duke, to men of mould !  
Abate thy rage, abate thy manly rage !  
Abate thy rage, great duke !  
Good bawcock, bate thy rage ; use lenity sweet chuck ?

*Nym.* These be good humours ! — your honour wins bad humours.

[*Exeunt NYM, PISTOL, and BARDOLPH, followed by FLUELLEN.*]

*Boy.* As young as I am, I have observed these three swashers. I am boy to them all three : but all they three, though they would serve me, could not be man to me ; for, indeed, three such anticks do not amount to a man. For Bardolph, — he is white-livered, and red-faced ; by the means whereof, 'a faces it out, but fights not. For Pistol, — he hath a killing tongue, and a quiet sword ; by the means whereof 'a breaks words, and keeps whole weapons. For Nym, — he hath heard that men of few words are the best<sup>7</sup> men ; and therefore he scorns to say his prayers, lest a' should be thought a coward ; but his few bad words are match'd with as few good deeds ; for 'a never broke any man's head but his own ; and that was against a post, when he was drunk. They will steal any thing, and call it — purchase. Bardolph stole a lute-case ; bore it twelve leagues, and sold it for three halfpence. Nym, and Bardolph, are sworn brothers in filching ; and in Calais they stole a fire-shovel : I knew, by that piece of service, the men

<sup>7</sup> Bravest.

would carry coals.<sup>8</sup> They would have me as familiar with men's pockets, as their gloves or their handkerchiefs : which makes much against my manhood, if I should take from another's pocket, to put into mine ; for it is plain pocketing up of wrongs. I must leave them, and seek some better service : their villainy goes against my weak stomach.

[Exit Boy.]

*Re-enter* FLUELLEN, GOWER *following.*

*Gow.* Captain Fluellen, you must come presently to the mines ; the duke of Gloster would speak with you.

*Flu.* To the mines ! tell you the duke, it is not so good to come to the mines : For, look you, the mines is not according to the disciplines of the war ; the concavities of it is not sufficient ; for, look you, th' athversary (you may discuss unto the duke, look you,) is dight<sup>9</sup> himself four yards under the countermines : I think, 'a will plow up all, if there is not better directions.

*Gow.* The duke of Gloster, to whom the order of the siege is given, is altogether directed by an Irishman ; a very valiant gentleman, i'faith.

*Flu.* It is captain Macmorris, is it not ?

*Gow.* I think, it be.

*Flu.* He is an ass, as in the 'orld : I will verify as much in his peard : he has no more directions in the true disciplines of the wars, look you, of the Roman disciplines, than is a puppy-dog.

*Enter* MACMORRIS and JAMY, *at a distance.*

*Gow.* Here 'a comes ; and the Scots captain, captain Jamy, with him.

*Flu.* Captain Jamy is a marvellous valorous gentleman, that is certain ; and of great expedition, and

<sup>8</sup> Pocket affronts.

<sup>9</sup> Dighted.

edge, in the ancient wars, upon my particular  
edge of his directions : he will maintain his  
ent as well as any military man in the 'orld,  
disciplines of the pristine wars of the Romans.  
y. I say, gud-day, captain Fluellen.

God-den to your worship, goot captain Jamy.  
. How now, captain Macmorris ? have you  
e mines ? have the pioneers given o'er ?

. Tish ill done : the work ish give over, the  
t sound the retreat. By my hand, I swear,  
my father's soul, the work ish ill done ; it  
e over : I would have blowed up the town in  
ir. O, tish ill done, tish ill done ; by my  
tish ill done !

Captain Macmorris, I peseech you now, will  
utsafe me, look you, a few disputations with  
partly touching or concerning the disciplines  
war, the Roman wars, in the way of argu-  
book you, and friendly communication ; partly,  
fy my opinion, and partly, for the satisfac-  
book you, of my mind, as touching the direc-  
the military discipline ; that is the point.

y. It sall be very gud, gud feith, gud cap-  
tith : and I sall quit <sup>1</sup> you with gud leve, as I  
ck occasion ; that sall I, marry.

. It is no time to discourse, the day is hot,  
weather, and the wars, and the king, and  
res ; it is no time to discourse. The town  
ched, and the trumpet calls us to the breach ;  
talk, and do nothing ; 'tis shame for us all :  
me to stand still ; it is shame, by my hand :  
ere is throats to be cut, and works to be  
and there ish nothing done.

y. By the mess, ere theise eyes of mine take  
lves to slumber, aile do gude service, or aile  
the grund for it ; ay, or go to death ; and  
it as valorously as I may, that sal I surely

<sup>1</sup> Requite, answer.



do, that is the breff and the long : Mary, I wad full  
fain heard some question 'tween you tway.

*Flu.* Captain Macmorris, I think, look you,  
under your correction, there is not many of your  
nation —

*Mac.* Of my nation? What ish my nation? ish  
a villain, and a bastard, and a knave, and a rascal?  
What ish my nation? Who talks of my nation?

*Flu.* Look you, if you take the matter otherwise  
than is meant, captain Macmorris, peradventure, I  
shall think you do not use me with that affability as  
in discretion you ought to use me, look you; being  
as goot a man as yourself, both in the disciplines of  
war, and in the derivation of my birth, and in other  
particularities.

*Mac.* I do not know you so good a man as my-  
self: I will cut off your head.

*Gow.* Gentlemen both, you will mistake each  
other.

*Jamy.* Au ! that's a foul fault.

[*A Parley sounded.*]

*Gow.* The town sounds a parley.

*Flu.* Captain Macmorris, when there is more  
better opportunity to be required, look you, I will  
be so bold as to tell you, I know the disciplines of  
war; and there is an end.

[*Exeunt.*]

### SCENE III.

*Before the Gates of Harfleur.*

*The Governor and some Citizens on the Walls; the  
English Forces below. Enter King HENRY and  
his Train.*

*K. Hen.* How yet resolves the governor of the  
town?

*This is the latest parle we will admit:*

Therefore to our best mercy give yourselves :  
Or, like to men proud of destruction,  
Defy us to our worst : for, as I am a soldier,  
(A name, that, in my thoughts, becomes me best,)  
If I begin the battery once again,  
I will not leave the half-achieved Harfleur, \*  
Till in her ashes she lie buried.  
The gates of mercy shall be all shut up ;  
And the flesh'd soldier,—rough and hard of heart,—  
In liberty of bloody hand, shall range.  
What is it then to me, if impious war, —  
Array'd in flames, like to the prince of fiends, —  
Do, with his smirch'd <sup>2</sup> complexion, all fell <sup>3</sup> feats  
Enlink'd to waste and desolation ?  
What is't to me, when you yourselves are cause ?  
What rein can hold licentious wickedness,  
When down the hill he holds his fierce career ?  
We may as bootless <sup>4</sup> spend our vain command  
Upon the enraged soldiers in their spoil,  
As send precepts to the Leviathan  
To come ashore. Therefore, you men of Harfleur,  
Take pity of your town, and of your people,  
Whiles yet my soldiers are in my command ;  
Whiles yet the cool and temperate wind of grace  
O'erblows the filthy and contagious clouds  
Of deadly murder, spoil, and villainy.  
If not, why, in a moment, look to see  
The blind and bloody soldier with foul hand  
Defile the locks of your shrill-shrieking daughters ;  
Your fathers taken by the silver beards,  
And their most reverend heads dash'd to the walls ;  
Your naked infants spitted upon pikes ;  
Whiles the mad mothers with their howls confus'd  
Do break the clouds, as did the wives of Jewry  
At Herod's bloody-hunting slaughtermen.  
What say you ? will you yield, and this avoid ?  
Or, guilty in defence, be thus destroy'd ?

\* Soiled.

3 Cruel.

4 Without success.

**Gov.** Our expectation hath this day an end:  
**The Dauphin**, whom of succour we entreated,  
**Returns us** — that his powers are not yet ready  
**To raise so** great a siege. Therefore, dread king,  
**We yield our town**, and lives to thy soft mercy:  
**Enter our gates**; dispose of us, and ours;  
**For we no longer** are defensible.

**K. Hen.** Open your gates.—Come, uncle Exeter,  
**Go you and enter Harfleur**; there remain,  
**And fortify** it strongly 'gainst the French:  
**Use mercy** to them all. For us, dear uncle,—  
**The winter** coming on, and sickness growing  
**Upon our soldiers**, — we'll retire to Calais.  
**To-night in Harfleur** will we be your guest;  
**To-morrow** for the march are we address'd.<sup>5</sup>

[*Flourish.* The King, &c. enter the Town.

#### SCENE IV.

Rouën. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter the French King, the Dauphin, Duke of  
 BOURBON, the Constable of France, and others.*

**Fr. King.** 'Tis certain, he hath pass'd the river  
 Some.

**Con.** And if he be not fought withal, my lord,  
 Let us not live in France: let us quit all,  
 And give our vineyards to a barbarous people.

**Dau.** Shall a few sprays of us, —  
 Our scions, put in wild and savage stock,  
 Spirt up so suddenly into the clouds,  
 And overlook their grafters?

**Bour.** Normans, but bastard Normans, Norman  
 bastards!

*Mort de ma vie!* if they march along  
 Unfought withal, but I will sell my dukedom,

<sup>5</sup> Prepared.

To buy a slobbery and a dirty farm  
In that nook-shotten<sup>6</sup> isle of Albion.

Con. *Dieu de batailles!* where have they this  
mettle?

Is not their climate foggy, raw, and dull?  
On whom, as in despite, the sun looks pale,  
Killing their fruit with frowns? Can sodden water,  
A drench for sur-rein'd<sup>7</sup> jades, their barley broth,  
Decoct their cold blood to such valiant heat?

And shall our quick blood, spirited with wine,  
Seem frosty? O, for honour of our land,  
Let us not hang like roping icicles  
Upon our houses' thatch, whiles a more frosty  
people

Sweat drops of gallant youth in our rich fields;  
Poor — we may call them, in their native lords.

Dau. By faith and honour,  
Our madams mock at us.

Bour. They bid us — to the English dancing-  
schools,

And teach *lavoltas* high, and swift *corantos*;<sup>8</sup>  
Saying, our grace is only in our heels,  
And that we are most lofty runaways.

Fr. King. Where is Montjôy, the herald? speed  
him hence;

Let him greet England with our sharp defiance. —  
Up, princes; and, with spirit of honour edg'd,  
More sharper than your swords, hie to the field:  
Charles De-la-bret, high constable of France;  
You dukes of Orleans, Bourbon, and of Berry,  
Alençon, Brabant, Bar, and Burgundy;  
Jacques Chatillion, Rambures, Vaudemont,  
Beaumont, Grandpré, Roussi, and Fauconberg,  
Foix, Lestrale, Bouciqualt, and Charolois;  
High dukes, great princes, barons, lords, and knights,  
For your great seats, now quit you of great shames.  
Bar Harry England, that sweeps through our land

<sup>6</sup> Shooting into promontories.

<sup>7</sup> Over-ridden.

<sup>8</sup> Dances

With pennons \* painted in the blood of Harfleur:  
 Rush on his host, as doth the melted snow  
 Upon the vallies; —  
 You have power enough, —  
 And in a captive chariot, into Rothen  
 Bring him our prisoner.

*Con.*

*This becomes the quest.*

Sorry am I, his numbers are so few,  
 His soldiers sick, and famish'd in their march;  
 For, I am sure, when he shall see our army,  
 He'll drop his heart into the sink of fear,  
 And, for achievement, offer us his ransom.

*Fr. King.* Therefore, lord constable, haste on  
 Montjoy:

And let him say to England, that we send  
 To know what willing ransom he will give. —  
 Prince Dauphin, you shall stay with us in Rothen.

*Dau.* Not so, I do beseech your majesty.

*Fr. King.* Be patient, for you shall remain with  
 us. —

Now forth, lord constable, and princes all;  
 And quickly bring us word of England's fall.

*[Exeunt.]*

#### SCENE V.

*The English Camp in Picardy.*

*Enter GOWER and FLUELLEN.*

*Gow.* How now, captain Fluellen? come you  
 from the bridge?

*Flu.* I assure you, there is very excellent service  
 committed at the bridge.

*Gow.* Is the duke of Exeter safe?

*Flu.* The duke of Exeter is as magnanimous as  
 Agamemnon; and a man that I love and honour

\* Pendants, small flags.

with my soul, and my heart, and my duty, and my life, and my livings, and my uttermost powers: he is not, (God be praised, and plessed!) any hurt in the 'orld; but keeps the pridge most valiantly, with excellent discipline. There is an ensign there at the pridge, — I think, in my very conscience, he is as valiant as Mark Antony; and he is a man of no estimation in the 'orld: but I did see him do gallant service.

*Gow.* What do you call him?

*Flu.* He is called — ancient Pistol.

*Gow.* I know him not.

*Enter PISTOL.*

*Flu.* Do you not know him? Here comes the man.

*Pist.* Captain, I thee beseech to do me favours: The duke of Exeter doth love thee well.

*Flu.* Ay, and I have merited some love at his hands.

*Pist.* Bardolph, a soldier, firm and sound of heart,  
Of buxom valour, hath, — by cruel fate,  
And giddy fortune's furious fickle wheel,  
That goddess blind,  
That stands upon the rolling restless stone, —

*Flu.* By your patience, ancient Pistol. Fortune is painted plind, with a muffler<sup>1</sup> before her eyes, to signify to you that fortune is plind: And she is painted also with a wheel; to signify to you, which is the moral of it, that she is turning, and inconstant, and variations, and mutabilities: and her foot, look you, is fixed upon a spherical stone, which rolls, and rolls, and rolls; — In good truth, the poet is make a most excellent description of fortune: fortune, look you, is an excellent moral.

*Pist.* Fortune is Bardolph's foe, and frowns on him;

<sup>1</sup> A fold of linen which partially covered the face.

For he has stolen a *pis*<sup>2</sup>, and hanged must 'a be.  
 Let gallows gape for dog, let man go free,  
 And let not hemp his windpipe suffocate :  
 But Exeter hath given the doom of death,  
 For *pis* of little price.

Therefore, go speak, the duke will hear thy voice;  
 And let not Bardolph's vital breath be cut  
 With edge of penny cord, and vile reproach :  
 Speak, captain, for his life, and I will thee requite.

*Flu.* Ancient Pistol, I do partly understand your meaning.

*Pist.* Why then rejoice therefore.

*Flu.* Certainly, ancient, it is not a thing to rejoice at : for if, look you, he were my brother, I would desire the duke to use his good pleasure, and put him to executions ; for disciplines ought to be used.

*Pist.* A *figo* for thy friendship !

*Flu.* It is well.

*Pist.* The fig of Spain !<sup>3</sup>

[*Exit Pistol.*]

*Flu.* Very good.

*Gow.* Why this is an arrant counterfeit rascal ; I remember him now ; a cutpurse.

*Flu.* I'll assure you, 'a utter'd as prave 'ords at the pridge, as you shall see in a summer's day ; But it is very well ; what he has spoke to me, that is well, I warrant you, when time is serve.

*Gow.* Why, 'tis a gull, a fool, a rogue ; that now and then goes to the wars, to grace himself, at his return into London, under the form of a soldier. And such fellows are perfect in great commanders' names : and they will learn you by rote, where services were done ; — at such and such a sconce<sup>4</sup>, at such a breach, at such a convoy ; who came off bravely, who was shot, who disgraced, what terms

<sup>2</sup> A small box in which were kept the consecrated wafers.

<sup>3</sup> An allusion to the custom in Spain and Italy of giving poisoned figs.

<sup>4</sup> An entrenchment hastily thrown up.

the enemy stood on: and this they con perfectly in the phrase of war, which they trick up with new-tuned oaths: And what a beard of the general's cut, and a horrid suit of the camp, will do among foaming bottles and ale-wash'd wits, is wonderful to be thought on! but you must learn to know such slanders of the age, or else you may be marvellous mistook.

*Flu.* I tell you what, captain Gower; — I do perceive, he is not the man that he would gladly make show to the 'orld he is; if I find a hole in his coat, I will tell him my mind. [*Drum heard.*] Hark you, the king is coming; and I must speak with him from the pridge.

*Enter King HENRY, GLOSTER, and Soldiers.*

*Flu.* Cot pless your majesty!

*K. Hen.* How now, Fluellen? camest thou from the bridge?

*Flu.* Ay, so please your majesty. The duke of Exeter has very gallantly maintained the pridge: the French is gone off, look you; and there is gallant and most prave passages: Marry, th' athversary was have possession of the pridge; but he is enforced to retire, and the duke of Exeter is master of the pridge: I can tell your majesty, the duke is a prave man.

*K. Hen.* What men have you lost, Fluellen?

*Flu.* The perdition of th' athversary hath been very great, very reasonable great: marry, for my part, I think the duke hath lost never a man, but one that is like to be executed for robbing a church, one Bardolph, if your majesty know the man: his face is all bubukles, and whelks, and knobs, and flames of fire; and his lips plows at his nose, and it is like a coal of fire, sometimes plue, and sometimes red; but his nose is executed, and his fire's out.



*K. Hen.* We would have all such offenders so cut off: and we give express charge, that in our marches through the country, there be nothing compelled from the villages, nothing taken but paid for; none of the French upbraided, or abused in disdainful language; For when lenity and cruelty play for a kingdom, the gentler gamester is the soonest winner.

*Tucket sounds. Enter MONTJOY.*

*Mont.* You know me by my habit.

*K. Hen.* Well then, I know thee; What shall I know of thee?

*Mont.* My master's mind.

*K. Hen.* Unfold it.

*Mont.* Thus says my king: — say thou to Harry of England, Though we seemed dead, we did but sleep; Advantage is a better soldier than rashness. Tell him, we could have rebuked him at Harfleur; but that we thought not good to bruise an injury, till it were full ripe: — now we speak upon our cusp, and our voice is imperial: England shall repent his folly, see his weakness, and admire our sufferance. Bid him, therefore, consider of his ransome; which must proportion the losses we have borne, the subjects we have lost, the disgrace we have digested; which, in weight to re-answer, his pettiness would bow under. For our losses, his exchequer is too poor; for the effusion of our blood, the muster of his kingdom too faint a number; and for our disgrace, his own person, kneeling at our feet, but a weak and worthless satisfaction. To this add — defiance: and tell him, for conclusion, he hath betrayed his followers, whose condemnation is pronounced. So far my king and master; so much my office.

*K. Hen.* What is thy name? I know thy quality.

3 In proper time.

*Mont.* Montjoy.

*K. Hen.* Thou dost thy office fairly. Turn thee back,

And tell thy king. — I do not seek him now ;

But could be willing to march on to Calais

Without impeachment<sup>6</sup> ; for to say the sooth,

(Though 'tis no wisdom to confess so much

Unto an enemy of craft and vantage,)

My people are with sickness much enfeebled ;

My numbers lessen'd ; and those few I have,

Almost no better than so many French ;

Who, when they were in health, I tell thee, herald,

I thought upon one pair of English legs

Did march three Frenchmen. — Yet, forgive me, heaven,

That I do brag thus ! — this your air of France

Hath blown that vice in me ; I must repent.

Go, therefore, tell thy master, here I am ;

My ransome, is this frail and worthless trunk ;

My army, but a weak and sickly guard ;

Yet God before<sup>7</sup>, tell him, we will come on,

Though France himself, and such another neighbour,

Stand in our way. There's for thy labour, Montjoy ;

Go, bid thy master well advise himself :

If we may pass, we will ; if we be hinder'd,

We shall your tawny ground with your red blood

Discolour : and so, Montjoy, fare you well.

The sum of all our answer is but this :

We would not seek a battle, as we are ;

Yet, as we are, we say, we will not shun it ;

So tell your master.

*Mont.* I shall deliver so. Thanks to your highness. [Exit MONTJOY.]

*Glo.* I hope they will not come upon us now.

*K. Hen.* We are in God's hands, brother, not in theirs.

<sup>6</sup> Hindrance.

<sup>7</sup> Then used for God being my guide.

**March to** the bridge ; it now draws toward night :—  
**Beyond the** river we'll encamp ourselves ;  
**And on to-morrow** bid them march away. [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE VI.

*The French Camp, near Agincourt.*

*Enter the Constable of France, the Lord RAMBURES, the Duke of ORLEANS, Dauphin, and others.*

**Con.** Tut ! I have the best armour of the world.  
 — 'Would it were day.

**Orl.** You have an excellent armour ; but let my horse have his due.

**Con.** It is the best horse of Europe.

**Orl.** Will it never be morning ?

**Dau.** My lord of Orleans, and my lord high constable, you talk of horse and armour.—

**Orl.** You are as well provided of both, as any prince in the world.

**Dau.** What a long night is this ! — I will not change my horse with any that treads but on four pasterns. *Ca, ha !* He bounds from the earth, as if his entrails were hairs<sup>8</sup> ! *le cheval volant !* the Pegasus, *qui a les narines de feu !* When I bestride him, I soar, I am a hawk : he treads the air ; the earth sings when he touches it ; the basest horn of his hoof is more musical than the pipe of Hermes.

**Orl.** He's of the colour of the nutmeg,

**Dau.** And of the heat of the ginger. It is a beast for Perseus : he is pure air and fire ; and the dull elements of earth and water never appear in him, but only in patient stillness, while his rider mounts him : he is, indeed, a horse : and all other jades you may call — beasts.

<sup>8</sup> Alluding to the bounding of tennis-balls, which were filled with hair.

*Con.* Indeed, my lord, it is a most absolute and excellent horse.

*Dau.* It is the prince of palfreys ; his neigh is like the bidding of a monarch, and his countenance enforces homage.

*Orl.* No more, cousin.

*Dau.* Nay, the man hath no wit, that cannot, from the rising of the lark to the lodging of the lamb, vary deserved praise on my palfrey : it is a theme as fluent as the sea ; turn the sands into eloquent tongues, and my horse is argument for them all : 'tis a subject for a sovereign to reason on, and for a sovereign's sovereign to ride on ; and for the world (familiar to us, and unknown,) to lay apart their particular functions, and wonder at him. I once writ a sonnet in his praise, and began thus: *Wonder of nature, —*

*Orl.* I have heard a sonnet begin so to one's mistress.

*Dau.* Then did they imitate that which I composed to my courser ; for my horse is my mistress.

*Con.* You have good judgment in horsemanship.

*Ram.* My lord constable, the armour, that I saw in your tent to-night, are those stars, or suns, upon it?

*Con.* Stars, my lord.

*Dau.* Some of them will fall to-morrow, I hope.

*Con.* And yet my sky shall not want.

*Dau.* That may be, for you bear a many superfluously ; and 'twere more honour, some were away.

*Con.* Even as your horse bears your praises ; who would trot as well, were some of your brags dismounted.

*Dau.* 'Would I were able to load him with his desert ! Will it never be day ? I will trot to-morrow a mile, and my way shall be paved with English faces.

*Con.* I will not say so, for fear I should be faced out of my way : But I would it were morning, for I would fain be about the ears of the English.

*Ram.* Who will go to hazard with me for the English prisoners?

*Con.* You must first go yourself to hazard, you have them.

*Dau.* 'Tis midnight; I'll go arm myself. [

*Orl.* The Dauphin longs for morning.

*Ram.* He longs to eat the English.

*Con.* I think, he will eat all he kills.

*Orl.* By the white hand of my lady, he's a good prince.

*Con.* Swear by her foot, that she may tread the oath.

*Orl.* He is, simply, the most active gentleman in France.

*Con.* Doing is activity: and he will still be doing.

*Orl.* He never did harm, that I heard of.

*Con.* Nor will do none to-morrow; he will keep that good name still.

*Orl.* I know him to be valiant.

*Con.* I was told that, by one that knows better than you.

*Orl.* What's he?

*Con.* Marry, he told me so himself; and he he cared not who knew it.

*Orl.* He needs not, it is no hidden virtue in him.

*Con.* By my faith, sir, but it is; never any saw it, but his lackey: 'tis a hooded valour; when it appears, it will bate.<sup>9</sup>

*Orl.* Ill-will never said well.

*Con.* I will cap that proverb with — The flattery in friendship.

*Orl.* And I will take up that with — Give the devil is due.

*Con.* Well placed; there stands your friend the devil.

<sup>9</sup> An equivoque in terms in falconry: he means valour is hid from every body but his lackey, and when it appears it will fall off.

*Orl.* You are the better at proverbs, by how much — A fool's bolt is soon shot.

*Con.* You have shot over.

*Orl.* 'Tis not the first time you were overshot.

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* My lord high constable, the English lie within fifteen hundred paces of your tent.

*Con.* Who hath measured the ground?

*Mess.* The lord Grandpré.

*Con.* A valiant and most expert gentleman. — Would it were day! — Alas, poor Harry of England! — he longs not for the dawning, as we do.

*Orl.* What a wretched and peevish<sup>1</sup> fellow is this king of England, to mope with his fat-brained followers so far out of his knowledge!

*Con.* If the English had any apprehension, they would run away.

*Orl.* That they lack; for if their heads had any intellectual armour, they could never wear such heavy head-pieces.

*Ram.* That island of England breeds very valiant creatures; their mastiffs are of unmatchable courage.

*Orl.* Foolish curs! that run winking into the mouth of a Russian bear, and have their heads crushed like rotten apples: You may as well say, — that's a valiant flea, that dare eat his breakfast on the lip of a lion.

*Con.* Just, just; and the men do sympathize with the mastiffs, in robustious and rough coming on, leaving their wits with their wives: and then give them great meals of beef, and iron, and steel, they will eat like wolves, and fight like devils.

*Orl.* Ay, but these English are shrewdly out of beef.

<sup>1</sup> Foolish.

*Con.* Then we shall find to-morrow — they have only stomachs to eat, and none to fight. Now is it time to arm : Come, shall we about it ?

*Orl.* It is now two o'clock : but, let me see, —  
by ten,  
We shall have each a hundred Englishmen.  
[*Exeunt.*]

---

## ACT THE FOURTH.

### *Enter CHORUS.*

*Chor.* Now entertain conjecture of a time,  
When creeping murmur, and the poring dark,  
Fills the wide vessel of the universe.  
From camp to camp, through the foul womb of  
night,  
The hum of either army stilly<sup>2</sup> sounds,  
That the fix'd sentinels almost receive  
The secret whispers of each other's watch :  
Fire answers fire ; and through their paly flames  
Each battle sees the other's umber'd<sup>3</sup> face :  
Steed threatens steed, in high and boastful neighs  
Piercing the night's dull ear ; and from the tents,  
The armourers, accomplishing the knights,  
With busy hammers closing rivets up,  
Give dreadful note of preparation.  
The country cocks do crow, the clocks do toll,  
And the third hour of drowsy morning name.  
Proud of their numbers, and secure in soul,  
The confident and over-lusty<sup>4</sup> French  
Do the low-rated English play at dice ;

<sup>2</sup> Gently, lowly.

<sup>3</sup> Discoloured by the gleam of the fires.

<sup>4</sup> Over-sold.

And chide the cripple tardy-gaited night,  
Who, like a foul and ugly witch, doth limp  
So tediously away. The poor condemned English,  
Like sacrifices, by their watchful fires  
Sit patiently, and inly ruminate  
The morning's danger ; and their gesture sad,  
Investing lank-lean cheeks, and war-worn coats,  
Presenteth them unto the gazing moon  
So many horrid ghosts. O, now, who will behold  
The royal captain of this ruin'd band,  
Walking from watch to watch, from tent to tent,  
Let him cry — Praise and glory on his head !  
For forth he goes, and visits all his host ;  
Bids them good-morrow, with a modest smile ;  
And calls them — brothers, friends, and country-  
men.

Upon his royal face there is no note,  
How dread an army hath enrounded him ;  
Nor doth he dedicate one jot of colour  
Unto the weary and all-watched night :  
But freshly looks, and over-bears attaint,  
With cheerful semblance, and sweet majesty ;  
That every wretch, pining and pale before,  
Beholding him, plucks comfort from his looks :  
A largess universal, like the sun,  
His liberal eye doth give to every one,  
Thawing cold fear. Then, mean and gentle all,  
Behold, as may unworthiness define,  
A little touch of Harry in the night :  
And so our scene must to the battle fly ;  
Where, (O for pity !) we shall much disgrace —  
With four or five most vile and ragged foils,  
Right ill-dispos'd, in brawl ridiculous, —  
The name of Agincourt : Yet, sit and see ;  
Minding<sup>b</sup> true things, by what their mockeries be.  
[Exit.]

<sup>b</sup> Calling to remembrance.



## SCENE I.

*The English Camp at Agincourt.*

*Enter King HENRY, BEDFORD, and GLOSTER.*

*K. Hen.* Gloster, 'tis true, that we are in great danger ;

The greater therefore should our courage be. —  
Good morrow, brother Bedford, — Now we find  
There is some soul of goodness in things evil,  
Would men observingly distil it out ;  
For our bad neighbour makes us early stirrers,  
Which is both healthful, and good husbandry :  
Besides, they are our outward consciences,  
And preachers to us all ; admonishing,  
That we should dress us fairly for our end.  
Thus may we gather honey from the weed,  
And make a moral of the devil himself.

*Enter ERPINGHAM.*

Good morrow, old sir Thomas Erpingham :  
A good soft pillow for that good white head  
Were better than a churlish turf of France.

*Erp.* Not so, my liege ; this lodging likes me better,  
Since I may say — now lie I like a king.

*K. Hen.* 'Tis good for men to love their present pains,  
Upon example ; so the spirit is eased :  
And, when the mind is quicken'd, out of doubt,  
The organs, though defunct and dead before,  
Break up their drowsy grave, and newly move  
With casted slough<sup>6</sup> and fresh legerity.<sup>7</sup>  
Lend me thy cloak, sir Thomas. — Brothers both.

<sup>6</sup> Slough is the skin which serpents annually throw off.  
<sup>7</sup> Lightness, nimbleness.

Commend me to the princes in our camp ;  
Do my good morrow to them ; and, anon,  
Desire them all to my pavilion.

*Glo.* We shall, my liege.

[*Exeunt GLOSTER and BEDFORD.*]

*Erp.* Shall I attend your grace ?

*K. Hen.* No, my good knight ;  
Go with my brothers to my lords of England :  
I and my bosom must debate awhile,  
And then I would no other company.

*Erp.* The Lord in heaven bless thee, noble  
Harry. [Exit ERPINGHAM.]

*K. Hen.* Worthy old heart ! thou speakest cheer-  
fully.

*Enter PISTOL.*

*Pist.* *Qui va là ?*

*K. Hen.* A friend.

*Pist.* Discuss unto me ; Art thou officer ;  
Or art thou base, common, and popular ?

*K. Hen.* I am a gentleman of a company.

*Pist.* Trailest thou the puissant pike ?

*K. Hen.* Even so : What are you ?

*Pist.* As good a gentleman as the emperor.

*K. Hen.* Then you are a better than the king.

*Pist.* The king's a bawcock, and a heart of gold,  
A lad of life, an imp of fame ;  
Of parents good, of fist most valiant :  
I kiss his dirty shoe, and from my heart-strings  
I love the lovely bully. What's thy name ?

*K. Hen.* Harry *le Roy*.

*Pist.* *Le Roy* ! a Cornish name : art thou of  
Cornish crew ?

*K. Hen.* No, I am a Welshman.

*Pist.* Knowest thou Fluellen.

*K. Hen.* Yes.

*Pist.* Tell him, I'll knock his leek about his pate,  
Upon Saint Davy's day.

*K. Hen.* Do not you wear your dagger in your cap that day, lest he knock that about yours.

*Pist.* Art thou his friend?

*K. Hen.* And his kinsman too.

*Pist.* The *figo* for thee then!

*K. Hen.* I thank you: Heaven be with you.

*Pist.* My name is Pistol called. [Exit.]

*K. Hen.* It sorts well with your fierceness.

*Enter FLUELLEN and GOWER, severally.*

*Gow.* Captain Fluellen!

*Flu.* So! speak lower. It is the greatest admiration in the universal 'orld, when the true and ancient prerogatives and laws of the wars is not kept: if you would take the pains but to examine the wars of Pompey the Great, you shall find, I warrant you, that there is no tiddle taddle, or pibble pabble, in Pompey's camp; I warrant you, you shall find the ceremonies of the wars, and the cares of it, and the forms of it, and the sobriety of it, and the modesty of it, to be other wise.

*Gow.* Why, the enemy is loud; you heard him all night.

*Flu.* If the enemy is an ass and a fool, and a prating coxcomb, is it meet, think you, that we should also, look you, be an ass, and a fool, and a prating coxcomb; in your own conscience now?

*Gow.* I will speak lower.

*Flu.* I pray you, and beseech you, that you will.

[Exeunt GOWER and FLUELLEN.]

*K. Hen.* Though it appear a little out of fashion, There is much care and valour in this Welshman.

*Enter BATES, COURT, and WILLIAMS.*

*Court.* Brother John Bates, is not that the morning which breaks yonder?

*Bates.* I think it be: but we have no great cause to desire the approach of day.

*Will.* We see yonder the beginning of the day, but, I think, we shall never see the end of it.— Who goes there?

*K. Hen.* A friend.

*Will.* Under what captain serve you?

*K. Hen.* Under Sir Thomas Erpingham.

*Will.* A good old commander, and a most kind gentleman: I pray you, what thinks he of our estate?

*K. Hen.* Even as men wrecked upon a sand, that look to be washed off the next tide.

*Bates.* He hath not told his thought to the king?

*K. Hen.* No: nor it is not meet he should. For, though I speak it to you, I think, the king is but a man, as I am: the violet smells to him as it doth to me; the element shows to him, as it doth to me; all his senses have but human conditions<sup>a</sup>: his ceremonies laid by, he appears but a man; and though his affections are higher mounted than ours, yet, when they stoop, they stoop with the like wing; therefore when he sees reason of fears, as we do, his fears, out of doubt, be of the same relish as ours are: Yet, in reason, no man should possess him with any appearance of fear, lest he, by showing it, should dishearten his army.

*Bates.* He may show what outward courage he will: but, I believe, as cold a night as 'tis, he could wish himself in the Thames up to the neck; and so I would he were, and I by him, at all adventures, so we were quit here.

*K. Hen.* By my troth, I will speak my conscience of the king; I think, he would not wish himself any where but where he is.

*Bates.* Then, 'would he were here alone; so should he be sure to be ransomed, and a many poor men's lives saved.

*K. Hen.* I dare say, you love him not so ill, to

<sup>a</sup> Qualities.

wish him here alone : howsoever you speak this, to feel other men's minds : Methinks, I could not die any where so contented, as in the king's company ; his cause being just, and his quarrel honourable.

*Will.* That's more than we know.

*Bates.* Ay, or more than we should seek after ; for we know enough, if we know we are the king's subjects ; if his cause be wrong, our obedience to the king wipes the crime of it out of us.

*Will.* But, if the cause be not good, the king himself hath a heavy reckoning to make ; when all those legs, and arms, and heads, chopped off in a battle, shall join together at the latter day, and cry all — We died at such a place ; some, swearing ; some, crying for a surgeon ; some, upon their wives left poor behind them : some, upon the debts they owe ; some, upon their children rawly<sup>1</sup> left. I am afraid there are few die well, that die in battle ; for how can they charitably dispose of any thing when blood is their argument ? Now, if these men do not die well, it will be a black matter for the king that led them to it ; whom, to disobey, were against all proportion of subjection.

*K. Hen.* So, if a son, that is by his father sent about merchandise, do sinfully miscarry upon the sea, the imputation of his wickedness, by your rule, should be imposed upon his father that sent him : or if a servant, under his master's command, transporting a sum of money, be assailed by robbers, and die in many irreconciled iniquities, you may call the business of the master the author of the servant's perdition : — But this is not so : the king is not bound to answer the particular endings of his soldiers, the father of his son, nor the master of his servant : for they purpose not their death, when they purpose their services. Besides, there is no ing, be his cause never so spotless, if it come to

<sup>1</sup> Suddenly.

the arbitrement of swords, can try it out with all unspotted soldiers. Some, peradventure, have on them the guilt of premeditated and contrived murder; some, of beguiling virgins with the broken seals of perjury; some, making the wars their bulwark, that have before gored the gentle bosom of peace with pillage and robbery. Now, if these men have defeated the law, and outrun native punishment<sup>2</sup>, though they can outstrip men, they have no wings to fly from God: war is his vengeance; so that here men are punished, for before-breach of the king's laws, in now the king's quarrel: where they feared the death, they have borne life away; and where they would be safe, they perish: Then if they die unprovided, no more is the king guilty of it, than he was before guilty of those impieties for the which they are now visited. Every subject's duty is the king's; but every subject's soul is his own. Therefore should every soldier in the wars do as every sick man in his bed, wash every mote out of his conscience: and dying so, death is to him advantage; or not dying, the time was blessedly lost, wherein such preparation was gained: and, in him that escapes, it were not sin to think, that making God so free an offer, he let him outlive that day to see his greatness, and to teach others how they should prepare.

*Will.* 'Tis certain, every man that dies ill, the ill is upon his own head, the king is not to answer for it.

*Bates.* I do not desire he should answer for me; and yet I determine to fight lustily for him.

*K. Hen.* I myself heard the king say, he would not be ransomed.

*Will.* Ay, he said so, to make us fight cheerfully; but, when our throats are cut, he may be ransomed, and we ne'er the wiser.

*K. Hen.* If I live to see it, I will never trust his word after.

<sup>2</sup> *i. e.* Punishment in their native country.

*Will.* 'Mass, you'll pay<sup>s</sup> him then ! That's a perilous shot out of an elder gun, that a poor and private displeasure can do against a monarch ! you may as well go about to turn the sun to ice, with fanning in his face with a peacock's feather. You'll never trust his word after ! come, 'tis a foolish saying.

*K. Hen.* Your reproof is something too round ; I should be angry with you, if the time were convenient.

*Will.* Let it be a quarrel between us, if you live.

*K. Hen.* I embrace it.

*Will.* How shall I know thee again ?

*K. Hen.* Give me any gage of thine, and I will wear it in my bonnet : then, if ever thou darest acknowledge it, I will make it my quarrel.

*Will.* Here's my glove ; give me another of thine.

*K. Hen.* There.

*Will.* This will I also wear in my cap : if ever thou come to me and say, after to-morrow, *This is my glove*, by this hand, I will take thee a box on the ear.

*K. Hen.* If ever I live to see it, I will challenge it.

*Will.* Thou darest as well be hanged.

*K. Hen.* Well, I will do it, though I take thee in the king's company.

*Will.* Keep thy word : fare thee well.

*Bates.* Be friends, you English fools, be friends ; we have French quarrels enough, if you could tell how to reckon.

*K. Hen.* Indeed, the French may lay twenty French crowns to one, they will beat us ; for they bear them on their shoulders : But it is no English treason, to cut French crowns ; and, to-morrow the king himself will be a clipper. [*Exeunt Soldiers.* Upon the king ! let us our lives, our souls, Our debts, our careful wives, our children, and Our sins, lay on the king ;—we must bear all.

<sup>s</sup> To pay here signifies to bring to account, to punish.

O hard condition ! twin-born with greatness,  
Subjected to the breath of every fool,  
Whose sense no more can feel but his own wringing!  
What infinite heart's ease must kings neglect,  
That private men enjoy ?  
And what have kings, that privates have not too,  
Save ceremony, save general ceremony ?  
And what art thou, thou idol ceremony ?  
What kind of god art thou, that suffer'st more  
Of mortal griefs, than do thy worshippers ?  
What are thy rents ? what are thy comings in ?  
O ceremony, show me but thy worth !  
What is the soul of adoration ?  
Art thou aught else but place, degree, and form,  
Creating awe and fear in other men ?  
Wherein thou art less happy being fear'd  
Than they in fearing.  
What drink'st thou oft, instead of homage sweet,  
But poison'd flattery ? O, be sick, great greatness,  
And bid thy ceremony give thee cure !  
Think'st thou, the fiery fever will go out  
With titles blown from adulation ?  
Will it give place to flexure and low bending ?  
Canst thou, when thou command'st the beggar's  
knee,  
Command the health of it ? No, thou proud dream,  
That play'st so subtly with a king's repose ;  
I am a king, that find thee ; and I know,  
'Tis not the balm, the sceptre, and the ball,  
The sword, the mace, the crown imperial,  
The enter-tissued robe of gold and pearl,  
The farced<sup>4</sup> title running 'fore the king,  
The throne he sits on, nor the tide of pomp  
That beats upon the high shore of this world,

<sup>4</sup> Farced is stuffed. The tumid puffy titles with which a king's name is introduced.



No, not all these, thrice-gorgeous ceremony,  
Not all these, laid in bed majestical,  
Can sleep so soundly as the wretched slave ;  
Who, with a body fill'd, and vacant mind,  
Gets him to rest, cramm'd with distressful bread ;  
Never sees horrid night, the child of hell ;  
But, like a lackey, from the rise to set,  
Sweats in the eye of Phœbus, and all night,  
Sleeps in Elysium ; next day, after dawn,  
Doth rise, and help Hyperion<sup>s</sup> to his horse ;  
And follows so the ever-running year  
With profitable labour, to his grave :  
And, but for ceremony, such a wretch,  
Winding up days with toil, and nights with sleep,  
Had the fore-hand and vantage of a king.  
The slave, a member of the country's peace,  
Enjoys it ; but in gross brain little wots,  
What watch the king keeps to maintain the peace,  
Whose hours the peasant best advantages.

*Enter ERPINGHAM.*

*Erp.* My lord, your nobles, jealous of your  
absence,  
Seek through your camp to find you.

*K. Hen.* Good old knight,  
Collect them all together at my tent :  
I'll be before thee.

*Erp.* I shall do't, my lord. [*Exit.*]

*K. Hen.* O God of battles ! steel my soldiers'  
hearts !

Possess them not with fear ; take from them now  
The sense of reckoning, if the opposed numbers  
Pluck their hearts from them !—Not to-day, O Lord,  
O not to-day, think not upon the fault  
My father made in compassing the crown !  
I Richard's body have interred new ;

<sup>s</sup> The sun.

And on it have bestow'd more contrite tears,  
Than from it issued forced drops of blood.  
Five hundred poor I have in yearly pay,  
Who twice a day their wither'd hands hold up  
Toward heaven, to pardon blood ; and I have built  
Two chantries, where the sad and solemn priests  
Sing still for Richard's soul. More will I do :  
Though all that I can do, is nothing worth ;  
Since that my penitence comes after all,  
Imploring pardon.

*Enter GLOSTER.*

*Glo.* My liege !

*K. Hen.* My brother Gloster's voice ? — Ay ;  
I know thy errand, I will go with thee : —  
The day, my friends, and all things stay for me.  
[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II.

*The French Camp.*

*Enter Dauphin, ORLEANS, RAMBURES, and others.*

*Orl.* The sun doth gild our armour ; up, my lords.

*Dau.* *Montez à cheval* : — My horse ! *valet* !  
*lacquay* ! ha !

*Orl.* O brave spirit !

*Dau.* *Via* <sup>6</sup> ! — *les eaux et la terre* ——

*Orl.* *Rien puis ? l'air et le feu* ——

*Dau.* *Ciel* ! cousin Orleans. ——

*Enter Constable.*

Now, my lord constable !

*Con.* Hark, how our steeds for present service  
neigh.

<sup>c</sup> An old encouraging exclamation.

*Dau.* Mount them, and make incision in their hides ;

That their hot blood may spin in English eyes,  
And dout<sup>7</sup> them with superfluous courage : Ha !

*Ram.* What, will you have them weep our horses' blood ?

How shall we then behold their natural tears ?

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* The English are embattled, you French peers.

*Con.* To horse, you gallant princes ! straight to horse !

Do but behold yon poor and starved band,  
And your fair show shall suck away their souls,  
Leaving them but the shales and husks of men.  
There is not work enough for all our hands ;  
Scarce blood enough in all their sickly veins,  
To give each naked curtle-ax a stain,  
That our French gallants shall to-day draw out,  
And sheath for lack of sport : let us but blow on them,

The vapour of our valour will o'erturn them.  
'Tis positive 'gainst all exceptions, lords,  
That our superfluous lackeys, and our peasants,—  
Who, in unnecessary action, swarm  
About our squares of battle,—were enough  
To purge this field of such a hilding<sup>8</sup> foe ;  
Though we, upon this mountain's basis by  
Took stand for idle speculation :  
But that our honours must not. What's to say ?  
A very little little let us do,  
And all is done. Then let the trumpets sound  
The tucket-sonuance<sup>9</sup>, and the note to mount :  
For our approach shall so much dare the field,  
That England shall couch down in fear, and yield.

<sup>7</sup> Do them out, extinguish them. <sup>8</sup> Mean, despicable.

<sup>9</sup> The name of an introductory flourish on the trumpet.

*Enter GRANDPRÉ.*

*Grand.* Why do you stay so long, my lords of France?

Yon island carrions, desperate of their bones,  
Ill-favour'dly become the morning field :  
Their ragged curtains<sup>1</sup> poorly are let loose,  
And our air shakes them passing scornfully.  
Big Mars seems bankrupt in their beggar'd host,  
And faintly through a rusty beaver peeps.  
Their horsemen sit like fixed candlesticks,  
With torch-staves in their hand: and their poor jades  
Lob down their heads, dropping the hides and hips ;  
The gum down-roping from their pale-dead eyes ;  
And in their pale dull mouths the gimmal<sup>2</sup> bit  
Lies foul with chew'd grass, still and motionless ;  
And their executors, the knavish crows,  
Fly o'er them all, impatient for their hour.  
Description cannot suit itself in words,  
To démonstrate the life of such a battle  
In life so lifeless as it shows itself.

*Con.* They have said their prayers, and they stay  
for death.

*Dau.* Shall we go send them dinners, and fresh  
suits,  
And give their fasting horses provender,  
And after fight with them?

*Con.* I stay but for my guard ; On, to the field :  
I will the banner from a trumpet take,  
And use it for my haste. Come, come away !  
The sun is high, and we outwear the day. [*Exeunt.*

<sup>1</sup> Colours.

<sup>2</sup> Ring.

## SCENE III.

*The English Camp.*

*Enter the English Host ; GLOSTER, BEDFORD, EXETER, SALISBURY, and WESTMORELAND.*

*Glo.* Where is the king ?

*Bed.* The king himself is rode to view their battle.

*West.* Of fighting men they have full three-score thousand.

*Exe.* There's five to one ; besides, they all are fresh.

*Sal.* God's arm strike with us ! 'tis a fearful odds.  
God be wi' you, princes all ; I'll to my charge ;  
If we no more meet, till we meet in heaven,  
Then joyfully,—my noble lord of Bedford,—  
My dear lord Gloster,—and my good lord Exeter,—  
And my kind kinsman,—warriors all, adieu !

*Bed.* Farewell, good Salisbury : and good luck go with thee !

*Exe.* Farewell, kind lord ; fight valiantly to-day :  
And yet I do thee wrong, to mind thee of it,  
For thou art fram'd of the firm truth of valour.

[*Exit SALISBURY.*]

*Bed.* He is as full of valour as of kindness ;  
Princely in both.

*West.* O that we now had here

*Enter King HENRY.*

But one ten thousand of those men in England,  
That do no work to-day !

*K. Hen.* What's he, that wishes so ?  
My cousin Westmoreland ? — No, my fair cousin :  
If we are mark'd to die, we are enough

To do our country loss ; and if to live,  
The fewer men, the greater share of honour.  
O no, I pray thee, wish not one man more.  
By Jove, I am not covetous for gold ;  
Nor care I, who doth feed upon my cost ;  
It yearns <sup>3</sup> me not, if men my garments wear ;  
Such outer things dwell not in my desires :  
But, if it be a sin to covet honour,  
I am the most offending soul alive.  
No, 'faith, my coz, wish not a man from England :  
By Heaven ! I would not lose so great an honour,  
As one man more, methinks, would share from me,  
For the best hope I have. O, do not wish one more :  
Rather proclaim it, Westmoreland, through my host,  
That he, which hath no stomach to this fight,  
Let him depart ; his passport shall be made,  
And crowns for convoy put into his purse :  
We would not die in that man's company,  
That fears his fellowship to die with us.  
This day is call'd — the feast of Crispian :  
He, that outlives this day, and comes safe home,  
Will stand a tip-toe when this day is nam'd,  
And rouse him at the name of Crispian :  
He, that shall live this day, and see old age,  
Will yearly on the vigil feast his friends,  
And say — to-morrow is Saint Crispian :  
Then will he strip his sleeve, and show his scars,  
And say, these wounds I had on Crispin's day.  
Old men forget ; yet all shall be forgot,  
But he'll remember, with advantages,  
What feats he did that day : Then shall our names,  
Familiar in their mouths as household words, —  
Harry the king, Bedford, and Exeter,  
Warwick and Talbot, Salisbury and Gloster, —  
Be in their flowing cups freshly remember'd :  
This story shall the good man teach his son ;  
And Crispin Crispian shall ne'er go by,

<sup>3</sup> Grieves.

From this day to the ending of the world,  
But we in it shall be remembered:  
We few, we happy few, we band of brothers;  
For he, to-day that sheds his blood with me,  
Shall be my brother; be he ne'er so vile,  
This day shall gentle his condition:<sup>4</sup>  
And gentlemen in England, now a-bed,  
Shall think themselves accurs'd, they were  
here;  
And hold their manhoods cheap, while any speak  
That fought with us upon Saint Crispin's day.

*Enter SALISBURY.*

*Sal.* My sovereign lord, bestow yourself with  
speed:  
The French are bravely in their battles set,  
And will with all expedience charge on us.  
*K. Hen.* All things are ready, if our minds be so.  
*West.* Perish the man, whose mind is backward  
now!  
*K. Hen.* Thou dost not wish more help from  
England, cousin?  
*West.* By Heaven, my liege, 'would you and  
alone,  
Without more help, might fight this battle out!  
*K. Hen.* Why, now thou hast unwish'd five thousand  
men;  
Which likes me better, than to wish us one.—  
You know your places: God be with you all!

*Tucket. Enter MONTJOY.*

*Mont.* Once more I come to know of thee, king  
Harry,  
If for thy ransom thou wilt now compound,

<sup>4</sup> i. e. This day shall advance him to the rank of  
gentleman.

Before thy most assured overthrow :  
For, certainly, thou art so near the gulf,  
Thou needs must be englutted. Besides, in mercy,  
The Constable desires thee — thou wilt mind<sup>5</sup>  
Thy followers of repentance ; that their souls  
May make a peaceful and a sweet retire  
From off these fields, where (wretches) their poor  
bodies

Must lie and fester.

*K. Hen.* Who hath sent thee now ?

*Mont.* The Constable of France.

*K. Hen.* I pray thee, bear my former answer  
back ;

Bid them achieve me, and then sell my bones.  
Good Heaven ! why should they mock poor fellows  
thus ?

The man, that once did sell the lion's skin  
While the beast liv'd, was killed with hunting him.  
A many of our bodies shall, no doubt,  
Find native graves ; upon the which, I trust,  
Shall witness live in brass of this day's work :  
And those that leave their valiant bones in France,  
Dying like men, though buried in your dunghills,  
They shall be fam'd ; for there the sun shall greet  
them,

And draw their honours reeking up to heaven.  
Let me speak proudly : — Tell the Constable,  
We are but warriors for the working-day :  
Our gayness, and our gilt<sup>6</sup> are all besmirch'd<sup>7</sup>  
With rainy marching in the painful field ;  
There's not a piece of feather in our host,  
(Good argument, I hope, we shall not fly,)  
And time hath worn us into slovenry :  
But, by the mass, our hearts are in the trim :  
And my poor soldiers tell me — yet ere night  
They'll be in fresher robes ; or they will pluck  
The gay new coats o'er the French soldiers' heads,

<sup>5</sup> *Remind.*

<sup>6</sup> *Gilding.*

<sup>7</sup> *Soiled.*



And turn them out of service. If they do this,  
(As, if God please, they shall,) my ransome then  
Will soon be levied. Herald, save thou thy labour;  
Come thou no more for ransome, gentle herald;  
They shall have none, I swear, but these my joints:  
Which if they have as I will leave 'em to them,  
Shall yield them little, tell the Constable.

*Mont.* I shall, king Harry. And so fare thee  
well:

Thou never shalt hear herald any more. [*Exit.*

*K. Hen.* I fear, thou'lt once more come again  
for ransome.

*Enter the Duke of York.*

*York.* My lord, most humbly on my knee I beg  
The leading of the vaward.<sup>s</sup>

*K. Hen.* Take it, brave York.— Now, soldiers,  
march away:—

And how thou pleasest, God, dispose the day!

[*Excunt.*

#### SCENE IV.

#### *The Field of Battle.*

*Alarums: Excursions. Enter French Soldier,  
PISTOL, and Boy.*

*Pist.* Yield, cur.

*Fr. Sol.* *Je pense, que vous estes le gentilhomme de  
bonne qualité.*

*Pist.* Quality, call you me?— Construe me, art  
thou a gentleman? What is thy name? discuss.

*Fr. Sol.* *O seigneur Dieu!*

*Pist.* O, signieur Dew should be a gentleman:—  
Perpend my words, O signieur Dew, and mark;—

<sup>s</sup> Vanguard.

O signieur Dew, thou diest on point of fox,<sup>9</sup>  
Except, O signieur, thou do give to me  
Egregious ransome.

Fr. Sol. *O, prenez misericorde! ayez pitié de moy!*

*Pist.* Moy shall not serve, I will have forty moys;  
For I will fetch thy rim<sup>1</sup> out at thy throat,  
In drops of crimson blood.

Fr. Sol. *Est il impossible d'eschapper la force de ton bras?*

*Pist.* Brass, cur!  
Offer'st me brass?

Fr. Sol. *O pardonnez moy!*

*Pist.* Say'st thou me so? is that a ton of moys? —  
Come hither, boy; Ask me this slave in French,  
What is his name.

Boy. *Escoutez; Comment estes vous appellé?*

Fr. Sol. *Monsieur le Fer.*

Boy. He says, his name is — master Fer.

*Pist.* Master Fer! I'll fer him, and firk<sup>2</sup> him, and ferret him: — discuss the same in French unto him.

Boy. I do not know the French for fer, and ferret, and firk.

*Pist.* Bid him prepare, for I will cut his throat.

Fr. Sol. *Que dit-il, monsieur?*

Boy. *Il me commande de vous dire que vous faites vous prest; car ce soldat icy est disposé tout à cette heure de couper vostre gorge.*

*Pist.* Ouy, couper gorge, par ma foy, pesant.  
Unless thou give me crowns, brave crowns;  
Or mangled shalt thou be by this my sword.

Fr. Sol. *O, je vous supplie pour l'amour de Dieu, me pardonner! Je suis gentilhomme de bonne maison: gardez ma vie, & je vous donneray deux cents escus.*

*Pist.* What are his words?

<sup>9</sup> An old cant word for a sword, so called from a famous sword cutler of the name of Fox.

<sup>1</sup> The diaphragm.

<sup>2</sup> Chastise.

*Boy.* He prays you to save his life : he is a gentleman of a good house ; and, for his ransome, he will give you two hundred crowns.

*Pist.* Tell him, — my fury shall abate, and I The crowns will take.

*Fr. Sol.* *Petit monsieur, que dit-il ?*

*Boy.* *Encore qu'il est contre son jurement, de pardonner aucun prisonnier ; neantmoins, pour les escus que vous l'avez promis, est il content de vous donner la liberté, le franchisement.*

*Fr. Sol.* *Sur mes genoux, je vous donne mille remerciemens : & je m'estime heureux que je suis tombé entre les mains d'un chevalier, je pense, le plus brave, valiant, & très distingué seigneur d'Angleterre.*

*Pist.* Expound unto me, boy.

*Boy.* He gives you, upon his knees, a thousand thanks : and he esteems himself happy that he hath fallen into the hands of (as he thinks) the most brave, valorous, and thrice-worthy signieur of England.

*Pist.* As I suck blood, I will some mercy show. — Follow me, cur. [Exit PISTOL.

*Boy.* *Suivez vous le grand capitaine.*

[Exit French Soldier.

I did never know so full a voice issue from so empty a heart : but the saying is true, — The empty vessel makes the greatest sound. Bardolph, and Nym, had ten times more valour than this roaring devil i'the old play, that every one may pare his nails with a wooden dagger ; and they are both hanged ; and so would this be, if he durst steal any thing adventurously. I must stay with the lackeys, with the luggage of our camp : the French might have a good prey of us, if he knew of it ; for there is none to guard it but boys. [Exit

## SCENE V.

*Another Part of the Field of Battle.*

*Alarums. Enter Dauphin, ORLEANS, BOURBON, Constable, RAMBURES, and others.*

Con. *O diable !*

Orl. *O seigneur ! — le jour est perdu ! tout est perdu !*

Dau. *Mort de ma vie !* all is confounded, all !  
Reproach and everlasting shame  
Sits mocking in our plumes. — *O meschante fortune ! —*

Do not run away. *[A short alarum.*

Con. Why, all our ranks are broke.

Dau. *O perdurable* <sup>7</sup> *shame !* — let's stab ourselves.  
Be these the wretches that we play'd at dice for ?

Orl. Is this the king we sent to for his ransome ?

Bour. Shame, and eternal shame, nothing but shame !

Let us die instant : Once more back again ;  
And he that will not follow Bourbon now,  
Let him go hence, with shame and infamy.

Con. Disorder, that hath spoil'd us, friend us now !

Let us, in heaps, go offer up our lives  
Unto these English, or else die with fame.

Orl. We are enough, yet living in the field,  
To smother up the English in our throngs,  
If any order might be thought upon.

Bour. The devil take order now ; I'll to the throng ;

Let life be short ; else, shame will be too long.

*[Exit.]*

## SCENE VI.

*Another Part of the Field.*

*Alarums. Enter King HENRY and Forces ; EXETER, and others.*

*K. Hen.* Well have ye done, thrice valiant countrymen :

But all's not done, yet keep the French the field.

*Esc.* The duke of York commends him to your majesty.

*K. Hen.* Lives he, good uncle ? thrice within this hour,

I saw him down ; thrice up again, and fighting ;  
From helmet to the spur, all blood he was.

*Esc.* In which array, (brave soldier,) doth he lie,  
Larding the plain : and by his bloody side,  
(Yoke-fellow to his honour-owing wounds,)  
The noble earl of Suffolk also lies.

Suffolk first died : and York, all haggled over,  
Comes to him, where in gore he lay insteep'd,  
And takes him by the beard ; kisses the gashes,  
That bloodily did yawn upon his face ;

And cries aloud, — *Tarry, dear cousin Suffolk !*

*My soul shall thine keep company to heaven :*

*Tarry, sweet soul, for mine, then fly a-breast ;*

*As, in this glorious and well-foughten field,*

*We kept together in our chivalry !*

Upon these words I came, and cheer'd him up :

He smil'd me in the face, raught<sup>s</sup> me his hand,

And, with a feeble gripe, says, — *Dear, my lord,*  
*Commend my service to my sovereign.*

So did he turn, and over Suffolk's neck

He threw his wounded arm, and kiss'd his lips :

<sup>s</sup> Reached

And so, espous'd to death, with blood he seal'd  
A testament of noble-ending love.  
The pretty and sweet manner of it forc'd  
Those waters from me, which I would have stopp'd  
But I had not so much of man in me,  
But all my mother came into mine eyes,  
And gave me up to tears.

*K. Hen.* I blame you not;  
For, hearing this, I must perforce compound  
With mistful eyes, or they will issue too, —

[*Alarum.*

But, hark! what new alarum is this same?  
The French have reinforc'd their scatter'd men: —  
Then every soldier kill his prisoners;  
Give the word through. [ *Exeunt.*

SCENE VII.

*Another Part of the Field.*

*Alarums. Enter FLUELLEN and GOWER.*

*Flu.* Kill the poys and the luggage! 'tis expressly  
against the law of arms: 'tis as arrant a piece of  
knavery, mark you now, as can be offer'd, in the  
'orld: In your conscience now, is it not?

*Gow.* 'Tis certain, there's not a boy left alive;  
and the cowardly rascals, that ran from the battle,  
have done this slaughter: besides, they have burned  
and carried away all that was in the king's tent;  
wherefore the king, most worthily, hath caused  
every soldier to cut his prisoner's throat. O, 'tis a  
gallant king!

*Flu.* Ay, he was porn at Monmouth, captain  
Gower: What call you the town's name, where  
Alexander the pig was born?

*Gow.* Alexander the great.

*Flu.* Why, I pray you, is not pig, great? The pig, or the great, or the mighty, or the huge, or the magnanimous, are all one reckonings, save the phrase is a little variations.

*Gow.* I think, Alexander the great was born in Macedon; his father was called — Philip of Macedon, as I take it.

*Flu.* I think it is in Macedon, where Alexander is born. I tell you, captain, — If you look in the maps of the 'orld, I warrant, you shall find, in the comparisons between Macedon and Monmouth that the situations, look you, is both alike. There is a river in Macedon; and there is also moreover a river at Monmouth: it is called Wye, at Monmouth; but it is out of my prains, what is the name of the other river; but 'tis all one, 'tis as like as my fingers is to my fingers, and there are salmons in both. If you mark Alexander's life well, Harry of Monmouth's life is come after indifferent well; for there is figures in all thing Alexander, you know, in his rageſ, and his furie and his wraths, and his cholers, and his moods, and his displeasures, and his indignations, and also being a little intoxicates in his prains, did, in his ales and his angers, look you, kill his pest friend Clytus.

*Gow.* Our king is not like him in that; he never killed any of his friends.

*Flu.* It is not well done, mark you now, to take tales out of my mouth, ere it is made an end and finished. I speak but in the figures and comparisons of it: As Alexander is kill his friend Clytus, being in his ales and his cups; so also Harry Monmouth, being in his right wits and his good judgments, is turn away the fat knight, with the great pelly-doublet: he was full of jests, and gipes, and knaveries, and mocks; I am forget his name.

*Gow.* Sir John Falstaff.

*Flu.* That is he : I can tell you there is goot men born at Monmouth.

*Gow.* Here comes his majesty.

*Alarum.* Enter King HENRY, with a Part of the English Forces ; WARWICK, GLOSTER, EXETER, and others.

*K. Hen.* I was not angry since I came to France Until this instant. — Take a trumpet, herald ; Ride thou unto the horsemen on yon hill ; If they will fight with us, bid them come down, Or void the field ; they do offend our sight : If they'll do neither, we will come to them ; And make them skirr<sup>9</sup> away, as swift as stones Enforced from the old Assyrian slings : Besides, we'll cut the throats of those we have ; And not a man of them, that we shall take, Shall taste our mercy. — Go, and tell them so.

*Enter MONTJOY.*

*Exe.* Here comes the herald of the French, my liege.

*Glo.* His eyes are humbler than they us'd to be.

*K. Hen.* How now, what means this, herald ? know'st thou not,

That I have fin'd these bones of mine for ransome ? Com'st thou again for ransome ?

*Mont.*

No, great king :

I come to thee for charitable licence,  
That we may wander o'er this bloody field,  
To hook our dead, and then to bury them ;  
To sort our nobles from our common men ;  
For many of our princes (woe the while !)  
Lie drown'd and soak'd in mercenary blood ;  
(So do our vulgar drench their peasant limbs  
In blood of princes ;) and their wounded steeds



Fret fetlock deep in gore, and, with wild rage,  
Yerk out their armed heels at their dead masters,  
Killing them twice. O, give us leave, great king,  
To view the field in safety, and dispose  
Of their dead bodies.

*K. Hen.* I tell thee truly, herald,  
I know not, if the day be ours, or no ;  
For yet a many of your horsemen peer,  
And gallop o'er the field.

*Mont.* The day is yours.

*K. Hen.* Praised be God, and not our strength  
for it ! —

What is this castle call'd, that stands hard by ?

*Mont.* They call it — Agincourt.

*K. Hen.* Then call we this — the field of Agin-  
court,

Fought on the day of Crispin Crispianus.

*Flu.* Your grandfather of famous memory, an't  
please your majesty, and your great uncle Edward,  
the plack prince of Wales, as I have read in the  
chronicles, fought a most prave pattle here in  
France.

*K. Hen.* They did, Fluellen.

*Flu.* Your majesty says very true : If your ma-  
jesties is remember'd of it, the Welshmen did goot  
service in a garden where leeks did grow, wearing  
leeks in their Monmouth caps ; which your ma-  
jesty knows, to this hour is an honourable padge of  
the service ; and, I do believe, your majesty takes  
no scorn to wear the leek upon Saint Tavy's day.

*K. Hen.* I wear it for a memorable honour :  
For I am Welsh, you know, good countryman.

*Flu.* All the water in Wye cannot wash your  
majesty's Welsh plood out of your pody, I can tell  
you that : Got pless it and preserve it, as long as  
it pleases his grace, and his majesty too !

*K. Hen.* Thanks, good my countryman.

*Flu.* I am your majesty's countryman, I care  
not who know it ; I will confess it to all the 'orld.

I need not to be ashamed of your majesty, so long as your majesty is an honest man.

*K. Hen.* God keep me so! our heralds go with him.

Bring me just notice of the numbers dead  
On both our parts. — Call yonder fellow hither.

[*Points to WILLIAMS. Exeunt MONTJOY and others.*]

*Exe.* Soldier, you must come to the king.

*K. Hen.* Soldier, why wear'st thou that glove in thy cap?

*Will.* An't please your majesty, 'tis the gage of one that I should fight withal, if he be alive.

*K. Hen.* An Englishman?

*Will.* An't please your majesty, a rascal, that swagger'd with me last night: who, if 'a live, and ever dare to challenge this glove, I have sworn to take him a box o' the ear: or, if I can see my glove in his cap, (which he swore, as he was a soldier, he would wear, if alive,) I will strike it out soundly.

*K. Hen.* What think you, captain Fluellen? is it fit this soldier keep his oath?

*Flu.* He is a craven<sup>1</sup> and a villain else, an't please your majesty, in my conscience.

*K. Hen.* It may be, his enemy is a gentleman of great sort<sup>2</sup>, quite from the answer of his degree.

*Flu.* Though he be as goot a gentleman as the tevil is, as Lucifer and Beelzebub himself, it is necessary, look your grace, that he keep his vow and his oath: if he be perjured, see you now, his reputation is as arrant a villain, and a Jack-sauce<sup>3</sup>, as ever his plack shoe trod upon the earth, in my conscience.

*K. Hen.* Then keep thy vow, sirrah, when thou meet'st the fellow.

*Will.* So I will, my liege, as I live.

*K. Hen.* Who servest thou under?

<sup>1</sup> Coward.

<sup>2</sup> High rank.

<sup>3</sup> For saucy Jack.

*Will.* Under captain Gower, my liege.

*Flu.* Gower is a goot captain: and is good knowledge and literature in the wars.

*K. Hen.* Call him hither to me, soldier.

*Will.* I will, my liege. [Exit.

*K. Hen.* Here, Fluellen; wear thou this favour for me, and stick it in thy cap: When Alençon and myself were down together, I plucked this glove from his helm: if any man challenge this, he is a friend to Alençon, and an enemy to our person; if thou encounter any such, apprehend him, an thou dost love me.

*Flu.* Your grace does me as great honours as can be desired in the hearts of his subjects: I would fain see the man, that has but two legs, that shall find himself aggrieved at this glove, that is all; but I would fain see it once.

*K. Hen.* Knowest thou Gower?

*Flu.* He is my dear friend, an please you.

*K. Hen.* Pray thee, go seek him, and bring him to my tent.

*Flu.* I will fetch him. [Exit.

*K. Hen.* My lord of Warwick,—and my brother Gloster,

Follow Fluellen closely at the heels:

The glove, which I have given him for a favour,

May, haply, purchase him a box o' the ear;

It is the soldier's; I, by bargain, should

Wear it myself. Follow, good cousin Warwick;

If that the soldier strike him, (as I judge

By his blunt bearing, he will keep his word,)

Some sudden mischief may arise of it;

For I do know Fluellen valiant,

And, touch'd with choler, hot as gunpowder,

And quickly will return an injury:

Follow, and see there be no harm between them.—

Go you with me, uncle of Exeter.

[Exeunt.

## SCENE VIII.

*Before King HENRY's Pavilion.*

*Enter GOWER and WILLIAMS.*

*Will.* I warrant, it is to knight you, captain.

*Enter FLUELLEN.*

*Flu.* Captain, I peseech you now, come apace to the king : there is more goot toward you, peradventure, than is in your knowledge to dream of.

*Will.* Sir, know you this glove ?

*Flu.* Know the glove ; I know the glove is a glove.

*Will.* I know this ; and thus I challenge it.

[ *Strikes him.*

*Flu.* 'Sblud, an arrant traitor, as any's in the universal 'orld, or in France, or in England.

*Gow.* How now, sir ? you villain !

*Will.* Do you think I'll be forsworn ?

*Flu.* Stand away, captain Gower ; I will give treason his payment into plows, I warrant you.

*Will.* I am no traitor.

*Flu.* That's a lie in thy throat. — I charge you in his majesty's name, apprehend him ; he's a friend of the duke Alençon's.

*Enter WARWICK and GLOSTER.*

*War.* How now, how now ! what's the matter ?

*Flu.* My lord of Warwick, here is (praised be Got for it !) a most contagious treason come to light, look you, as you shall desire in a summer's day. *Here is his majesty.*

*Enter King HENRY and EXETER.*

*K. Hen.* How now! what's the matter?

*Flu.* My liege, here is a villain and a traitor, that, look your grace, has struck the glove which your majesty is take out of the helmet of Alençon.

*Will.* My liege, this was my glove; here is the fellow of it: and he, that I gave it to in charge, promised to wear it in his cap; I promised to strike him, if he did: I met this man with my glove in his cap, and I have been as good as my word.

*Flu.* Your majesty hear now, (saving your majesty's manhood,) what an arrant, rascally, beggarly, knave it is: I hope, your majesty is pear me testimony, and witness, and avouchments, that this is the glove of Alençon, that your majesty is give me, in your conscience now.

*K. Hen.* Give me thy glove, soldier; Look, here is the fellow of it. 'Twas I, indeed, thou promised'st to strike; and thou hast given me most bitter terms.

*Flu.* An please your majesty, let his neck answer for it, if there is any martial law in the 'orld.

*K. Hen.* How canst thou make me satisfaction?

*Will.* All offences, my liege, come from the heart: never came any from mine, that might offend your majesty.

*K. Hen.* It was ourself thou didst abuse.

*Will.* Your majesty came not like yourself: you appeared to me but as a common man; witness the night, your garments, your lowliness; and what your highness suffered under that shape, I beseech you, take it for your own fault, and not mine: for had you been as I took you for, I made no offence: therefore, I beseech your highness, pardon me.

*K. Hen.* Here, uncle Exeter, fill this glove with crowns,

And give it to this fellow. — Keep it, fellow;  
And wear it for an honour in thy cap,

Till I do challenge it. — Give him the crowns : —  
And, captain, you must needs be friends with him.

*Flu.* By this day and this light, the fellow has  
mettle enough in his pelly : — Hold, there is twelve  
pence for you, and I pray you to serve Got, and  
keep you out of prawls, and prabbles, and quarrels,  
and dissensions, and, I warrant you, it is the petter  
for you.

*Will.* I will none of your money.

*Flu.* It is with a goot will ; I can tell you, it will  
serve you to mend your shoes : Come, wherefore  
should you be so pashful ? your shoes is not so  
goot : 'tis a goot silling, I warrant you, or I will  
change it.

*Enter an English Herald.*

*K. Hen.* Now, herald ; are the dead number'd ?

*Her.* Here is the number of the slaughter'd  
French. [*Delivers a Paper.*]

*K. Hen.* What prisoners of good sort are taken,  
uncle ?

*Exe.* Charles duke of Orleans, nephew to the  
king ;

John duke of Bourbon, and lord Bouciqualt :  
Of other lords, and barons, knights, and 'squires,  
Full fifteen hundred, besides common men.

*K. Hen.* This note doth tell me of ten thousand  
French,

That in the field lie slain : of princes, in this number,  
And nobles bearing banners, there lie dead,  
One hundred twenty-six : added to these,  
Of knights, esquires, and gallant gentlemen,  
Eight thousand and four hundred ; of the which,  
Five hundred were but yesterday dubb'd knights :  
So that, in these ten thousand they have lost,  
There are but sixteen hundred mercenaries ;  
The rest are — princes, barons, lords, knights,  
'squires,

And gentlemen of blood and quality.  
 The names of those their nobles that lie dead, —  
 Charles De-la-bret, high constable of France;  
 Jaques of Chatillon, admiral of France;  
 The master of the cross-bows, lord Rambures;  
 Great-master of France, the brave sir Guischa  
 Dauphin ;

John duke of Alençon ; Antony duke of Brabant  
 The brother to the duke of Burgundy ;  
 And Edward duke of Bar ; of lusty earls,  
 Grandpré, and Roussi, Fauconberg, and Foix,  
 Beaumont, and Marle, Vaudemont, and Lestral  
 Here was a royal fellowship of death ! —  
 Where is the number of our English dead ?

[Herald *presents another Paper*

Edward the duke of York, the earl of Suffolk,  
 Sir Richard Ketly, Davy Gam, esquire :  
 None else of name : and, of all other men,  
 But five-and-twenty. O God, thy arm was here  
 And not to us, but to thy arm alone,  
 Ascribe we all. — When, without stratagem,  
 But in plain shock, and even play of battle,  
 Was ever known so great and little loss,  
 On one part and on the other ? — Take it Lord  
 For it is only thine !

*Exe.*

'Tis wonderful !

*K. Hen.* Come, go we in procession to the vill  
 And be it death proclaimed through our host,  
 To boast of this, or take that praise from God,  
 Which is his only.

*Flu.* Is it not lawful, an please your majesty  
 tell how many is killed ?

*K. Hen.* Yes, captain ; but with this acknowledgment,  
 That God fought for us.

*Flu.* Yes, my conscience, he did us great good

*K. Hen.* Do we all holy rites ;  
 Let there be sung *Non nobis*, and *Te Deum*.  
 The dead with charity enclosed in clay,

We'll then to Calais ; and to England then ;  
Where ne'er from France arriv'd more happy men.  
[*Exeunt.*

---

## ACT THE FIFTH.

*Enter* CHORUS.

*Chor.* Vouchsafe to those that have not read the  
story,  
That I may prompt them : and of such as have,  
I humbly pray them to admit the excuse  
Of time, of numbers, and due course of things,  
Which cannot in their huge and proper life  
Be here presented. Now we bear the king  
Toward Calais : grant him there ; there seen,  
Heave him away upon your winged thoughts,  
Athwart the sea : Behold, the English beach  
Pales in the flood with men, with wives, and boys,  
Whose shouts and claps out-voice the deep-mouth'd  
sea,  
Which, like a mighty whiffler <sup>4</sup> 'fore the king,  
Seems to prepare his way : so let him land ;  
And, solemnly, see him set on to London.  
So swift a pace hath thought, that even now  
You may imagine him upon Blackheath ;  
Where that his lords desire him, to have <sup>5</sup> borne  
His bruised helmet, and his bended sword,  
Before him, through the city : he forbids it,  
Being free from vainness and self-glorious pride ;  
Giving full trophy, signal, and ostent,  
Quite from himself, to God. But now behold,

<sup>4</sup> An officer who walks first in processions.

<sup>5</sup> *i. e.* To order it to be borne.



In the quick forge and working-house of thought,  
How London doth pour out her citizens!  
The mayor, and all his brethren, in best sort, —  
Like to the senators of the antique Rome,  
With the plebeians swarming at their heels, —  
Go forth, and fetch their conquering Cæsar in:  
As, by a lower but by loving likelihood,<sup>6</sup>  
Were now the general of our gracious empress<sup>7</sup>  
(As, in good time, he may,) from Ireland coming,  
Bringing rebellion broached<sup>8</sup> on his sword,  
How many would the peaceful city quit,  
To welcome him? much more, and much more  
cause,  
Did they this Harry. Now in London place him;  
(As yet the lamentation of the French  
Invites the king of England's stay at home:  
The emperor's coming in behalf of France,  
To order peace between them;) and omit  
All the occurrences, whatever chanc'd,  
Till Harry's back-return again to France;  
There must we bring him; and myself have play'd  
The interim, by remembering you — 'tis past.  
Then brook abridgement; and your eyes advance  
After your thoughts, straight back again to France.  
[Exit.]

## SCENE I.

France. *An English Court of Guard.*

*Enter FLUELLEN and GOWER.*

Gow. Nay, that's right; but why wear you your  
leek to-day? Saint Davy's day is past.

Flu. There is occasions and causes why and  
wherefore in all things; I will tell you, as my

<sup>6</sup> Similitude.

<sup>7</sup> The earl of Essex in the reign of Elizabeth.

<sup>8</sup> Spitted, transfixed.

friend, captain Gower. The rascally, beggarly, pragging knave, Pistol,—which you and yourself, and all the 'orld, know to be no petter than a fellow, look you now, of no merits,—he is come to me, and prings me pread and salt yesterday, look you, and bid me eat my leek : it was in a place where I could not breed no contentions with him ; but I will be so pold as to wear it in my cap till I see him once again, and then I will tell him a little piece of my desires.

*Enter Pistol.*

*Gow.* Why, here he comes, swelling like a turkey-cock.

*Flu.* 'Tis no matter for his swellings, nor his turkey-cocks.—Pless you, ancient Pistol ! you scurvy knave, pless you !

*Pist.* Ha ! art thou Bedlam ? dost thou thirst, base Trojan,  
To have me fold up Parca's fatal web ?  
Hence ! I am qualmish at the smell of leek.

*Flu.* I peseech you heartily, scurvy knave, at my desires, and my requests, and my petitions, to eat, look you, this leek ; because, look you, you do not love it, nor your affections, and your appetites, and your digestions, does not agree with it, I would desire you to eat it.

*Pist.* Not for Cadwallader and all his goats.

*Flu.* There is one goat for you. [*Strikes him.*]  
Will be so goot, scald knave, as eat it ?

*Pist.* Base Trojan, thou shalt die.

*Flu.* You say very true, scald knave, when Got's will is : I will desire you to live in the mean time, and eat your victuals ; come, there is sauce for it. [*Striking him again.*] You called me yesterday, mountain-squire ; but I will make you to-day a squire of low degree. I pray you, fall to ; if you can mock a leek, you can eat a leek.

*Gow.* Enough, captain ; you have astonished him

*Flu.* I say, I will make him eat some part of my leek, or I will peat his pate four days : — Pite, I pray you ; it is goot for your green wound, and your bloody coxcomb.

*Pist.* Must I bite ?

*Flu.* Yes, certainly ; and out of doubt, and out of questions too, and ambiguities.

*Pist.* By this leek, I will most horribly revenge ; I eat, and eke I swear —

*Flu.* Eat, I pray you : Will you have some more sauce to your leek ? there is not enough leek to swear by.

*Pist.* Quiet thy cudgel ; thou dost see, I eat.

*Flu.* Much goot do you, scald knave, heartily. Nay, 'pray you, throw none away ; the skin is goot for your proken coxcomb. When you take occasions to see leeks hereafter, I pray you mock at them ; that is all.

*Pist.* Good.

*Flu.* Ay, leeks is goot : — Hold you, there is a groat to heal your pate.

*Pist.* Me a groat !

*Flu.* Yes, verily, and in truth, you shall take it, or I have another leek in my pocket, which you shall eat.

*Pist.* I take thy groat, in earnest of revenge.

*Flu.* If I owe you any thing, I will pay you in cudgels ; you shall be a woodmonger, and buy nothing of me but cudgels. God be wi' you, and keep you, and heal your pate. [Exit.]

*Pist.* All hell shall stir for this.

*Gow.* Go, go ; you are a counterfeit cowardly knave. Will you mock at an ancient tradition, — begun upon an honourable respect, and worn as a memorable trophy of predeceased valour, — and dare not avouch in your deeds any of your words ? I have seen you gleeking<sup>9</sup> and galling at this gentleman

<sup>9</sup> Scoffing, sneering.

twice or thrice. You thought, because he could not speak English in the native garb, he could not therefore handle an English cudgel: you find it otherwise; and, henceforth, let a Welsh correction teach you a good English condition.<sup>1</sup> Fare ye well.

[*Exit.*

*Pist.* Doth fortune play the huswife<sup>2</sup> with me now?

News have I, that my Nell is dead i' the spital,<sup>3</sup>  
 And there my rendezvous is quite cut off.  
 Old I do wax; and from my weary limbs  
 Honour is cudgell'd. Well, pimp will I turn,  
 And something lean to cutpurse of quick hand.  
 To England will I steal, and there I'll steal:  
 And patches will I get unto these scars,  
 And swear, I got them in the Gallia wars. [*Exit.*

## SCENE II.

Troyes in Champagne. *An Apartment in the French King's Palace.*

*Enter, at one door, King HENRY, BEDFORD, GLOSTER, EXETER, WARWICK, WESTMORELAND, and other Lords; at another, the French King, Queen ISABEL, the Princess KATHARINE, Lords, Ladies, &c. the Duke of BURGUNDY, and his Train.*

*K. Hen.* Peace to this meeting, wherefore we are met!

Unto our brother France, — and to our sister,  
 Health and fair time of day: — joy and good wishes  
 To our most fair and princely cousin Katharine;  
 And (as a branch and member of this royalty,  
 By whom this great assembly is contriv'd,)

<sup>1</sup> Temper.

<sup>2</sup> For jilt.

<sup>3</sup> Hospital.

We do salute you, duke of Burgundy ; —  
And, princes French, and peers, health to you all!

*Fr. King.* Right joyous are we to behold your  
face,

Most worthy brother England ; fairly met ; —  
So are you, princes English, every one.

*Q. Isa.* So happy be the issue, brother England,  
Of this good day, and of this gracious meeting,  
As we are now glad to behold your eyes ;  
Your eyes, which hitherto have borne in them  
Against the French, that met them in their bent,  
The fatal balls of murdering basilisks :  
The venom of such looks, we fairly hope,  
Have lost their quality ; and that this day  
Shall change all griefs, and quarrels, into love.

*K. Hen.* To cry amen to that, thus we appear.

*Q. Isa.* You English princes all, I do salute you.

*Bur.* My duty to you both, on equal love,  
Great kings of France and England ! That I have  
labour'd

With all my wits, my pains, and strong endeavours,  
To bring your most imperial majesties  
Unto this bar<sup>1</sup> and royal interview,  
Your mightiness on both parts best can witness.  
Since then my office hath so far prevail'd,  
That, face to face, and royal eye to eye,  
You have congreeted ; let it not disgrace me,  
If I demand, before this royal view,  
What rub, or what impediment, there is,  
Why, that the naked, poor, and mangled peace,  
Dear nurse of arts, plenties, and joyful births,  
Should not, in this best garden of the world,  
Our fertile France, put up her lovely visage ?  
Alas ! she hath from France too long been chas'd :  
And all her husbandry doth lie on heaps,  
Corrupting in its own fertility,  
Her vine, the merry cheerer of the heart,

<sup>1</sup> Barrier.

Unpruned dies : her hedges even-pleached,—  
Like prisoners wildly over-grown with hair,  
Put forth disorder'd twigs : her fallow leas  
The darnel, hemlock, and rank fumitory,  
Doth root upon ; while that the coulter rusts,  
That should deracinate<sup>5</sup> such savagery :  
The even mead, that erst brought sweetly forth  
The freckled cowslip, burnet, and green clover,  
Wanting the scythe, all uncorrected, rank,  
Conceives by idleness ; and nothing teems,  
But hateful docks, rough thistles, kecksies, burs,  
Losing both beauty and utility.  
And as our vineyards, fallows, meads, and hedges,  
Defective in their natures, grow to wildness ;  
Even so our houses, and ourselves, and children,  
Have lost, or do not learn, for want of time,  
The sciences that should become our country ;  
But grow, like savages, — as soldiers will,  
That nothing do but meditate on blood, —  
To swearing, and stern looks, diffus'd<sup>6</sup> attire,  
And every thing that seems unnatural,  
Which to reduce into our former favour,<sup>7</sup>  
You are assembled : and my speech entreats,  
That I may know the let<sup>8</sup>, why gentle peace  
Should not expel these inconveniences,  
And bless us with her former qualities.

*K. Hen.* If, duke of Burgundy, you would the  
peace,  
Whose want gives growth to the imperfections  
Which you have cited, you must buy that peace  
With full accord to all our just demands ;  
Whose tenours and particular effects  
You have, enschedul'd briefly, in your hands.

*Bur.* The king hath heard them ; to the which,  
as yet,  
There is no answer made.

<sup>5</sup> Force up by the roots.

<sup>7</sup> Appearance.

<sup>6</sup> Extravagant.

<sup>8</sup> Hindrance.

*K. Hen.* Well then, the peace,  
Which you before so urg'd, lies in his answer.

*Fr. King.* I have but with a cursorary eye  
O'erglanc'd the articles: pleaseth your grace  
To appoint some of your council presently  
To sit with us once more, with better heed  
To re-survey them, we will, suddenly,  
Pass our accept, and peremptory answer.

*K. Hen.* Brother, we shall.—Go, uncle Exeter,—  
And brother Clarence,—and you, brother Gloster,—  
Warwick — and Huntingdon,—go with the king:  
And take with you free power, to ratify,  
Augment, or alter, as your wisdoms best  
Shall see advantageable for our dignity,  
Any thing in, or out of, our demands;  
And we'll consign thereto.—Will you, fair sister,  
Go with the princes, or stay here with us?

*Q. Isa.* Our gracious brother, I will go with them;  
Haply, a woman's voice may do some good,  
When articles, too nicely urg'd, be stood on.

*K. Hen.* Yet leave our cousin Katharine here  
with us;  
She is our capital demand, compris'd  
Within the fore-rank of our articles.

*Q. Isa.* She hath good leave.

[*Exeunt all but HENRY, KATHARINE,  
and her Gentlewoman.*]

*K. Hen.* Fair Katharine, and most fair!  
Will you vouchsafe to teach a soldier terms,  
Such as will enter at a lady's ear,  
And plead his love-suit to her gentle heart?

*Kath.* Your majesty shall mock at me; I cannot  
speak your England.

*K. Hen.* O fair Katharine, if you will love me  
soundly with your French heart, I will be glad to  
hear you confess it brokenly with your English  
tongue. Do you like me, Kate?

*Kath.* *Pardonnez moy*, I cannot tell what is — like  
me.

*K. Hen.* An angel is like you, Kate ; and you are like an angel.

*Kath.* *Que dit-il ? que je suis semblable à les anges ?*

*Alice.* *Ouy, vrayment, (sauf vostre grace) ainsi dit-il.*

*K. Hen.* I said so, dear Katharine ; and I must not blush to affirm it.

*Kath.* *O ! les langues des hommes sont pleines des tromperies.*

*K. Hen.* What says she, fair one ? that the tongues of men are full of deceits ?

*Alice.* *Ouy ;* dat de tongues of de mans is be full of deceits : dat is de princess.

*K. Hen.* The princess is the better English-woman. I'faith, Kate, my wooing is fit for thy understanding : I am glad, thou canst speak no better English ; for, if thou couldst, thou wouldst find me such a plain king, that thou would'st think, I had sold my farm to buy my crown. I know no ways to mince it in love, but directly to say — I love you : then, if you urge me further than to say — Do you, in faith ? I wear out my suit. Give me your answer ; i'faith, do ; and so clap hands and a bargain : How say you, lady ?

*Kath.* *Sauf vostre honneur,* me understand well.

*K. Hen.* Marry, if you would put me to verses, or to dance for your sake, Kate, why you undid me : for the one, I have neither words nor measure ; and for the other, I have no strength in measure<sup>9</sup>, yet a reasonable measure in strength. If I could win a lady at leap-frog, or by vaulting into my saddle with my armour on my back, under the correction of bragging be it spoken, I should quickly leap for a wife. Or, if I might buffet for my love, or bound my horse for her favours, I could lay on like a butcher, and sit like a jack-an-apes, never off : but,

<sup>9</sup> In dancing.



I cannot look greenly<sup>1</sup>, nor gasp out my eloquence, nor I have no cunning in protestation; only downright oaths, which I never use till urged, nor never break for urging. If thou canst love a fellow of this temper, Kate, whose face is not worth sun-burning, that never looks in his glass for love of any thing he sees there, let thine eye be thy cook. I speak to thee plain soldier: If thou canst love me for this, take me: if not, to say to thee — that I shall die, is true; but — for thy love, no; yet I love thee too. And while thou livest, dear Kate, take a fellow of plain and uncoined<sup>2</sup> constancy; for he perforce must do thee right, because he hath not the gift to woo in other places: for these fellows of infinite tongue, that can rhyme themselves into ladies' favours — they do always reason themselves out again. What! a speaker is but a prater; a rhyme is but a ballad. A good leg will fall<sup>3</sup>; a straight back will stoop; a black beard will turn white; a curled pate will grow bald; a fair face will wither; a full eye will wax hollow: but a good heart, Kate, is the sun and moon; or rather the sun, and not the moon; for it shines bright, and never changes, but keeps his course truly. If thou would have such a one, take me: And take me, take a soldier; take a soldier, take a king: And what sayest thou then to my love? speak, my fair, and fairly, I pray thee.

*Kath.* Is it possible dat I should love de enemy of France?

*K. Hen.* No; it is not possible, you should love the enemy of France, Kate; but in loving me, you should love the friend of France; for I love France so well, that I will not part with a village of it; I will have it all mine: and, Kate, when France is

<sup>1</sup> *i.e.* Like a young lover, awkwardly.

<sup>2</sup> He means, resembling a plain piece of metal, which has not yet received any impression.

<sup>3</sup> Fall away.

mine, and I am yours, then yours is France, and you are mine.

*Kath.* I cannot tell vat is dat.

*K. Hen.* No, Kate? I will tell thee in French; which, I am sure, will hang upon my tongue like a new-married wife about her husband's neck, hardly to be shook off. *Quand j'ay la possession de France, & quand vous avez la possession de moi,* (let me see, what then? Saint Dennis be my speed!)—*donc vostre est France, & vous estes mienne.* It is as easy for me, Kate, to conquer the kingdom, as to speak so much more French: I shall never move thee in French, unless it be to laugh at me.

*Kath.* *Sauf vostre honneur, le François que vous parlez, est meilleur que l'Anglois lequel je parle.*

*K. Hen.* No, 'faith, is't not, Kate: but thy speaking of my tongue, and I thine, most truly falsely, must needs be granted to be much at one. But, Kate, dost thou understand thus much English?  
• Canst thou love me?

*Kath.* I cannot tell.

*K. Hen.* Can any of your neighbours tell, Kate? I'll ask them. Come, I know thou lovest me: and at night when you come into your closet, you'll question this gentlewoman about me; and I know, Kate, you will to her, dispraise those parts in me, that you love with your heart: but, good Kate, mock me mercifully; the rather, gentle princess, because I love thee cruelly. How answer you, *la plus belle Catharine du monde, mon très chere et divine déesse?*

*Kath.* Your *majesté* 'ave *fausse* French enough to deceive de most *sage demoiselle* dat is *en France.*

*K. Hen.* Now, fye upon my false French! By mine honour, in true English, I love thee, Kate: by which honour I dare not swear, thou lovest me; yet my blood begins to flatter me that thou dost, notwithstanding the poor and untempering effect

of my visage. Now beshrew my father's ambition! he was always thinking of civil wars; therefore was I created with a stubborn outside, with an aspect of iron, that, when I come to woo ladies, I fright them. But, in faith, Kate, the elder I wax, the better I shall appear: my comfort is, that old age, that ill-layer up of beauty, can do no more spoil upon my face: thou hast me, if thou hast me, at the worst; and thou shalt wear me, if thou wear me, better and better; And therefore tell me, most fair Katharine, will you have me? Put off your maiden blushes; avouch the thoughts of your heart with the looks of an empress; take me by the hand, and say—Harry of England, I am thine: which word thou shalt no sooner bless mine ear withal, but I will tell thee aloud—England is thine, Ireland is thine, France is thine, and Henry Plantagenet is thine; who, though I speak it before his face, if he be not fellow with the best king, thou shalt find the best king of good fellows. Come, your answer in broken musick; for thy voice is musick, and thy English broken: therefore, queen of all, Katharine, break thy mind to me in broken English, Wilt thou have me?

*Kath.* Dat is, as it shall please de roy mon pere.

*K. Hen.* Nay, it will please him well, Kate; it shall please him, Kate.

*Kath.* Den it shall also content me.

*K. Hen.* Upon that I will kiss your hand, and I call you—my queen.

*Kath.* *Laissez, mon seigneur, laissez, laissez: ma foy, je ne veux point que vous abbaissez vostre grandeur, en baisant la main d'une vostre indigne serviteur; excusez moy, je vous supplie, mon très puissant seigneur.*

*K. Hen.* Then I will kiss your lips, Kate.

*Kath.* *Les dames, & demoiselles, pour estre baistes devant leur nopces, il n'est pas la coûtume de France.*

*K. Hen.* Madam my interpreter, what says she?

*Alice.* Dat it is not be de fashion *pour les ladies* of France,—I cannot tell what is, *baiser*, en English.

*K. Hen.* To kiss.

*Alice.* Your majesty *entendre* better *que moy*.

*K. Hen.* It is not the fashion for the maids in France to kiss before they are married, would she say?

*Alice.* *Ouy, vrayment.*

*K. Hen.* O, Kate, nice customs curt'sy to great kings. Dear Kate, you and I cannot be confined within the weak list<sup>4</sup> of a country's fashion: we are the makers of manners, Kate; and the liberty that follows our places, stops the mouths of all find-faults; as I will do yours, for upholding the nice fashion of your country, in denying me a kiss: therefore, patiently, and yielding. [*Kissing her.*] You have witchcraft in your lips, Kate: there is more eloquence in a sugar touch of them, than in the tongues of the French council; and they should sooner persuade Harry of England, than a general petition of monarchs. Here comes your father.

*Enter the French King and Queen, BURGUNDY, BEDFORD, GLOSTER, EXETER, WESTMORELAND, and other French and English Lords.*

*Bur.* God save your majesty! my royal cousin, teach you our princess English?

*K. Hen.* I would have her learn, my fair cousin, how perfectly I love her; and that is good English.

*Bur.* Is she not apt?

*K. Hen.* Our tongue is rough, coz; and my condition<sup>5</sup> is not smooth: so that, having neither the voice nor the heart of flattery about me, I cannot so conjure up the spirit of love in her, that he will appear in his true likeness. Shall Kate be my wife?

<sup>4</sup> Slight barrier.

<sup>5</sup> Temper.

*Fr. King.* So please you, we have consented to all terms of reason.

*K. Hen.* Is't so, my lords of England?

*West.* The king hath granted every article :  
His daughter, first ; and then, in sequel, all,  
According to their firm proposed natures.

*Exe.* Only, he hath not yet subscribed this : —  
Where your majesty demands, — That the king of  
France having any occasion to write for matter of  
grant, shall name your highness in this form, and  
with this addition, in French, — *Notre très cher filz  
Henry roy d'Angleterre, héritier de France* ; and  
thus in Latin, — *Præclarissimus filius noster Hen-  
ricus, rex Angliæ, & hæres Franciæ.*

*Fr. King.* Nor this I have not, brother, so denied,  
But your request shall make me let it pass.

*K. Hen.* I pray you then, in love and dear alli-  
ance,

Let that one article rank with the rest :  
And, thereupon, give me your daughter.

*Fr. King.* Take her, fair son ; and from her blood  
raise up  
Issue to me : that the contending kingdoms  
Of France and England, whose very shores look  
pale

With envy of each other's happiness.  
May cease their hatred ; and this dear conjunction  
Plant neighbourhood and Christian-like accord  
In their sweet bosoms, that never war advance  
His bleeding sword 'twixt England and fair France.

*All.* Amen !

*K. Hen.* Now welcome, Kate : — and bear me  
witness all,  
That here I kiss her as my sovereign queen.

[*Flourish.*

*Q. Isa.* God, the best maker of all marriages,  
Combine your hearts in one, your realms in one !  
As man and wife, being two, are one in love,  
**So be there 'twixt your kingdoms such a spousal,  
That never may ill office, or fell jealousy,**

Which troubles oft the bed of blessed marriage,  
 Thrust in between the paction of these kingdoms,  
 To make divorce of their incorporate league ;  
 That English may as French, French Englishmen,  
 Receive each other ! — God speak this Amen !

*All.* Amen !

*K. Hen.* Prepare we for our marriage : — on  
 which day,  
 My lord of Burgundy, we'll take your oath,  
 And all the peers', for surety of our leagues. —  
 Then shall I swear to Kate, and you to me ;  
 And may our oaths well kept and prosp'rous be !

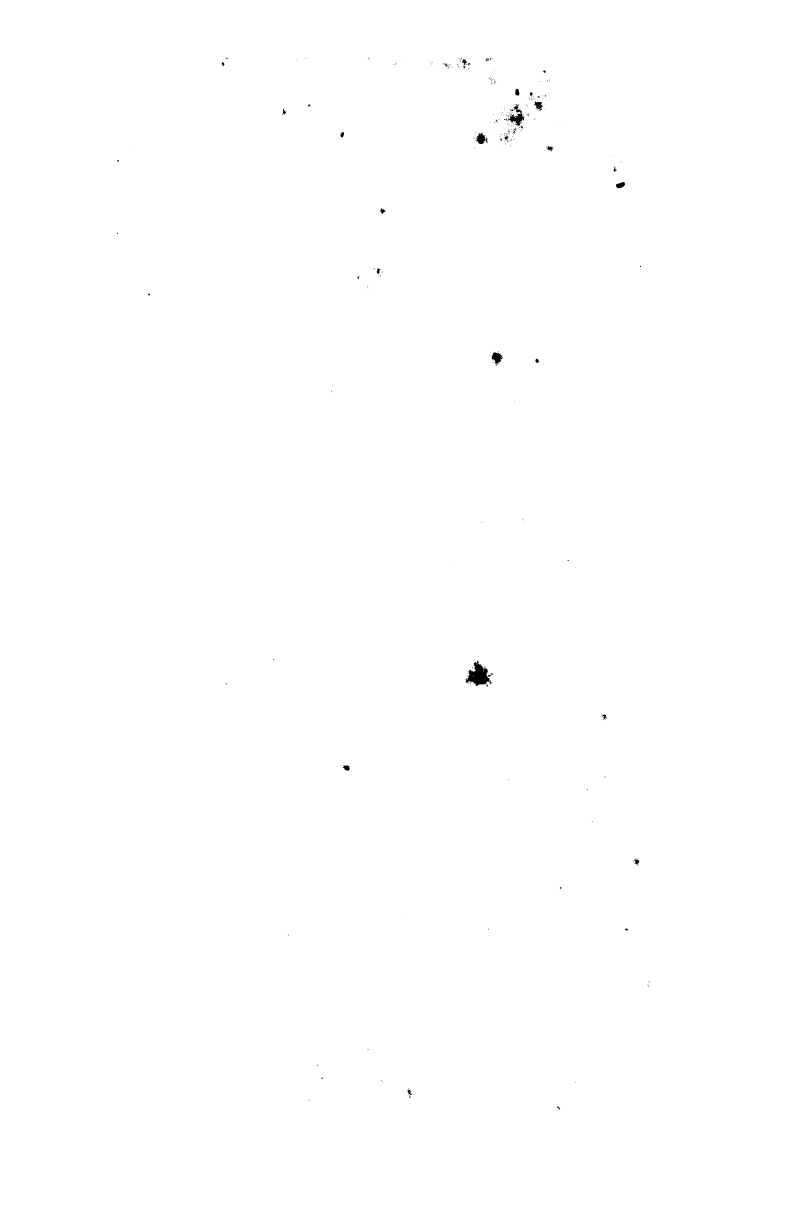
[*Exeunt.*]

*Enter CHORUS.*

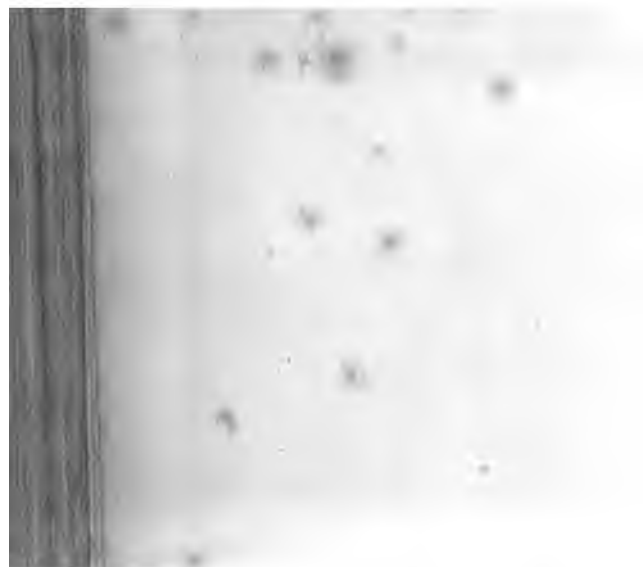
Thus far, with rough, and all unable pen,  
 Our bending<sup>6</sup> author hath pursu'd the story ;  
 In little room confining mighty men,  
 Mangling by starts the full course of their glory.  
 Small time, but, in that small, most greatly liv'd  
 This star of England : fortune made his sword ;  
 By which the world's best garden<sup>7</sup> he achiev'd,  
 And of it left his son imperial lord.  
 Henry the sixth, in infant bands crown'd king  
 Of France and England did this king succeed ;  
 Whose state so many had the managing,  
 That they lost France, and made his England  
 bleed :  
 Which oft our stage hath shown ; and for their  
 sake,  
 In your fair minds let this acceptance take. [*Exit.*]

<sup>6</sup> *i. e.* Unequal to the weight of the subject.      <sup>7</sup> France.

LONDON:  
Printed by A. & R. Spottiswoode,  
New-Street-Square.









1

2

3

4













